

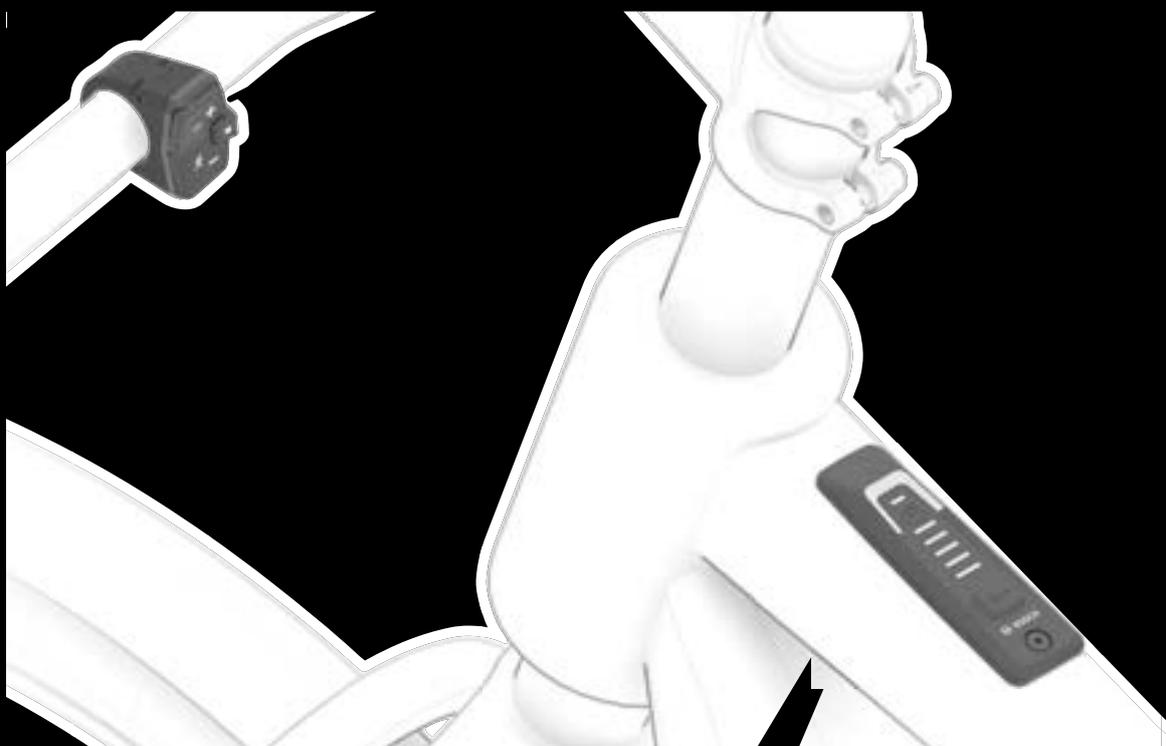
IMPORTANT

READ CAREFULLY BEFORE USE

KEEP SAFE TO CONSULT AT A LATER DATE



BOSCH



Translation of original operating instructions for BULLS MTB Pedelecs with BOSCH Mini Remote and LED Remote on-board computer

Sonic EVO AM 2 Carbon, Sonic EVO AM 3 Carbon, Sonic EVO AM 4 Carbon,
Sonic EVO AM Team Carbon, Sonic EVO TR 2, 29 Carbon, Sonic EVO TR-I 29 Carbon

23-18-3068 ... 23-18-3070, 23-18-3073, 23-18-3074

Contents

1	About these operating instructions	
1.1	Manufacturer	12
1.2	Laws, standards and directives	12
1.3	Language	12
1.4	For your information	12
1.4.1	Warnings	12
1.4.2	Markups	12
1.5	Aim of the operating instructions	13
1.6	Type number and model	14
1.7	Frame number	14
1.8	Identifying the operating instructions	14
2	Safety	
2.1	Residual risk	15
2.1.1	Risk of fire and explosion	15
2.1.2	Electric shock	17
2.1.3	Risk of a crash	17
2.1.4	Risk of amputation	17
2.1.5	Key breaking off	17
2.1.6	Malfunctions due to Bluetooth®	18
2.2	Toxic substances	19
2.2.1	Carcinogenic substances	19
2.2.2	Toxic substances	19
2.2.3	Irritants and corrosive substances	19
2.3	Requirements for the pedelec rider	20
2.4	Vulnerable groups	20
2.5	Personal protective equipment	20
2.6	Safety guards	20
2.7	Safety markings and safety instructions	21
2.8	What to do in an emergency	21
2.8.1	Dangerous situation in road traffic	21
2.8.2	Leaked brake fluid	21
2.8.3	Battery vapour emission	22
2.8.4	Battery fire	22
2.8.5	Oil and lubricant leaks from the rear frame damper	22
2.8.6	Oil and lubricant leaks from the fork	22
2.8.7	Data privacy information	23
3	Description	
3.1	Proper use	24
3.1.1	Improper use	24
3.1.2	Maximum permitted total weight (PTW)	25
3.1.3	Environmental requirements	26
3.1.4	Area of use	26
3.1.5	App, smartphone and operating system	28
3.1.5.1	eBike Flow app	28
3.1.5.2	Minimum requirements for smartphones	28
3.2	Nameplate	29
3.3	Components	30
3.3.1	Overview	30
3.3.2	Chassis	31
3.3.2.1	Frame	31
3.3.2.2	Rear frame damper	33
3.3.2.3	Rear frame damper suspension	33
3.3.2.4	Rear frame damper damping	34

3.3.2.5	ROCKSHOX Deluxe Select+ structure design	36
3.3.2.6	ROCKSHOX Super Deluxe Select+ structure design	37
3.3.2.7	SR SUNTOUR Edge LOR8 Trunion Mount structure	38
3.3.2.8	Structure of SR SUNTOUR Edge Plus 2CR	39
3.3.2.9	Steering system	40
3.3.2.10	Steering headset	40
3.3.2.11	Stem	40
3.3.2.12	Handlebars	41
3.3.2.13	Suspension fork	41
3.3.3	Wheel	48
3.3.3.1	Tyres	48
3.3.3.2	Tube-type tyre	48
3.3.3.3	Rim	50
3.3.3.4	Valve	50
3.3.3.5	Spoke	51
3.3.3.6	Spoke nipples	51
3.3.3.7	Hub	52
3.3.4	Saddle	53
3.3.4.1	Ladies' saddle	54
3.3.4.2	Men's saddle	54
3.3.5	Seat post	55
3.3.5.1	Patent seat post	55
3.3.5.2	Suspension seat post	55
3.3.5.3	Structure of LIMOTEC, A1	56
3.3.5.4	Structure of EIGHTPINS H01	57
3.3.6	Brake	58
3.3.6.1	Mechanical brake	58
3.3.6.2	Hydraulic brake	58
3.3.6.3	Disc brake	59
3.3.7	Mechanical drive system	60
3.3.7.1	Chain drive layout	60
3.3.7.2	Parts of a belt drive	60
3.3.7.3	SRAM rear derailleur, Eagle AXS™	61
3.3.8	Electric drive system	62
3.3.8.1	Motor	62
3.3.8.2	Charger	62
3.3.8.3	Lighting	62
3.3.8.4	System	63
3.3.8.5	Software updates	63
3.3.8.6	Rechargeable battery	64
3.3.8.7	System Controller control panel	66
3.3.8.8	Mini Remote control panel	66
3.4	Description of controls and screens	67
3.4.1	Overview of handlebars	67
3.4.1.1	BOSCH System Controller control panel	68
3.4.1.2	BOSCH Mini Remote control panel	71
3.4.2	Handbrake	72
3.4.3	Suspension and damping	73
3.4.3.1	SR SUNTOUR air valve (fork) and sag setting wheel (fork)	73
3.4.3.2	SR SUNTOUR adjuster damper	74
3.4.3.3	SHIMANO SL-T6000 derailleur gears	77
3.4.4	Rechargeable battery	79
3.4.4.1	Battery Level indicator screen	79
3.5	Technical data	80
3.5.1	Pedelec	80
3.5.2	Emissions	80
3.5.3	System Controller on-board computer	80
3.5.4	Mini Remote control panel	80
3.5.5	BOSCH Performance Line CX motor	80

3.5.6	Rechargeable battery	81
3.5.6.1	BOSCH PowerPack 545	81
3.5.6.2	BOSCH PowerPack 725	81
3.5.6.3	BOSCH PowerTube 500	81
3.5.6.4	BOSCH PowerTube 625	81
3.5.6.5	BOSCH PowerTube 750	81
3.5.7	Rear frame damper	82
3.5.7.1	ROCKSHOX Deluxe Select+	82
3.5.7.2	Technical data for ROCKSHOX Super Deluxe Select+	83
3.5.7.3	Technical data for SR SUNTOUR Edge LOR8 Trunnion Mount	84
3.5.7.4	Technical data for SR SUNTOUR Edge Plus 2CR	85
3.5.8	Suspension fork	86
3.5.8.1	ROCKSHOX 35 Gold 29"	86
3.5.8.2	ROCKSHOX Lyrik Select 29"	87
3.5.8.3	SR SUNTOUR, ZERON35-Boost LOR DS 15QLC32-110 29"	88
3.5.8.4	SR SUNTOUR cartridge LOR	89
3.5.9	Rear derailleur	90
3.5.9.1	SRAM XX1 Eagle AXS rear derailleur	90
3.5.10	Shifter	91
3.5.10.1	SRAM Eagle AXS Controller shifter	91
3.5.11	Saddle	92
3.5.11.1	BROOKS ENGLAND saddle width	92
3.5.11.2	ERGON saddle width	92
3.5.11.3	SELLE ROYAL saddle width	92
3.5.12	Seat post	93
3.5.12.1	LIMOTEC, A1/A1L	93
3.5.13	EIGHTPINS seat post	95
3.5.14	Tyres	97
3.5.14.1	SCHWALBE puncture protection level	97
3.5.14.2	Tyres, SUPERO puncture protection level	98
3.5.15	Torque	99
4	Transporting and storing	
4.1	Weight and dimensions for transportation	110
4.2	Designated handles, lifting points	110
4.3	Transportation	111
4.3.1	Using the transport securing system	111
4.3.2	Transporting the pedelec	111
4.3.2.1	By car	111
4.3.2.2	By train	111
4.3.2.3	By local transport	112
4.3.2.4	By long-distance bus	112
4.3.2.5	On flights	112
4.3.3	Shipping a pedelec	112
4.3.4	Transporting the battery	112
4.3.5	Shipping the battery	112
4.4	Storing	113
4.4.1	Pedelec	113
4.4.2	On-board computer, display and charger	113
4.4.3	Rechargeable battery	113
4.4.4	Break in operation	114
4.4.4.1	Preparing for a break in operation	114
4.4.4.2	Carrying out a break in operation	114
5	Assembly	
5.1	Unpacking	115
5.2	Required tools	115
5.3	Commissioning	116
5.3.1	Checking the battery	116

5.3.2	Preparing the wheel	117
5.3.3	Adjusting the suspension system to body weight	118
5.3.3.1	Adjusting SR Suntour suspension elements	118
5.3.4	Adjusting the LIMOTEC seat post	119
5.3.5	Installing the wheel in the SUNTOUR fork	120
5.3.5.1	Screw-on axle (12AH2 and 15AH2)	120
5.3.5.2	20 mm cross axle	121
5.3.5.3	Q-LOC quick release	123
5.3.6	Fitting the pedals	124
5.3.7	Pairing the System Controller with Mini Remote	125
5.3.8	Connecting the SRAM AXS shifter and rear derailleur	126
5.3.9	Checking the stem and handlebars	127
5.3.9.1	Checking the connections	127
5.3.9.2	Checking stem is firmly in position	127
5.3.9.3	Checking the bearing clearance	127
5.4	Selling the pedelec	127

6 Operation

6.1	Risks and hazards	128
6.2	Tips for a greater range	130
6.3	Error message	131
6.3.1	On-board computer	131
6.3.1.1	Critical errors	131
6.3.1.2	Less critical errors	131
6.3.2	Rechargeable battery	132
6.4	Instruction and customer service	133
6.5	Adjusting the pedelec	133
6.5.1	Preparing	133
6.5.2	Determining the sitting position	134
6.5.3	Seat post	135
6.5.3.1	Adjusting the seat post to body weight	135
6.5.4	Saddle	135
6.5.4.1	Replacing the saddle	135
6.5.4.2	Determining the saddle shape	136
6.5.4.3	Determining the minimum saddle width	137
6.5.4.4	Selecting the saddle hardness	138
6.5.4.5	Adjusting the saddle hardness	138
6.5.4.6	Straightening the saddle	139
6.5.4.7	Positioning the saddle with EIGHTPINS suspension seat post	139
6.5.4.8	Adjusting the saddle height	140
6.5.4.9	Setting the saddle height with the remote control	141
6.5.4.10	Adjusting the EIGHTPINS seat post saddle height	141
6.5.4.11	Adjusting the saddle position	142
6.5.4.12	Adjusting the saddle tilt	142
6.5.4.13	Adjusting the Eightpins H01 seat post saddle tilt	143
6.5.4.14	Eightpins NGS2 seat post saddle tilt	144
6.5.4.15	Check saddle	144
6.5.5	Handlebars	145
6.5.5.1	Replace handlebars	145
6.5.5.2	Adjusting the handlebar width	145
6.5.5.3	Adjusting the hand position	145
6.5.5.4	Adjusting the handlebars	146
6.5.6	Stem	147
6.5.6.1	Replacing the handlebars	147
6.5.6.2	Adjusting the handlebar height with quick release	147
6.5.6.3	Checking the stem stability	147
6.5.6.4	Adjusting the quick release clamping force	147
6.5.6.5	Setting the quill stem	148
6.5.6.6	Adjusting the Ahead stem	148

6.5.6.7	Adjusting the angle-adjustable stem	148
6.5.6.8	Checking the stem	148
6.5.7	Handles	149
6.5.7.1	Replacing the handles	149
6.5.7.2	Adjusting ergonomic handles	149
6.5.7.3	Check handlebars	149
6.5.8	Tyres	150
6.5.8.1	Replacing tyres	150
6.5.8.2	Adjust tyre pressure	150
6.5.9	Brake	152
6.5.9.1	Replacing brakes	152
6.5.9.2	Retracting the brake linings	152
6.5.9.3	Change handbrake position	152
6.5.9.4	Change handbrake inclination angle	153
6.5.9.5	Determining the grip distance	153
6.5.9.6	Adjusting the grip distance on a SHIMANO handbrake	154
6.5.9.7	Adjusting the grip distance on a SHIMANO ST-EF41 handbrake	155
6.5.9.8	Setting the grip distance on a TEKTRO handbrake	156
6.5.10	Gear shift	157
6.5.10.1	Replacing the gear shift	157
6.5.10.2	Adjusting the SHIMANO shifter	157
6.5.10.3	Adjusting the SRAM AXS Controller shifter battery	158
6.5.10.4	Adjusting the SRAM AXS chain gap	159
6.5.10.5	Adjusting the SRAM AXS rear derailleur	160
6.5.10.6	Adjusting the locking screws	161
6.5.10.7	Performing fine adjustment	162
6.5.11	Suspension and damping	163
6.5.12	Adjusting the suspension fork sag	163
6.5.12.1	Adjusting the RockShox steel suspension fork sag	164
6.5.12.2	Adjusting the sag for SR SUNTOUR air suspension fork	165
6.5.13	Adjusting the rear frame damper sag	169
6.5.13.1	Adjusting the RockShox rear frame damper sag	170
6.5.13.2	Adjusting the SR Suntour rear frame damper sag	172
6.5.14	Adjusting the suspension fork rebound damper	175
6.5.14.1	Adjusting the ROCKSHOX suspension fork rebound damper	176
6.5.14.2	Adjusting the SR Suntour rebound damper suspension fork	177
6.5.15	Adjusting the rear frame damper rebound damper	178
6.5.15.1	Adjusting the ROCKSHOX rear frame damper rebound damper	179
6.5.15.2	Adjusting the SR Suntour rear frame damper rebound damper	180
6.5.16	Riding light	181
6.5.16.1	Replacing the headlight	181
6.5.16.2	Replacing the rear light and (spoke) reflector	181
6.5.16.3	Setting the riding light	181
6.5.16.4	Adjusting the headlight	182
6.5.17	Control panel	183
6.5.17.1	Installing the Bosch eBike Flow app on the smartphone	183
6.5.17.2	Pairing the System Controller control panel with a smartphone	183
6.5.17.3	Recording activities	183
6.5.17.4	Adjusting the level of assistance	184
6.5.17.5	Setting up the eBike Lock function	184
6.5.17.6	Deactivating the eBike Lock function	184
6.5.17.7	Update software	185
6.5.17.8	Deleting the Bosch eBike Flow app from the smartphone	185
6.5.18	SRAM AXS app	186
6.5.18.1	Downloading the SRAM AXS app	186
6.5.18.2	Updating SRAM AXS and AXS component firmware	186
6.5.18.3	Activating multiple shift function	186
6.6	Accessories	187
6.6.1	Child seat	187

6.6.2	Trailer	188
6.6.3	Pannier rack	188
6.6.4	Front baskets	188
6.6.5	Panniers and cargo boxes	189
6.6.6	Bar ends	189
6.6.7	Kickstands	189
6.6.8	Additional battery headlight	189
6.6.9	Smartphone holder	189
6.6.10	Suspension fork coil spring	189
6.7	Personal protective equipment and accessories for road safety	190
6.7.1	Riding in bike parks and off-road	190
6.7.2	Riding on public roads	190
6.8	Before each ride	191
6.8.1	Adjusting the rear frame damper	192
6.8.1.1	Adjusting the rear frame damper suspension	192
6.8.1.2	Lock out the ROCKSHOX rear frame damper	193
6.8.1.3	Opening the ROCKSHOX rear frame damper	193
6.8.1.4	Adjusting the ROCKSHOX rear frame damper threshold	194
6.8.2	Adjusting the rear frame damper compression damper	195
6.8.2.1	Adjusting the ROCKSHOX compression damper	196
6.8.2.2	Adjusting the SR SUNTOUR rear frame damper 2C compression damper	197
6.8.2.3	Adjusting the SR SUNTOUR rear frame damper low-speed compression damper	198
6.9	Using the saddle	199
6.9.1	Using the leather saddle	199
6.9.2	Adjust saddle height	199
6.9.2.1	Lowering the saddle	199
6.9.2.2	Raising the saddle	199
6.10	Using the pedals	200
6.11	Using the handlebars	200
6.11.1	Using leather handles	200
6.12	Using the battery	201
6.12.1	Using the integrated battery	201
6.12.1.1	Removing the integrated battery	201
6.12.1.2	Inserting the integrated battery	201
6.12.2	Frame battery	202
6.12.2.1	Removing the frame battery	202
6.12.2.2	Inserting the frame battery	202
6.12.3	Charging the battery	202
6.13	Using the electric drive system	203
6.13.1	Switching on the electric drive system	203
6.13.1.1	Activating the eBike Lock function (optional)	203
6.13.2	Switching off the electric drive system	203
6.14	Using the control panels	204
6.14.1	Setting the level of assistance	204
6.14.2	Using the push assist system	204
6.15	Brake	206
6.15.1	Using the brake lever	206
6.16	Gear shift	207
6.16.1	Using the derailleur gears	207
6.16.2	Switching the SHIMANO Rapidfire derailleur gears	208
6.16.3	Switching SRAM AXS derailleur gears	209
6.17	Adjusting the suspension fork	210
6.17.1	Adjusting suspension fork suspension	210
6.17.1.1	Locking the SR SUNTOUR suspension fork	211
6.17.1.2	Locking the ROCKSHOX suspension fork out	212
6.17.1.3	Adjusting the ROCKSHOX suspension fork threshold	213
6.17.2	Adjusting suspension fork damping	214
6.17.2.1	Using ROCKSHOX high-speed compression damping	215

6.17.2.2	Using SR SUNTOUR high-speed compression damping	216
6.17.2.3	Using the SR SUNTOUR suspension fork low-speed compression damping	217
6.18	Parking the pedelec	218
6.18.1	Screwing in the quickly adjustable stem	219
6.18.2	Activating the eBike Lock function	220
7	Cleaning, maintenance and inspection	
7.1	Before each ride	225
7.1.1	Checking the guards	225
7.1.2	Checking the frame	225
7.1.3	Checking the fork	225
7.1.4	Checking the rear frame damper	225
7.1.5	Checking the pannier rack	225
7.1.6	Checking the mudguards	225
7.1.7	Check wheel concentricity	225
7.1.8	Checking the quick releases	225
7.1.9	Checking the suspension seat post	226
7.1.10	Checking the bell	226
7.1.11	Checking the handles	226
7.1.12	Checking the USB cover	226
7.1.13	Checking the riding light	226
7.1.14	Checking the brake	226
7.2	After each ride	227
7.2.1	Cleaning the riding light and reflectors	227
7.2.2	Cleaning the suspension fork	227
7.2.3	Maintaining the suspension fork	227
7.2.4	Cleaning the pedals	227
7.2.5	Cleaning the brake	227
7.2.6	Cleaning the suspension seat post	227
7.2.7	Cleaning the rear frame damper	227
7.3	Basic cleaning	228
7.3.1	Clean on-board computer and control panel	228
7.3.2	Cleaning the battery	228
7.3.3	Cleaning the motor	228
7.3.4	Clean Frame, fork, pannier rack, guards and kickstand	229
7.3.5	Cleaning the stem	229
7.3.6	Cleaning the handlebars	229
7.3.7	Clean handles	229
7.3.7.1	Cleaning leather handles	229
7.3.8	Cleaning the seat post	229
7.3.9	Cleaning the saddle	230
7.3.9.1	Cleaning the leather saddle	230
7.3.10	Cleaning the tyres	230
7.3.11	Cleaning the spokes and spoke nipples	230
7.3.12	Clean hub	230
7.3.13	Cleaning the switching elements	230
7.3.14	Cleaning the SRAM AXS rear derailleur	230
7.3.14.1	Cleaning the shifter	231
7.3.15	Clean cassette, chain wheels and front derailleur	231
7.3.16	Clean brake	231
7.3.16.1	Clean handbrake	231
7.3.17	Cleaning the brake disc	231
7.3.18	Cleaning the belt	231
7.3.19	Cleaning the chain	232
7.3.19.1	Clean chain, including all-round chain guard	232
7.4	Maintenance	233
7.4.1	Maintain frame	233
7.4.2	Maintain fork	233
7.4.3	Maintain pannier rack	234

7.4.4	Maintain mudguard	234
7.4.5	Servicing the kickstand	234
7.4.6	Maintaining the stem	234
7.4.7	Maintaining the handlebars	234
7.4.8	Maintaining the handles	235
7.4.8.1	Maintaining rubber handles	235
7.4.8.2	Maintaining the leather handles	235
7.4.9	Maintaining the seat post	235
7.4.9.1	Maintaining the suspension seat post	235
7.4.9.2	Maintaining the carbon seat post	235
7.4.10	Maintaining the rims	235
7.4.11	Maintaining the leather saddle	235
7.4.12	Maintaining the hub	236
7.4.13	Maintaining the spoke nipples	236
7.4.14	Maintaining the gear shift	236
7.4.14.1	Maintaining the rear derailleur articulated shafts and jockey wheel	236
7.4.14.2	Maintaining the shifter	236
7.4.15	Maintaining the pedals	236
7.4.16	Maintaining the chain	237
7.4.16.1	Maintaining the chain and all-round chain guard	237
7.4.17	Maintaining the battery	237
7.4.18	Maintaining the brake	238
7.4.18.1	Maintaining the handbrake	238
7.4.19	Lubricating the Eightpins seat post tube	238
7.5	Inspection	239
7.5.1	Checking the wheel	239
7.5.1.1	Checking tyre pressure	239
7.5.1.2	Checking the tyres	241
7.5.1.3	Checking the rims	242
7.5.1.4	Checking the nipple holes	242
7.5.1.5	Checking the nipple well	242
7.5.1.6	Checking the rim hooks	242
7.5.1.7	Checking the spokes	242
7.5.2	Checking the brake system	243
7.5.2.1	Checking the handbrake	243
7.5.2.2	Checking the hydraulic brake system	243
7.5.2.3	Checking the Bowden cables	243
7.5.2.4	Checking the disc brake	244
7.5.3	Checking the chain	245
7.5.3.1	Checking the chain tension	245
7.5.3.2	Checking the belt for wear	245
7.5.4	Checking the belt	247
7.5.4.1	Checking the belt for wear	247
7.5.4.2	Checking the belt sprockets for wear	247
7.5.4.3	Check belt tension	247
7.5.5	Checking the riding light	250
7.5.6	Checking the stem	251
7.5.7	Checking the handlebars	251
7.5.8	Checking the saddle	251
7.5.9	Checking the seat post	251
7.5.10	Check pedal.	251
7.5.11	Checking the gear shift	251
7.5.11.1	Checking the electric gear shift	252
7.5.11.2	Check the mechanical gear shift	252
7.5.11.3	Check derailleur gears	252
7.5.11.4	Checking the hub gear	252
7.5.11.5	Adjusting gear shift	253

8 Inspection and maintenance

8.1	Initial inspection	255
8.2	Major inspection	255
8.3	Component-specific maintenance	255
8.4	Carry out initial inspection	258
8.5	Perform major inspection	259
8.5.1	Inspect frame	266
8.5.1.1	Inspecting the carbon frame	266
8.5.2	Inspecting the pannier rack	266
8.5.3	Inspecting and maintaining the rear frame damper	266
8.5.4	Inspecting the gear hub	267
8.5.4.1	Adjusting the hub with cone bearing	267
8.5.5	Inspecting the stem	267
8.5.6	Inspect and grease steering headset	267
8.5.7	Inspecting the axle with quick release	268
8.5.8	Inspecting the fork	269
8.5.8.1	Inspecting the carbon suspension fork	269
8.5.8.2	Inspecting the suspension fork	269
8.5.9	Inspecting the seat post	270
8.5.9.1	Inspecting the carbon seat post	270
8.5.9.2	Inspecting and greasing BY.SCHULZ suspension seat post	270
8.5.9.3	Inspecting and greasing RS SUNTOUR suspension seat post	271
8.5.9.4	Inspecting the EIGHTPINS NGS2 seat post	272
8.5.9.5	Eightpins H01 seat post	278

9 Troubleshooting, fault clearance and repair

9.1	Preventing pain	282
9.1.1	Sitting discomfort	283
9.1.2	Pain in hips	283
9.1.3	Backache	283
9.1.4	Pain in shoulders and nape of neck	284
9.1.5	Numb or aching hands	284
9.1.6	Pain in upper thigh	284
9.1.7	Knee pain	285
9.1.8	Pain in the foot	285
9.2	Troubleshooting and fault clearance	286
9.2.1	Control panel or electric drive system won't start	286
9.2.2	Correcting errors in the assistance function	287
9.2.3	Correcting battery errors	288
9.2.4	Correcting errors on the control panel	289
9.2.5	Correcting disc brake faults	290
9.2.6	Correcting faults in the ROCKSHOX suspension fork	291
9.2.6.1	Rebound too fast	291
9.2.6.2	Rebounding too slowly	292
9.2.6.3	Suspension too soft on inclines	293
9.2.6.4	Excessively hard damping on bumps	294
9.2.7	Correcting faults in the SR SUNTOUR suspension fork	295
9.2.7.1	Rebound too fast	295
9.2.7.2	Rebounding too slowly	296
9.2.7.3	Suspension too soft on inclines	297
9.2.7.4	Excessively hard damping on bumps	298
9.2.8	Correcting faults in the ROCKSHOX rear frame damper	299
9.2.8.1	Rebound too fast	299
9.2.8.2	Rebounding too slowly	300
9.2.8.3	Suspension too soft on inclines	301
9.2.8.4	Excessively hard damping on bumps	302
9.2.9	Correcting faults in the SR SUNTOUR rear frame damper	303
9.2.9.1	Rebound too fast	303
9.2.9.2	Rebounding too slowly	304

9.2.9.3	Suspension too soft on inclines	305
9.2.9.4	Excessively hard damping on bumps	306
9.2.10	Correcting freewheel faults	307
9.2.11	Correcting lighting faults	308
9.2.12	Correcting faults in tyres	308
9.2.13	Correcting control seat post faults	308
9.2.14	Correcting other faults and errors	309
9.3	Repairs	310
9.3.1	Replacing the Mini Remote battery	310
9.3.2	Replacing pedelec components if eBike Lock function is installed	311
9.3.2.1	Replacing a smartphone	311
9.3.2.2	Replacing the on-board computer	311
9.3.2.3	Activating eBike Lock function after motor replacement	311
9.3.2.4	Connecting the Mini Remote to a different system controller	311
9.3.2.5	Recharging the SRAM battery	312
9.3.3	Replacing the SRAM AXS Controller battery	314
9.4	Repairs at the specialist dealer	315
9.4.1	Original parts and lubricants	315
9.4.2	Repairing the frame	315
9.4.2.1	Removing paint damage on frame	315
9.4.2.2	Removing damage from impact on the carbon frame	315
9.4.3	Repairing the suspension fork	315
9.4.3.1	Removing paint damage on the fork	315
9.4.3.2	Removing damage from impact on the carbon frame	315
9.4.3.3	Repairing the seat post	315
9.4.3.4	Repairing damage from impact on the carbon seat post	315
9.4.4	Replacing the riding light	316
9.4.5	Adjusting the headlight	316
9.4.6	Checking suspension fork-tyre clearance	316
10	Recycling and disposal	
10.1	Guidelines on removal of waste	317
11	Documents	
11.1	Assembly report	319
11.2	Inspection and maintenance log	321
11.3	Parts list	325
11.3.1	Sonic EVO AM 2 Carbon, 29/27.5	325
11.3.2	Sonic EVO AM 3 Carbon, 29/27.5	328
11.3.3	Sonic EVO AM 4 Carbon, 29/27.5	331
11.3.4	Sonic EVO AM Team Carbon	334
11.3.5	Sonic EVO TR 2, 29 Carbon	336
11.3.6	Sonic EVO TR-I, 29 Carbon	338
11.4	Charger operating instructions	341
12	Glossary	
12.1	Abbreviations	351
12.2	Simplified terms	351
13	Appendix	
I.	Translation of the original EC/EU Declaration of Conformity	352
II.	Directive declaration of conformity with RED Directive	353
14	Keyword index	

Thank you for your trust!

BULLS all-terrain pedelecs are premium-quality sports equipment. You have made an excellent choice. Your specialist dealer will provide you with guidance and instruction and assemble your product. Your specialist dealer will also be happy to assist you in the future, whether you require an inspection, retrofit or repair.

You are receiving these operating instructions with your new pedelec. Please take time to become familiar with your new pedelec. Use the tips and suggestions in the operating instructions. They will help you to enjoy your pedelec for a long time to come. We hope you have fun and wish you well on all of your rides!

Download the operating instructions onto your smartphone at the following link so that you can use them when you are out riding:



www.bulls.de/service/downloads.

Copyright

© ZEG Zweirad-Einkaufs-Genossenschaft eG

Distribution or reproduction of these operating instructions and utilisation or communication of their content is prohibited unless expressly approved. Anyone who does not comply with these restrictions is liable for compensation. All rights reserved in the event that a patent, utility model or industrial design is registered.

Subject to internal changes

The information contained in these *operating instructions* are the approved technical specifications at the time of printing. In addition to the functions described here, the software may be modified at any time to rectify errors and extend functions.

Any significant changes are included in a new published version of the operating instructions. All changes and new versions of the operating instructions are published on the following website:

www.bulls.de/service/downloads.

Editing

Text and images:
ZEG Zweirad-Einkaufs-Genossenschaft eG
Longericher Strasse 2
50739 Köln, Germany

Translation

RKT Übersetzungs- und Dokumentations-GmbH
Bahnhofstrasse 27
78713 Schramberg
Germany

If you have any questions or problems regarding these operating instructions, please contact:

tecdoc@zeg.de

1 About these operating instructions

1.1 Manufacturer

ZEG Zweirad-Einkaufs-Genossenschaft eG
Longericher Strasse 2
50739 Köln, Germany

Tel.: +49 221 17959 0
Fax: +49 221 17959 31
Email: info@zeg.de

1.2 Laws, standards and directives

The *operating instructions* comply with the essential requirements specified in:

- Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC
- Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive 2014/30/EU
- ISO 20607:2018 Safety of machinery– Operating instructions– General drafting principles
- EN 15194:2018 Cycles – Electrically power assisted cycles – pedelec bicycles
- EN 11243:2016, Cycles – Luggage carriers for bicycles – Requirements and test methods
- ISO 17100:2016-05 Translation Services – Requirements for translation services.

1.3 Language

The *original operating instructions* are written in German. A translation is invalid without the *original operating instructions*.

1.4 For your information

Different markings are used in the operating instructions to make them easier to read.

	Text for specialist dealers
	Notice on replacing components
	Notice on fitness

1.4.1 Warnings

Warnings indicate hazardous situations and actions. You will find three categories of warnings in the operating instructions:



May lead to serious or even fatal injuries if ignored. Medium-risk hazard.



May lead to minor or moderate injuries if ignored. Low-risk hazard.



May lead to material damage if ignored.

1.4.2 Markups

You will find ten text markups in the *operating instructions*:

Stylised form	Use
<i>Italics</i>	Glossary term, first mention in section
<u>Underlined in blue</u>	Link
<u>Underlined in grey</u>	Cross references
✓	Requirements
▶	Instructions for actions without specific order
6	Instructions for actions in specified order
⇒	Result of the action
SPACED	Indicators on the display screen
•	Bulleted lists
<u>Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment</u>	A note beneath the heading indicates components which can be used as an option

Table 1: Markups

1.5 Aim of the operating instructions

These operating instructions are not a substitute for personal instruction by the specialist dealer supplying the bike. These operating instructions are an integral part of the pedelec. Therefore, if it is re-sold at a later time, they must be handed over to the subsequent owner.

These operating instructions are mainly written for people riding pedelecs.

Paragraphs with a white background are intended to enable non-professionals to make safe settings on the pedelec, use it, clean it and identify and eliminate any faults.



Sections intended for technical staff are highlighted in blue and marked with a spanner symbol.

These sections aim to allow trained technical staff (bicycle mechatronics engineers, bicycle mechanics or others) to carry out initial assembly, adjustment, inspection and repair safely.

Technical staff also need to read all sections for pedelec riders and operators to ensure they can provide better customer service.

Always fill out all reports in Section 11.1 and Section 11.2 when carrying out work.

Section		Rider	Specialist dealer
1	About these operating instructions	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Safety	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	Description	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	Transporting and storing	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	Assembly	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	Operation	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	Cleaning, maintenance and inspection	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	Inspection and maintenance	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9.1	Preventing pain	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9.2	Troubleshooting and fault clearance	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9.3	Repairs	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9.4	Repairs at the specialist dealer	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	Recycling and disposal	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	Documents	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	Glossary	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	Appendix	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
14	Keyword index	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Table 2: Target groups-section matrix

1.6 Type number and model

These operating instructions are an integral part of pedelecs with the type numbers:

Type no.	Model	Pedelec type
23-18-3067	Sonic EVO AM 2 Carbon, 29/27.5	Mountain bike
23-18-3068	Sonic EVO AM 3 Carbon, 29/27.5	Mountain bike
23-18-3069	Sonic EVO AM 4 Carbon, 29/27.5	Mountain bike
23-18-3070	Sonic EVO AM Team Carbon	Mountain bike
23-18-3073	Sonic EVO TR 2, 29 Carbon	Mountain bike
23-18-3074	Sonic EVO TR-I, 29 Carbon	Mountain bike

Table 3: Type number, model and pedelec type

1.7 Frame number

Each frame has an individual frame number stamped on it (see Figure 3). The frame number can be used to associate the pedelec with the owner. The frame number is the most important identifier for verifying ownership.

1.8 Identifying the operating instructions

The operating instructions identification number is located in bottom left-hand corner of each page.

The identification number is composed of the document number, the version number and the release date.

Identification number	MY23BM01 - c2_1.0_16.12.2022
------------------------------	------------------------------

2 Safety

2.1 Residual risk

Pedelecs pose the following residual risks:

- Risk of fire and explosion
- Electric shock
- Risk of a crash
- Risk of amputation
- Key breaking off
- Malfunctions due to Bluetooth®



2.1.1 Risk of fire and explosion

Never charge if there is a critical fault

If a charger is connected to the drive system when a critical error is reported, the battery may be damaged permanently and may catch fire.

- ▶ Connect charger to fault-free electric drive system only.

Protect against penetrating water

The battery is only protected from spray water. Penetration by water can cause a short circuit. The battery may self-ignite and explode.

- ▶ Never immerse battery in water.
- ▶ Take battery out of service if you suspect water has penetrated it.

Avoid heat

Temperatures over 60 °C can also cause liquid to leak from the battery and the battery will become damaged. The battery may self-ignite and explode.

- ▶ Protect the battery against heat.
- ▶ Never store next to hot objects.
- ▶ Never expose battery to continuous direct sunlight.
- ▶ Avoid wide temperature fluctuations.

Never use incorrect charger

Chargers with excessive voltage damage batteries. This may cause a fire or an explosion.

- ▶ Only use approved batteries to charge.

Prevent short circuit due to interconnection

Metal objects may interconnect the battery's electrical terminals. The battery may self-ignite and explode.

- ▶ Never insert paper clips, screws, coins, keys and other small parts into the battery.
- ▶ Place the battery on clean surfaces only. Prevent charging socket and contacts against contamination from dirt, sand and similar.

Handling a damaged or faulty battery

Faulty batteries are hazardous goods. These include:

- Cells or batteries which have been identified as faulty for safety reasons;
- Batteries which have leaked or discharged gas;
- Cells or batteries which have sustained external or physical damage;
- Cells or batteries which have not yet undergone a safety test.

The safety electronics may fail if the batteries are damaged or faulty. The residual voltage can cause a short circuit. The battery may self-ignite and explode.

- ▶ Only use and charge battery and accessories if they are in perfect condition.
- ▶ Never open or repair the battery.
- ▶ Batteries with external damage must be removed from service immediately.
- ▶ If a battery is dropped or struck, remove it from service and keep it under observation for at least 24 hours.
- ▶ Contact specialist dealer.

Storing faulty batteries

Your specialist dealer will dispose of faulty batteries.

▶ Take faulty batteries to your specialist dealer.



▶ Store the battery in a safety container in a dry place as per special regulations (ADR SV 376, P908) until you dispose of it.



Figure 1: Example of a safety container

▶ Never store near flammable substances.

▶ Dispose of faulty batteries in the correct manner.

Avoid overheating in the charger

The charger heats up when charging the battery. If the battery is not allowed to cool down sufficiently, it can cause a fire or burns to the hands.

▶ Never use charger on a highly flammable surface.

▶ Never cover the charger during charging.

▶ Never leave battery unattended during charging.

Cool down overheated brakes and motors

The brakes and the motor may become very hot during operation. There is a risk of burns or fire in case of contact.

▶ Never touch the brakes or the motor immediately after a ride.

▶ Never place the pedelec on a flammable surface, such as grass or wood, directly after use.



2.1.2 Electric shock

Never use damaged network components

Damaged chargers, cables and plug connectors increase the risk of electric shock.

- ▶ Check the charger, cable and plug connector before each use. Never use a damaged charger.

Avoid water penetrating

If water penetrates into the charger, there is a risk of electric shock.

- ▶ Use the charger indoors only.

Dealing with condensate

Condensation may form in the charger and in the battery when the temperature changes from cold to hot, causing a short circuit.

- ▶ Wait until both charger and battery are at room temperature before connecting them.



2.1.3 Risk of a crash

Set the quick release correctly

Excessively high clamping force will damage the quick release and cause it to lose its function. Insufficient clamping force will result in unfavourable transmission of force. This can cause components to break. This will cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Never fasten a quick release using a tool (e.g. hammer or pliers).
- ▶ Only use the clamping lever with the specified set clamping force.

Use correct torque

If a screw is fastened too tightly, it may break. If a screw is not fastened enough, it may loosen. This will cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Always observe the indicated tightening torque on the screw or in Section 3.5.15.

Use approved brakes only

The wheels are designed exclusively for use with rim brakes or disc brakes. The wheel may break if an incorrect brake is used. This will cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Only use the approved brakes on the wheel.



2.1.4 Risk of amputation

The brake disc in disc brakes is so sharp that it can cause serious injuries to fingers if they are inserted into the brake disc openings.

The chain wheels and belt sprockets can draw in fingers, thus causing serious injuries to fingers.

- ▶ Always keep fingers well away from rotating brake discs and the chain or belt drive.

2.1.5 Key breaking off

If you leave a key inserted when riding or transporting the pedelec, it may break off or the locking system may open accidentally.

- ▶ Pull the key from the battery lock.

2.1.6 Malfunctions due to Bluetooth®

If you use the on-board computer with Bluetooth® and/or Wi-Fi®, it may cause interference with other devices, other equipment, aircraft, and medical devices, such as pacemakers and hearing aids.

Likewise, it cannot be completely ruled out that you will cause harm to people and animals in the immediate vicinity.

- ▶ Never use the pedelec with Bluetooth® when in close proximity to medical devices, filling stations, chemical plants, areas at risk of explosion and in blasting zones.
- ▶ Never use pedelec with Bluetooth® in aircraft.
- ▶ Avoid operating for longer periods in close proximity to the body.

2.2 Toxic substances

If substances are released or used which pose a risk to people and the environment, effective protective measures must be taken.

Hazards, contamination and health hazards are possibly posed by:

- Carcinogenic, germ-cell-mutagenic and reproduction-toxic substances
- Toxic substances
- Irritants (skin, respiratory system) and corrosive substances

What might happen?

- Serious harmful effects to health
- Threat to life
- Hazard to bystanders due to carry-over and contamination in the personal environment



2.2.1 Carcinogenic substances

Carcinogenic hazardous substances are substances which can trigger cancer or promotes the formation of cancer. They are classified as categories 1A, 1B and 2 under European hazardous substances legislation and are labelled with the H-phrases codes H350/ H350i and H351. It is essential to implement suitable protective measures due to the serious consequences for health and the occasionally long period of time it takes before the disease manifests itself.

Suspension oil

If you come into contact with the suspension oil in the fork, the 8pins seat post or the rear frame damper, it will irritate the respiratory tract and can cause cancer, sterility and changes to the genetic make-up of germ cells oil cause.

- ▶ Never dismantle the rear frame damper or the suspension fork.
- ▶ It is forbidden for pregnant women to carry out maintenance and cleaning tasks.
- ▶ Avoid skin coming into contact with suspension oil.



2.2.2 Toxic substances

Toxic substances (also known as poison or toxins) refer to substances which can cause damage to living beings if they enter the organism above a specific low dose. The more the ingested amount of a toxic substance increases, the greater the likelihood of damage to health due to poisoning is. This can lead to death.

Brake fluid

Brake fluid may leak out after an accident or due to material fatigue. Brake fluid can be fatal if swallowed or inhaled.

- ▶ Never dismantle the brake system.
- ▶ Avoid contact with skin.
- ▶ Do not inhale vapours.

Suspension oil

The suspension oil in the fork, the 8pins seat post and the rear frame damper is toxic to the touch.

- ▶ Never dismantle the rear frame damper or the suspension fork.
- ▶ It is forbidden for pregnant women to carry out maintenance and cleaning tasks.
- ▶ Avoid skin coming into contact with suspension oil.



2.2.3 Irritants and corrosive substances

Corrosive substances (also known as corrosives) destroy living tissue or attack surfaces. Corrosive substances may be in solid, liquid or gaseous form.

Irritants are hazardous substances which irritate the skin and mucous membranes once you come into contact with them. This may cause inflammation of the affected areas.

Defective battery

Liquids and vapours may leak from damaged or faulty batteries. Excessively high temperatures may also cause liquids and vapours to leak from the battery. Such liquids and vapours can irritate the airways and cause burns.

- ▶ Never dismantle the battery.
- ▶ Avoid contact with skin.
- ▶ Never inhale vapours.

2.3 Requirements for the pedelec rider

The pedelec rider must have adequate physical, motor and mental abilities to ride on public roads. A minimum age of 14 years is recommended.

2.4 Vulnerable groups

- ▶ Keep batteries and the charger away from children and people with reduced physical, sensory or mental capacities or lacking in experience and knowledge.
- ▶ Children and young people must be provided with comprehensive instructions by a legal guardian.

2.5 Personal protective equipment

- ▶ Wear sturdy shoes.
- ▶ Wear tight-fitting clothes only.
- ▶ Wear a suitable mountain bike helmet with highly effective impact absorption. Wear a full-face helmet in bike parks.
- ▶ Wear protectors on knees, elbows, back and neck (e.g. safety jacket).
- ▶ Wear gloves.
- ▶ Wear well-fitting glasses.

2.6 Safety guards

Three safety guards on the pedelec protect pedelec riders against heat, dirt or moving parts:

- The motor cover on the motor casing protects against heat.
- ▶ Never remove the guards.
- ▶ Check the guards on a regular basis.
- ▶ Take pedelec out of service if a guard is damaged or missing. Contact specialist dealer.

2.7 Safety markings and safety instructions

Pedelec and battery nameplates contain the following safety markings and safety instructions:

Symbol	Explanation
	General warning
	Adhere to the instructions for use

Table 4: Safety markings

Symbol	Explanation
	Read the instructions
	Separate collection of electrical and electronic devices
	Separate collection of ordinary and rechargeable batteries
	Must not be thrown into fire (burning prohibited)
	It is forbidden to open any batteries
	Device of protection class II
	Only suitable for use indoors
	Fuse (device fuse)
	EU conformity
	Recyclable material
	Protect from temperatures above 50 °C and direct sunlight

Table 5: Safety instructions

2.8 What to do in an emergency

2.8.1 Dangerous situation in road traffic

- ▶ If you encounter any hazards or dangers in road traffic, apply the brake until the pedelec comes to a halt. The brake acts as an emergency stop system in such cases.

2.8.2 Leaked brake fluid

- ▶ Remove those affected from the danger area to fresh air.
- ▶ Never leave those affected unattended.
- ▶ Remove any clothing contaminated with brake fluid immediately.
- ▶ Never inhale vapours. Ensure sufficient ventilation.
- ▶ Wear gloves and safety glasses as protective equipment.
- ▶ Keep unprotected persons away.
- ▶ Take care with leaked brake fluid as it poses a slip hazard.
- ▶ Keep leaked brake fluid away from naked flames, hot surfaces and sources of ignition.
- ▶ Avoid contact with skin and eyes.

If inhaled

- 1 Take in fresh air.
- 2 Immediately consult a doctor in case of any discomfort.

After skin contact

- 1 Wash affected skin with soap and water and rinse well.
- 2 Remove contaminated clothing.
- 3 Consult doctor in the event of pain or discomfort.

After contact with eyes

- 1 Rinse eyes under flowing water for at least ten minutes with the lids open; also rinse under lids.
- 2 Immediately consult a doctor in case of any pain or discomfort.

If swallowed

- 1 Rinse out mouth with water. Never induce vomiting. Risk of aspiration.
- 2 If a person is lying on their back and vomiting, place them in the recovery position.
- 3 Seek medical advice immediately.

Environmental protection measures

- ▶ Never allow brake fluid to flow into sewage, water courses or groundwater.
- ▶ Notify the relevant authorities if fluid penetrates the ground, water courses or the sewage system.
- ▶ Dispose of leaked brake fluid in an environmentally responsible way in accordance with statutory regulations (see Section 10.1).
- ▶ The brake system must be repaired immediately if brake fluid leaks out. Contact specialist dealer.

2.8.3 Battery vapour emission

Vapours may be emitted if the battery is damaged or used improperly. The vapours may cause respiratory tract irritation.

- 1 Get into fresh air.
- 2 Consult doctor in the event of pain or discomfort.

After contact with eyes

- 1 Carefully rinse eyes with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes. Protect unaffected eye.
- 2 Seek medical advice immediately.

After skin contact

- 1 Remove any solid particles immediately.
- 2 Remove contaminated clothing immediately.
- 3 Rinse the affected area with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes.
- 4 Then dab the affected skin gently. Do not rub dry.
- 5 Immediately consult a doctor if there is any redness, pain or discomfort.

2.8.4 Battery fire

The safety electronics may fail if the battery is damaged or faulty. The residual voltage can cause a short circuit. The battery may self-ignite and explode.

- 1 Keep your distance if the battery becomes deformed or starts to emit smoke.
- 2 If charging, remove the plug connector from the socket.
- 3 Contact the fire service immediately.
 - ▶ Use Class fire extinguishers to put out the fire.
 - ▶ Never extinguish damaged batteries with water or allow them to come into contact with water.

Inhaling vapours can cause intoxication.

- ▶ Stand on the side of the fire where the wind is blowing from.
- ▶ Use breathing apparatus if possible.

2.8.5 Oil and lubricant leaks from the rear frame damper

- ▶ Dispose of leaked oils and lubricants in an environmentally responsible way as per statutory regulations (see Section 10.1).
- ▶ Contact specialist dealer.

2.8.6 Oil and lubricant leaks from the fork

- ▶ Dispose of leaked oils and lubricants in an environmentally responsible way in accordance with statutory regulations (see Section 10.1).

2.8.7 Data privacy information

When the pedelec is connected to the BOSCH diagnosis tool 3, data is transferred to BOSCH eBike Systems (Robert Bosch GmbH) on the use of the Bosch drive unit, including its energy consumption and temperature, to help improve the product.

You will find more information on the Bosch eBike website:

www.bosch-ebike.com.

3 Description

3.1 Proper use

All checklists and instructions for actions in these operating instructions met. Approved accessories can be installed by specialist staff.

Use the pedelec when it is in perfect, proper working order only. National requirements may apply to the pedelec which the standard equipment may not meet. Different regulations apply across the country to the riding light, reflectors and other components when riding on public roads. The general laws and the

regulations for the prevention of accidents and environmental protection in the respective country of use must be adhered to.

The rechargeable batteries are designed to supply power to the pedelec motor only. Never use the batteries for other purposes.

Each pedelec is assigned a pedelec type, which determines its proper use, function and area of use.

Mountain bike



Mountain bikes are designed for sports use. Its specific design features are tyres with a thick tread, a reinforced frame structure and a wide transmission range.

Mountain bikes are sports bikes and not a means of transport. In addition to being physically fit, riders need time to adapt to using the pedelec. Appropriate training is required for its use. It is especially important to practice braking and riding around bends.

The strain on hands, wrists, arms, shoulders, the neck and back is considerable. Inexperienced pedelec riders tend to brake too hard and lose control as a result.

Table 6: Proper use

3.1.1 Improper use

Failure to adhere to the proper use poses a risk of personal injury and material damage. It is prohibited to use the pedelec in the following ways:

- Riding on public roads. Mountain bikes must be retrofitted with riding light, a bell and other fittings as specified by national laws and regulations before they are used on public roads. The tyres also need to be adapted.
- when the electrical drive system been manipulated
- changing, eliminating or effacing frame numbers, nameplates or component serial numbers, or manipulating them in any other way
- riding with a damaged or incomplete pedelec
- riding over steps
- riding through deep water
- charging with an incorrect charger
- lending the pedelec to untrained pedelec rider
- carrying other people
- riding with excessive baggage
- riding with no hands
- riding on ice and snow
- improper servicing
- improper repair

- tough areas of use, such as professional competitions
- acrobatics, riding up ramps, stunt riding or flying stunts.

3.1.2 Maximum permitted total weight (PTW)

The pedelec may only be loaded to its *maximum permitted total weight* (PTW).

The maximum permitted total weight is

- the weight of the fully assembled pedelec
- plus body weight
- plus baggage

Type no.	Model	PTW [kg]
23-18-3067	Sonic EVO AM 2 Carbon, 29/27.5	150
23-18-3068	Sonic EVO AM 3 Carbon, 29/27.5	150
23-18-3069	Sonic EVO AM 4 Carbon, 29/27.5	150
23-18-3070	Sonic EVO AM Team Carbon	150
23-18-3073	Sonic EVO TR 2, 29 Carbon	150
23-18-3074	Sonic EVO TR-I, 29 Carbon	150

3.1.3 Environmental requirements

You can ride the pedelec within a temperature range between -5 °C and +40 °C. The electric drive system is limited in its performance outside this temperature range.

Operating temperature	-5 °C... +40 °C
-----------------------	-----------------

During winter use, especially at temperatures below 0 °C, we recommend that you don't insert a battery charged and stored at room temperature into the pedelec until just before setting off. We recommend using thermal protection sleeves when riding longer distances at low temperatures.

Temperatures under -10 °C and over +60 °C must be avoided as a general rule. Never put the battery in a car in summer or store it in direct sunlight.

You must also keep within the following temperature ranges:

Transportation temperature	+10 °C... +40 °C
Storage temperature	+10 °C... +40 °C
Work environment temperature	+15 °C... +25 °C
Charging temperature	+10 °C... +40 °C

The nameplate contains symbols for the pedelec's area of use.

- Check what tracks and roads you may ride on before setting off for the first time.

3.1.4 Area of use

Area of use	City and trekking bicycles	Child's bicycles/ bicycles for young adults	Mountain bikes	Racing bicycle	Cargo bike	Folding bicycle
 1	 Suitable for tarmacked and paved roads.	 Suitable for tarmacked and paved roads.		 Suitable for tarmacked and paved roads.	 Suitable for tarmacked and paved roads.	 Suitable for tarmacked and paved roads.
 2	Suitable for tarmacked roads, cycle paths, firm gravel paths and roads, and longer sections with moderate slopes and jumps up to 15 cm.	Suitable for tarmacked roads, cycle paths, firm gravel paths and roads, and longer sections with moderate slopes and jumps up to 15 cm.	Suitable for tarmacked roads, cycle paths, firm gravel paths and roads, and longer sections with moderate slopes and jumps up to 15 cm.	Suitable for tarmacked roads, cycle paths, firm gravel paths and roads, and longer sections with moderate slopes and jumps up to 15 cm.		Suitable for tarmacked roads, cycle paths, firm gravel paths and roads, and longer sections with moderate slopes and jumps up to 15 cm.
 3		Suitable for tarmacked roads, cycle paths and easy to demanding off-road riding, sections with moderate slopes and jumps up to 61 cm.	Suitable for tarmacked roads, cycle paths and easy to demanding off-road riding, sections with moderate slopes and jumps up to 61 cm.			
 4			Suitable for tarmacked roads, cycle paths and easy to demanding off-road riding, limited downhill use and jumps up to 122 cm.			

Table 7: Area of use

The pedelec is unsuitable for the following areas of use:

Area of use	City and trekking bicycles	Child's bicycles/ bicycles for young adults	Mountain bikes	Racing bicycle	Cargo bike	Folding bicycle
						
 1	Never drive off-road or perform jumps.	Never drive off-road or perform jumps.		Never drive off-road or perform jumps.	Never drive off-road or perform jumps.	Never drive off-road or perform jumps.
 2	Never drive off-road or perform jumps over 15 cm.	Never drive off-road or perform jumps over 15 cm.	Never drive off-road or perform jumps over 15 cm.	Never drive off-road or perform jumps over 15 cm.		
 3		Never ride downhill or perform jumps over 61 cm.	Never ride downhill or perform jumps over 61 cm.			
 4			Never traverse extremely difficult off-road terrain or perform jumps over 122 cm.			

Table 8: Unsuitable terrain

3.1.5 App, smartphone and operating system

3.1.5.1 eBike Flow app

The rider needs to register with BOSCH on a PC or their smartphone and create a user account to use all the drive system's functions.

A compatible smartphone is required with the eBike Flow app installed to use control panels to their full extent.

eBike Flow can be used to establish a Bluetooth® connection between the smartphone and the electric drive system, between the smartphone and the system controller and the system controller and the mini remote.

- ▶ The eBike Flow can be downloaded free of charge from the Apple App Store or the Google Play Store.

3.1.5.2 Minimum requirements for smartphones

A smartphone with the following characteristics is required as a minimum:

Smartphone type	Operating system minimum requirement
iPhone	iOS Version 14.0 or higher and BLE 5.0 (BLE = Bluetooth Low Energy)
Android smartphone	Android 7.1 or higher and BLE 5.0 (BLE = Bluetooth Low Energy)

3.2 Nameplate

The nameplate is situated on the frame. The precise position of the nameplate is shown in Figure 3.

The nameplate contains up to twelve pieces of information.

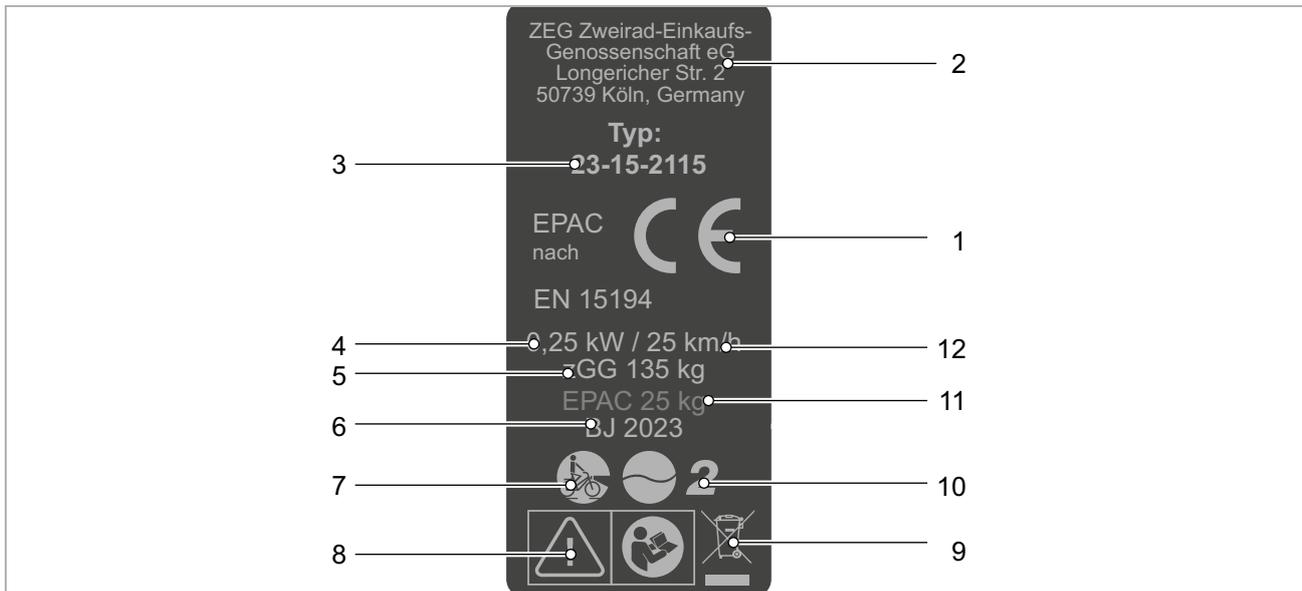


Figure 2: Example ZEG nameplate

No.	Designation	Description	More information
1	CE marking	The manufacturer uses the CE marking to declare that the pedelec complies with applicable requirements.	Appendix
2	Manufacturer	You can contact the manufacturer at the address indicated.	Section 1.1
3	Type number	All pedelec models have an eight-digit type number, which is used to specify the design model year, the type of pedelec and the version.	Section 1.6
4	Maximum continuous power rating	The maximum continuous power rating is the greatest possible power for the electric motor output shaft over 30 minutes.	...
5	Maximum permitted total weight (PTW)	The maximum permitted total weight is the weight of the fully assembled pedelec with the body weight plus the baggage.	Section 3.1.2
6	Year of manufacture	The year of manufacture is the year in which the pedelec was manufactured.	...
7	Pedelec type	Each pedelec is assigned a pedelec type, which determines its proper use, function and area of use.	Section 3.1.1
8	Safety markings	Safety markings warn of hazards.	Section 2.7
9	Disposal instructions	Follow the guidelines on waste disposal when disposing of the pedelec.	Section 10.1
10	Area of use	Ride pedelec in permitted locations only.	Section 3.1.4
11	Weight of the ready-to-ride pedelec (optional; only for pedelecs 25 kg or more)	The weight of the ready-to-ride pedelec is specified as a weight of 25 kg or above and refers to its weight at the time of purchase. Any extra accessories need to be added to the weight.	Section 4.1
12	Shut-off speed	The speed that the pedelec reaches at the moment when the current has dropped to zero or to the no-load current value.	...

Table 9: Explanation of information on the nameplate

3.3 Components

3.3.1 Overview

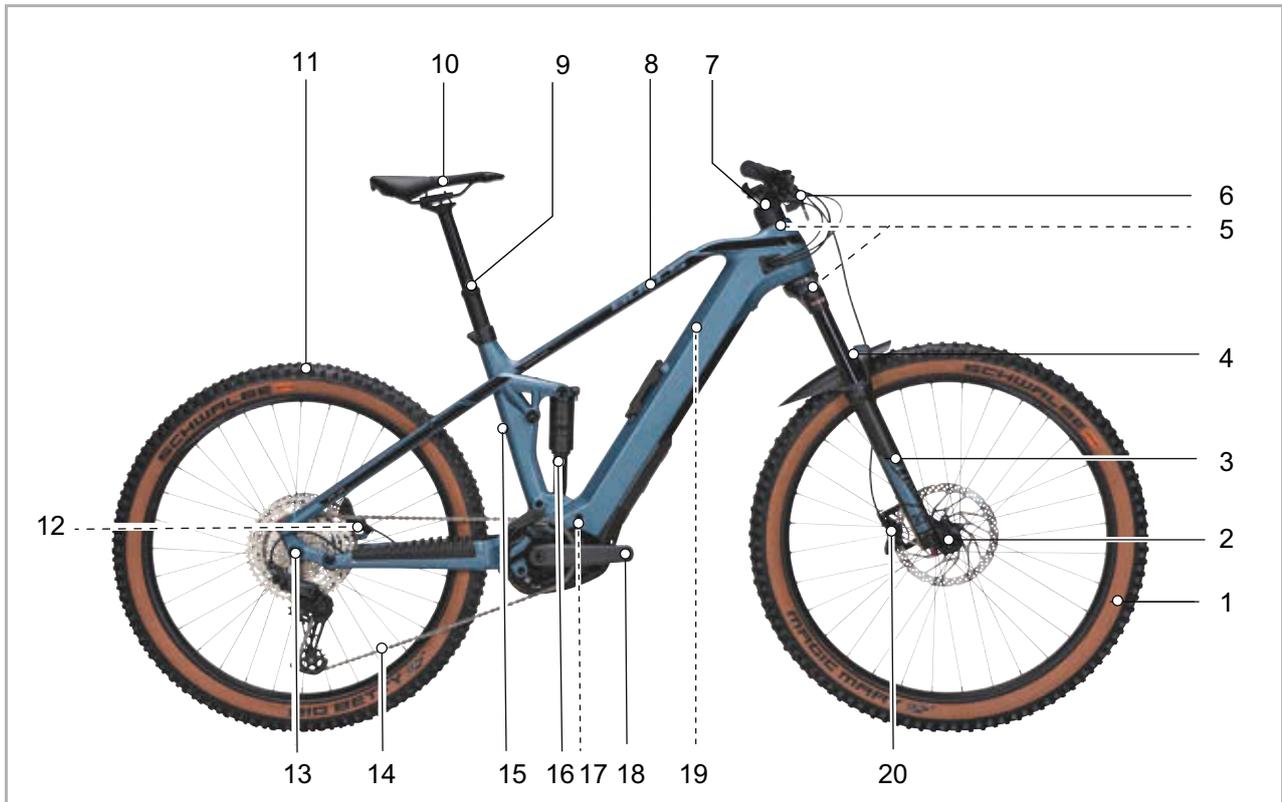


Figure 3: Pedelec viewed from right: Sonic EVOAM 2 Carbon used as example

1	Wheel	10	Saddle	19	Nameplate
2	Hub	11	Wheel	20	Front wheel brake
3	Suspension fork	12	Rear wheel brake		
4	Guard	13	Hub		
5	Steering headset	14	Chain		
6	Handlebars	15	Frame number		
7	Stem	16	Rear frame damper		
8	Frame	17	Motor		
9	Seat post	18	Pedal		
		19	Rechargeable battery		

3.3.2 Chassis

The chassis comprises two components:

- Frame and
- steering system

3.3.2.1 Frame

The frame absorbs all forces which act on pedelec from body weight, pedalling and the ground. The frame also acts as a carrier for most components.

The frame geometry determines the pedelec's ride performance. A frame comprises the following elements:

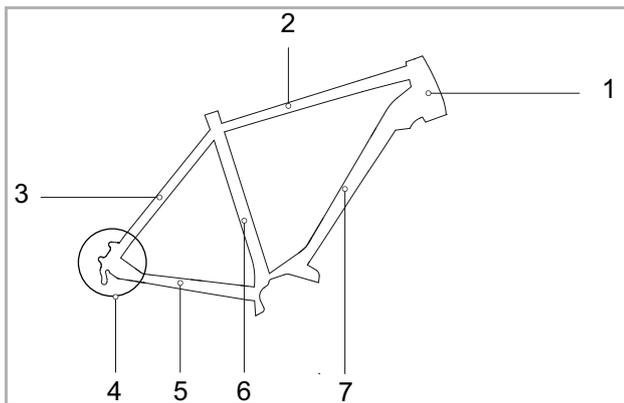


Figure 4: Elements of the frame

- | | |
|---|----------------------|
| 1 | Head tube |
| 2 | Top tube |
| 3 | Rear frame seat stay |
| 4 | Rear frame fork end |
| 5 | Chain stay |
| 6 | Seat tube |
| 7 | Down tube |

Suspension frames also feature a rear frame damper.

Carbon frame

Carbon (CFRP) is a carbon-fibre-reinforced polymer made of high-strength, rigid fibres. Carbon frames comprise several layers of carbon with an epoxy resin matrix. The uppermost layer is known as the visible layer.

Benefits

- Carbon frames are more rigid than aluminium and offer greater fatigue strength.
- Carbon frames do not rust.
- If carbon frames are fitted correctly and are not involved in a serious accident, they have a similar long life cycle to aluminium frames.
- Fatigue is significantly less common in carbon frames than in aluminium frames.

Disadvantages

- Carbon breaks if the maximum load is exceeded.
- Carbon is highly delicate. Interior damage may not be visible on the outside after an accident. Damage can only be detected by pulse thermography or ultrasonic excitation, for example, at a specialist retailer's.
- Carbon frames are sensitive to heat. Several hours over 65 °C can soften the frame and cause the individual layers of carbon to separate from one another. This is called delamination.
- Fractures which cut through carbon fibres cannot be repaired. A new frame needs to be acquired in such a case.
- Carbon is very difficult to recycle.

Frame size

The size of the frame must be adjusted to the rider's height.

City and trekking bicycle, folding bicycle and cargo bike

The tolerance for the frame height and its associated top tube length is somewhat greater for city bicycles due to the more upright riding position. As the handlebars and saddle can be adjusted to the rider's height, the range of recommended frame sizes can be somewhat wider.

Rider's height [cm]	Frame size [cm]	
155... 165	S	43... 48
165... 175	M	48... 53
175... 185	L	53... 58
185... 195	XL	58... 62
195... 215	XXL	62... 65

Table 10: Recommended frame size for city and trekking bicycles

Mountain bike

The frame geometries for mountain bikes differ depending on the type and area of use. The frame size is not dependent on the wheel size. The differences are already taken into account in the recommended frame sizes.

Rider's height [cm]	Frame size [cm]	Wheel size [Inches]
150... 160	33... 37	26
160... 170	38... 43	26, 27.5
170... 180	43... 47	26, 27.5, 29
180... 190	47... 52	26, 27.5, 29
190... 200	51... 56	27.5, 29
200... 215	53... 60	27.5, 29

Table 11: Recommended frame size for mountain bikes

Racing bicycles and gravel bikes

The different frame heights are closer together on racing bicycles and gravel bikes. Smaller increments in the frame heights ensure precise adjustment to the rider's height.

The seat on the pedelec is largely determined by the length of the top tube:

- The shorter the top tube is, the steeper the sitting position is.
- The longer the top tube is, the more stretched-out the sitting position is.

Rider's height [cm]	Frame size [cm]
160... 175	XS
165... 180	S
170... 185	M
175... 190	L
180... 195	XL
185... 200	XXL

Table 12: Recommended frame size for racing bicycles and gravel bikes

Bicycle for young adults

A person grows in height rapidly during adolescence. As a result, the frame size needs to be checked every six months.

Rider's height [cm]	Frame size [cm]
140... 150	33... 35
150... 160	35... 38
160... 170	38... 41
170... 180	41... 46
180... 190	46... 53

Table 13: Recommended frame size for mountain bikes and bicycles for young adults

Child's bike

Children are growing constantly. As a result, the frame size needs to be checked every six months.

It is important that riders, especially learners, can safely put both feet on the ground. Children thus need a pedelec that is appropriate for their height. This is the only way to ensure a safe ride.

Rider's height [cm]	Wheel size [inches]
85... 110	12
90... 120	16
100... 125	18
110... 130	20
120... 145	24
135... 165	26

Table 14: Recommended wheel size for child's bicycles

3.3.2.2 Rear frame damper

A rear frame damper is primarily fitted to mountain bikes and helps to protect the pedelec and rider against impacts and vibrations caused by uneven ground.

3.3.2.3 Rear frame damper suspension

A rear frame damper deflects when a steel spring, air suspension, or both suspension types act on it.

Negative deflection (sag)

Sag is the percentage of the entire spring deflection that is compressed by the rider's body weight, including equipment (such as a backpack), their seating position and frame geometry. Sag is not caused by riding.

The rear frame damper rebounds at a controlled speed if it is optimally adjusted. The rear wheel does not bounce off rough surfaces or the ground;

it stays in contact with the ground instead (blue line).

The saddle is raised slightly if the bump is compensated and gently sinks downwards when the suspension deflects as soon as the wheel touches the ground after the bump. The rear frame damper rebounds in a controlled way, so that the rider remains sitting in a horizontal position when the next bump is absorbed. The suspension motion is predictable and controlled. The rider is not thrown upwards or forwards (green line).

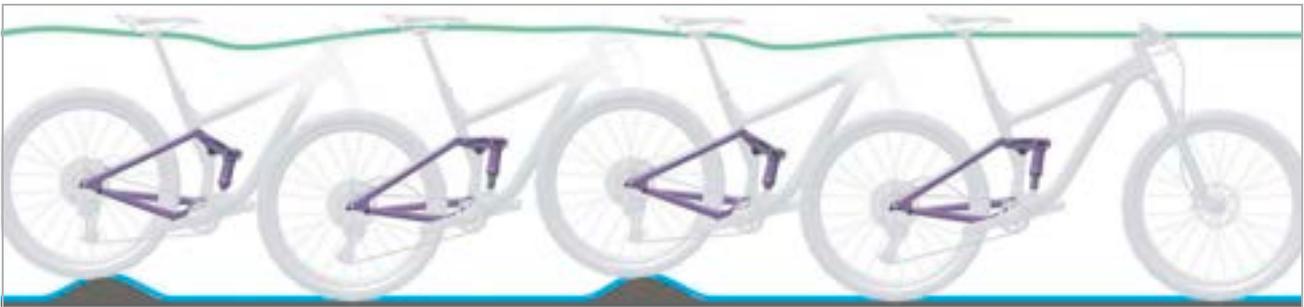


Figure 5: Optimum rear frame damper ride performance

When optimally adjusted, the rear frame damper counteracts deflection, stays higher in its

deflection range and helps the rider to maintain speed when riding on hilly parts of terrain.

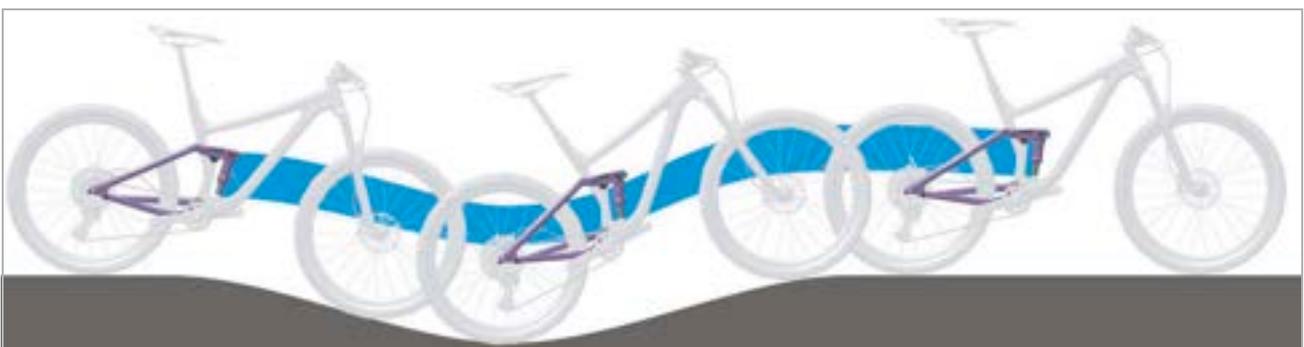


Figure 6: Optimum rear frame damper ride performance on hilly terrain

When optimally adjusted, the rear frame damper deflects quickly and unhindered when the bike hits bumps and absorbs a bump. Traction is retained (blue line).

The saddle rises slightly when absorbing a bump (green line).



Figure 7: Optimum rear frame damper ride performance over bumps

Lockout

Compression can be disabled in all rear frame dampers using the **lockout**. The frame will then behave in the same way as one without a rear frame damper.

The suspension system absorbs a great deal of motor and muscle power during rides uphill or on optimally tarmacked roads. This increases energy

consumption and reduces propulsion. That is why it is a good idea to disable the suspension.

Threshold

The threshold is an optimal lockout mode.

If a threshold is set, the rear frame damper behaves as if it were locked out. The threshold prevents deflection until a medium impact or downward force occurs.

3.3.2.4 Rear frame damper damping

After compressing, the suspension fork returns to its original position. If there is a damper, it will decelerate movement, preventing the suspension system from springing back in an uncontrolled manner and stopping the suspension fork vibrating up and down.

A distinction is made between two types of dampers:

- Rebound dampers,
- Compression damper.

Rebound dampers

The rear frame damper rebounds at a controlled speed if it is optimally adjusted. The rear wheel does not bounce off rough surfaces or the ground; it stays in contact with the ground instead (blue line). The saddle is raised slightly if the bump is compensated and gently sinks downwards when the suspension deflects as soon as the wheel touches the ground after the bump. The rear frame damper rebounds in a controlled way, so that the rider remains sitting in a horizontal position when the next bump is

absorbed. The suspension motion is predictable and controlled. The rider is not thrown upwards or forwards (green line).

The setting on the rebound damper depends on the air pressure setting. A higher sag requires lower rebound damping.

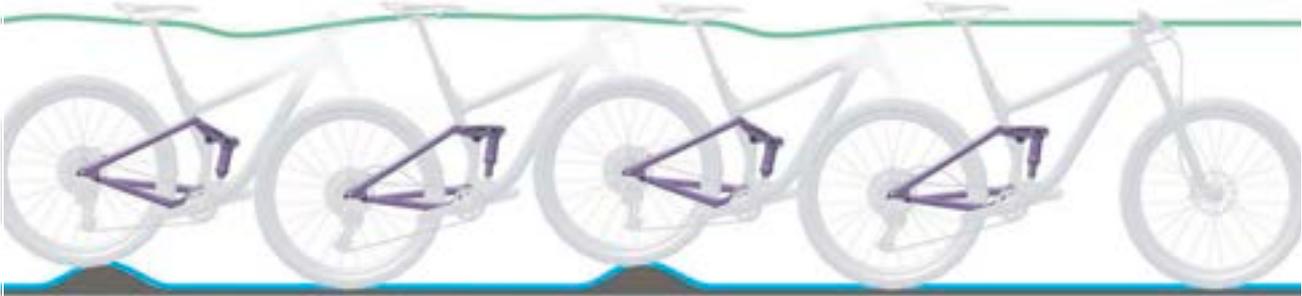


Figure 8: Optimum rear frame damper ride performance

Compression damper

The compression adjuster controls the compression lifting speed or amount by which the rear frame damper deflects in response to slow impacts. The compression damper affects the absorption of bumps when weight shifts or during transitions, cornering and uniform impacts caused by bumps and when braking.

When optimally adjusted, the rear frame damper counteracts deflection, stays higher in its deflection range and helps to maintain speed when riding on hilly parts of terrain.



Figure 9: Optimum rear frame damper ride performance on hilly terrain

3.3.2.5 ROCKSHOX Deluxe Select+ structure design



Figure 10: ROCKSHOX Deluxe Select rear frame damper structure design

- 1 Air valve (rear frame damper)
- 2 Rebound adjuster (rear frame damper)
- 3 Compression lever (rear frame damper)
- 4 O-ring
- 5 Scale

3.3.2.6 ROCKSHOX Super Deluxe Select+ structure design



Figure 11: ROCKSHOX Super Deluxe Select+ rear frame damper structure design

- 1 Rebound adjuster (rear frame damper)
- 2 Compression lever (rear frame damper)
- 3 IFP chamber
- 4 O-ring
- 5 Scale

3.3.2.7 SR SUNTOUR Edge LOR8 Trunnion Mount structure

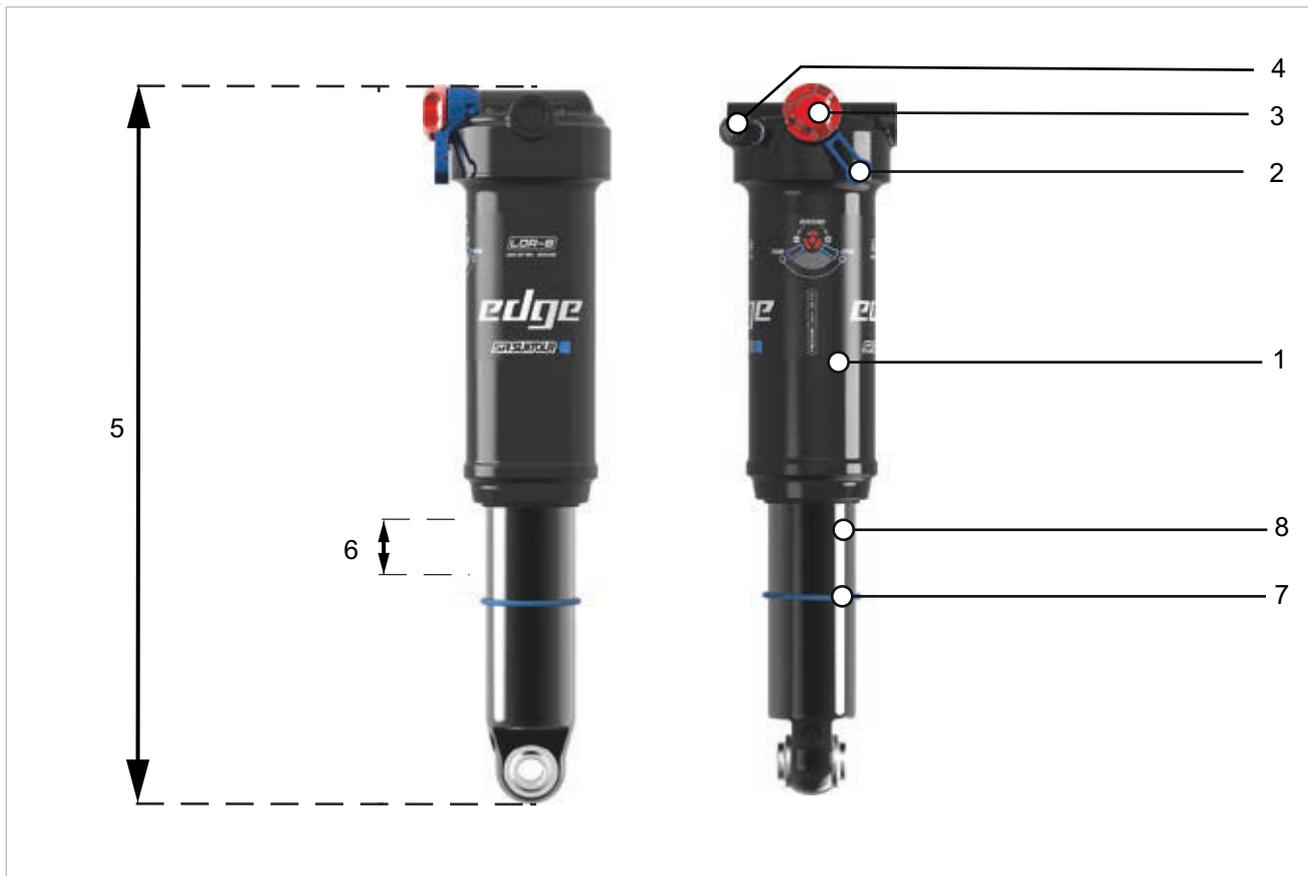


Figure 12: SUNTOUR Edge LOR8 Trunnion Mount rear frame damper structure

- 1 Air reservoir
- 2 Compression lever (rear frame damper)
- 3 Rebound adjuster (rear frame damper)
- 4 Air valve (rear frame damper)
- 5 Overall length
- 6 Sag
- 7 O-ring
- 8 Damper unit

3.3.2.8 Structure of SR SUNTOUR Edge Plus 2CR

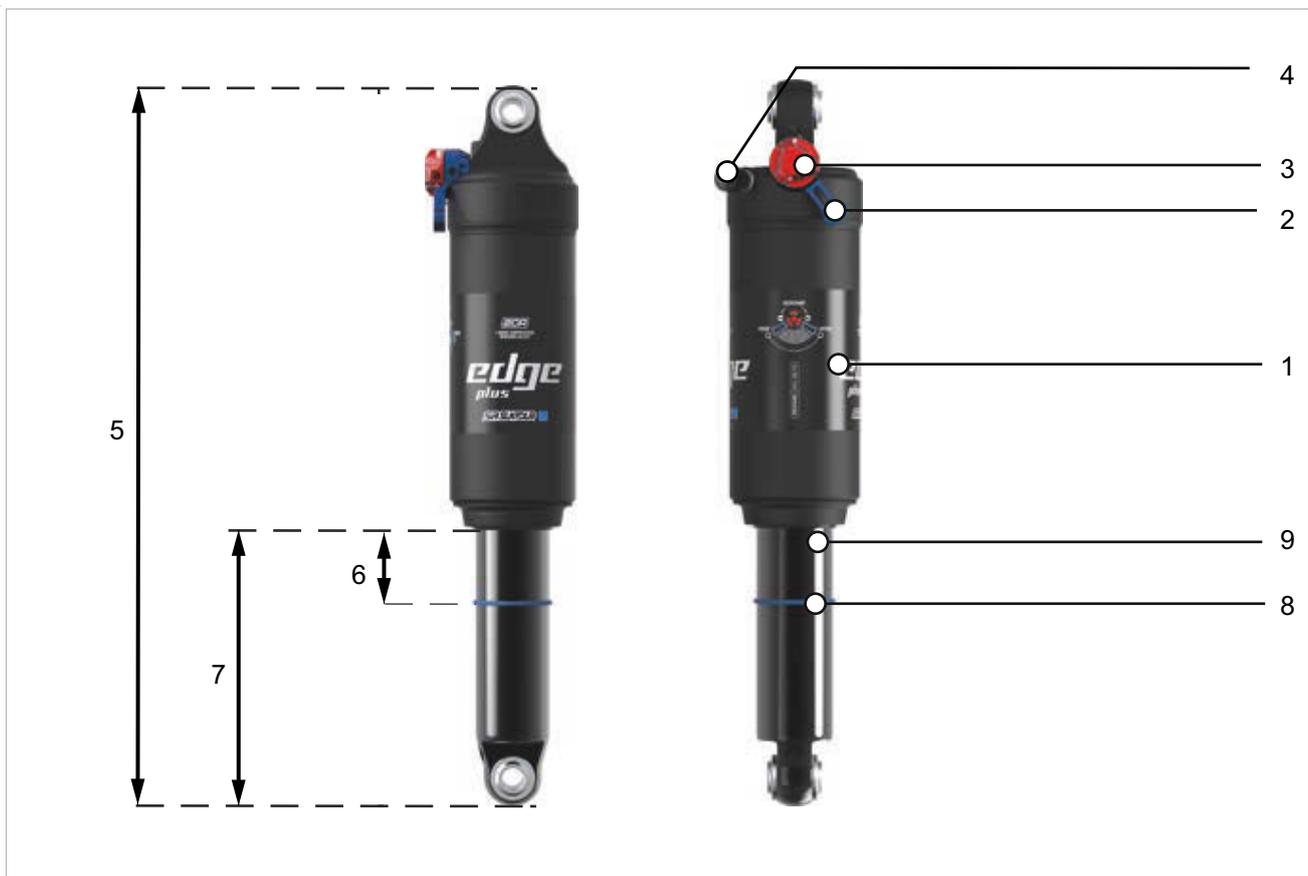


Figure 13: SUNTOUR Edge Plus 2CR rear frame damper structure

- 1 Air reservoir
- 2 Compression lever (rear frame damper)
- 3 Rebound adjuster (rear frame damper)
- 4 Air valve (rear frame damper)
- 5 Overall length
- 6 Sag
- 8 O-ring
- 9 Damper unit

3.3.2.9 Steering system

The steering system components are:

- Steering headset,
- Stem,
- Handlebars and
- Suspension fork.

3.3.2.10 Steering headset

The steering headset (also known as a bike headset or simply a headset) is the fork bearing system in the frame. A distinction is made between two different types:

- Conventional steering headsets for fork steerers with thread and
- Steering headsets for threadless fork steerers or what are known as headsets.

3.3.2.11 Stem

The stem connects the handlebars to the fork steerer tube. The stem is used to adjust the handlebars to body size. The stem is used to adjust the handlebar height and the gap between the handlebars and saddle (see Section 6.5.6).

Quickly adjustable stems

Quickly adjustable stems are an extension to the fork steerer. You can change the height and angle of quickly adjustable stems without any tools. Up to 3 settings can be adjusted, depending on the model:

- 1 Adjust handlebar height
- 2 Adjust twist function
- 3 Adjust stem angle.

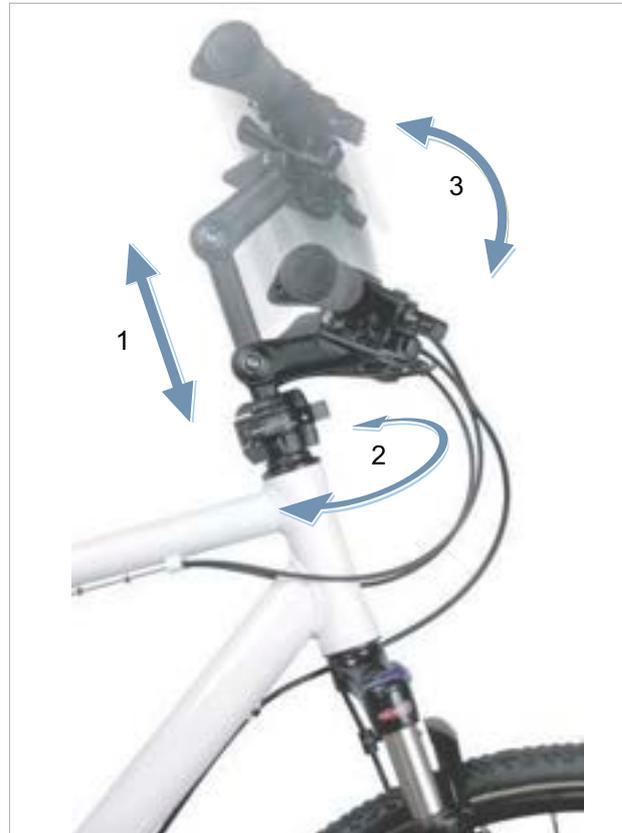


Figure 14: Example – BY.SCHULZ seat Speedlifter Twist Pro SDS

Adjusting the height and stem angle increase riding comfort as different riding positions can be adopted on longer rides. The twist function saves space when parking.

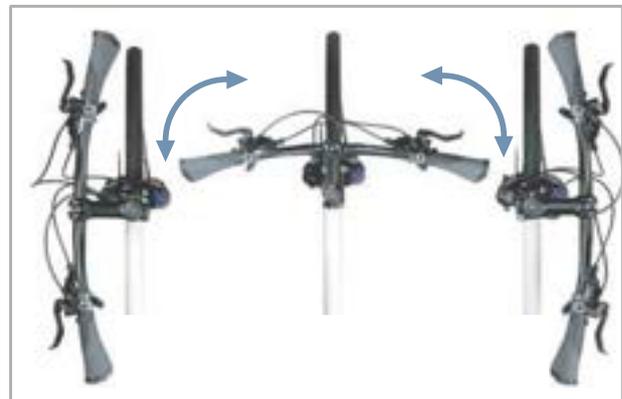


Figure 15: Twist function, using BY.SCHULZ as an example

3.3.2.12 Handlebars

The pedelec is steered using the handlebars. The handlebars are used to support the upper body and are used to mount operating and display components (see Section 3.4.1).

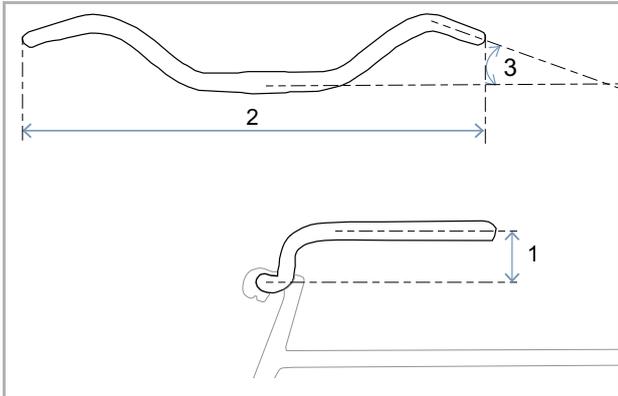


Figure 16: Handlebar dimensions

The main dimensions of handlebars are:

- 1 Rise
- 2 Width
- 3 Backsweep

3.3.2.13 Suspension fork

The stem and handlebars are attached to the top end of the fork steerer. The axle is fastened to the fork ends. The wheel is fastened to the axle.

Unlike rigid forks, suspension forks improve contact with the ground and thus enhance comfort using two functions:

- Suspension and
- Damping (optional function).

Suspension

A suspension fork deflects when a steel suspension, air suspension or both suspension types act on it.

A pedelec's suspension prevents an impact, such as one caused by a stone lying in the pedelec's path, from being channelled directly into the rider's body via the suspension fork. The impact is absorbed by the suspension system instead. This causes the suspension fork to compress.

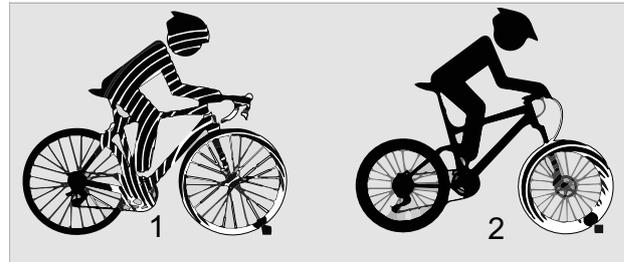


Figure 17: Without suspension (1) and with suspension (2)

Damping

After compressing, the suspension fork returns to its original position. If there is a damper, it will decelerate movement, preventing the suspension system from springing back in an uncontrolled manner and stopping the suspension fork vibrating up and down. A distinction is made between two types of dampers:

- Rebound dampers,
- Compression dampers.

Rebound dampers and compression dampers can be optionally divided into two different sections:

- High-speed damper,
- Low-speed damper.

Parts of a suspension fork

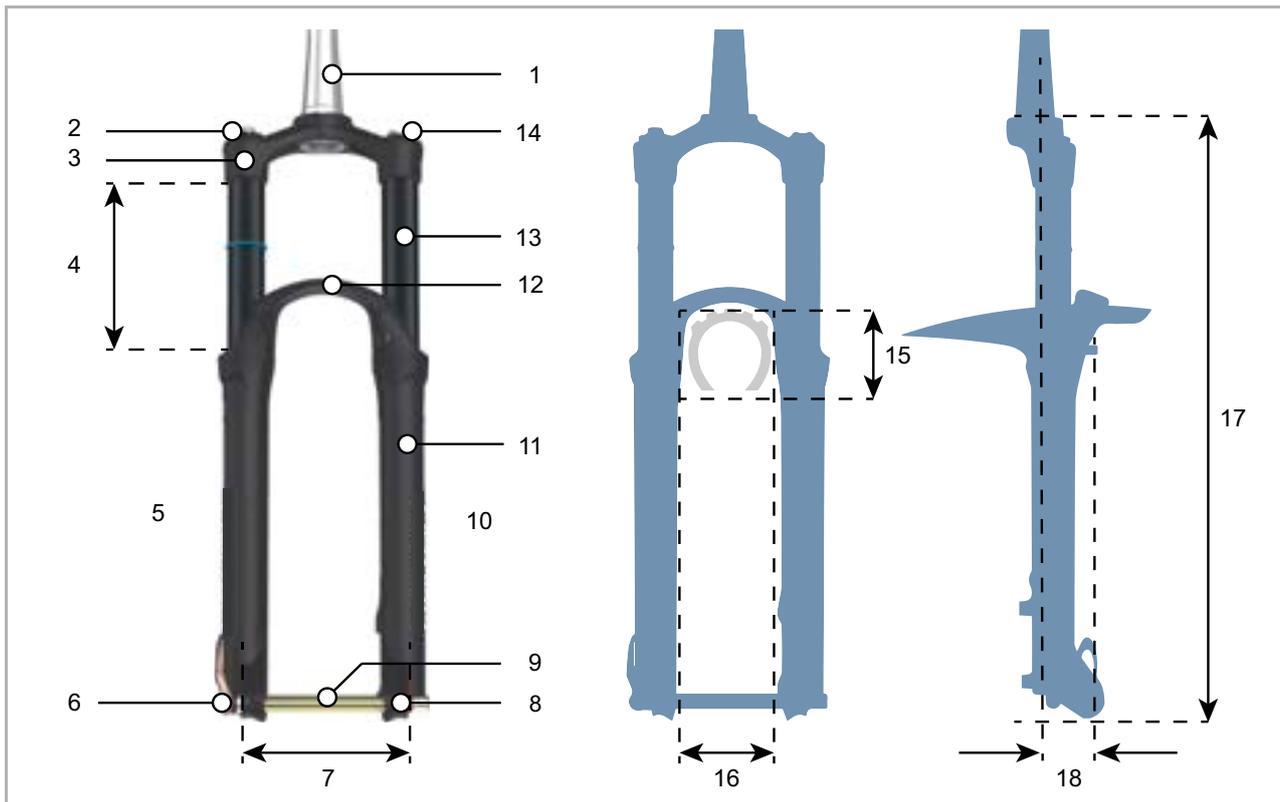


Figure 18: Parts of a suspension fork

- 1 Fork steerer
- 2 Sag adjuster
- 3 Fork crown
- 4 Deflection (suspension fork)
- 5 Damper side
- 6 Quick release
- 7 Pitch
- 8 Fork end (suspension fork)
- 9 Quick release axle
- 10 Air suspension side
- 11 Stanchion
- 12 Fork bridge
- 13 Stanchion
- 14 Lock

Tyre clearance

- 15 Tyre height
- 16 Tyre passage width

Side view

- 17 Installation height
- 18 Offset

Suspension fork assembly groups

A suspension fork can feature up to three different assembly groups:

- Compression damper (blue)
- Rebound damper (red)
- Air suspension or steel spring (orange)

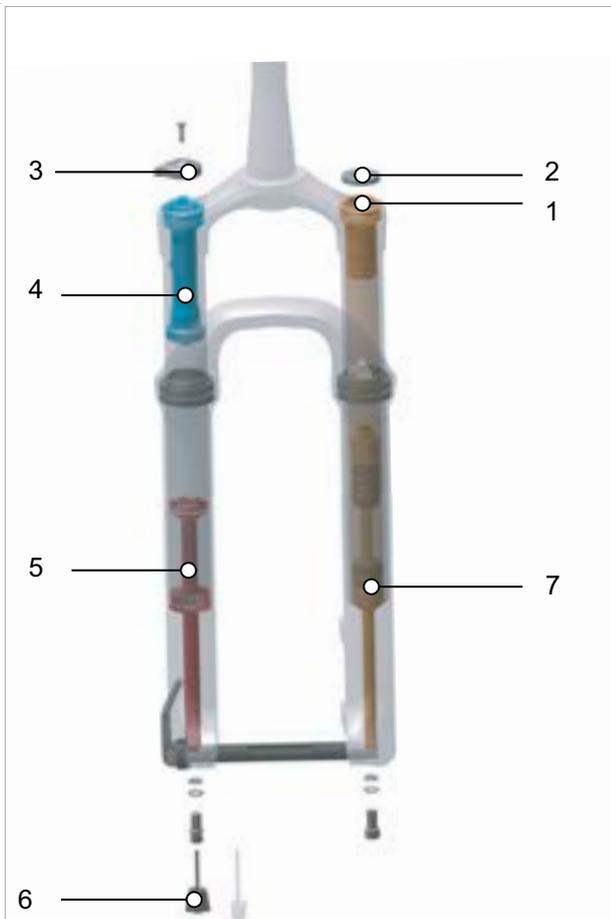


Figure 19: Internal structure of an air suspension fork

- 1 Air valve (fork)
- 2 Air valve cap
- 3 Damping adjuster
- 4 Compression dampers
- 5 Rebound damper
- 6 Rebound adjuster (suspension fork)
- 7 Air suspension

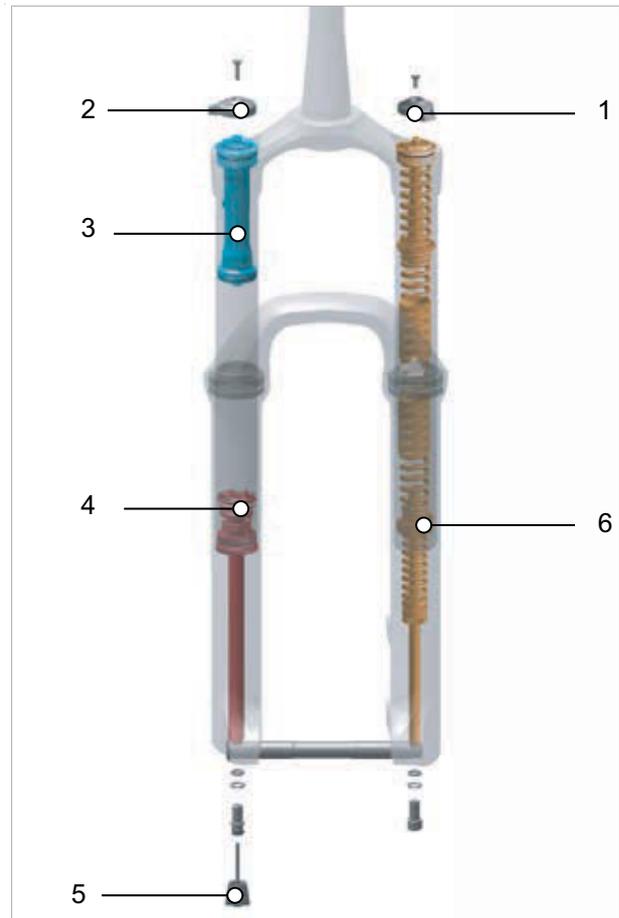


Figure 20: Internal structure of a steel suspension fork

- 1 Sag setting wheel
- 2 Damping adjuster
- 3 Compression dampers
- 4 Rebound damper
- 5 Rebound adjuster (suspension fork)
- 6 Steel spring

Cartridges

Dampers may be housed in closed structural elements, known as cartridges. These cartridges are fitted into the suspension fork. Different cartridges can be fitted into forks. This has no effect on the suspension fork's total bearing capacity.

Lock

The compression can be disabled in any suspension fork. A suspension fork will then behave like a rigid fork.

A suspension system is designed to cushion and compensate for unevenness on a surface whether the user is riding on bumpy cycle paths, dirt roads or off road.

A suspension system absorbs great deal of motor and muscle power during rides uphill or on optimally tarmacked roads. This increases energy consumption and reduces propulsion. It thus makes sense to lock the suspension on tarmacked roads and when riding uphill.

Some suspension forks thus feature a lockout on the fork crown or a remote lockout on the handlebars.

Negative deflection (sag)

The negative deflection (sag) is the percentage of entire deflection that is compressed by the rider's body weight, including equipment (such as a backpack), the seating position and frame geometry. Sag occurs whether you are actually riding or not.

The pedelec rebounds at a controlled speed if it is optimally adjusted. The wheel stays in contact with the ground when passing over bumps (blue line). The fork head, handlebars and body follow terrain (green line) when riding over bumps. The suspension motion is predictable and controlled.



Figure 21: Optimum suspension fork ride performance

When optimally adjusted, the suspension fork counteracts deflection on hilly terrain and remains higher in its deflection range.

This allows the rider to maintain the same speed more easily on hilly terrain.



Figure 22: Optimum suspension fork ride performance on hilly terrain

The suspension fork also deflects quickly and unhindered when hitting bumps and cushions the bump when placed at an optimum setting. Traction is retained (blue line).

The suspension fork responds instantly to the impact. The headset and handlebars rise slightly when absorbing a bump (green line).



Figure 23: Optimum suspension fork ride performance over bumps

Rebound dampers

Rebound dampers damp rebound movements, i.e. rebound stress loads.

Rebound damping determines the speed at which the suspension rebounds after being exposed to load. Rebound damping controls the suspension fork extension and rebound speed, which, in turn, has an impact on traction and control.

The damper rebounds at a controlled speed if the suspension fork is optimally adjusted. The wheel stays in contact with the ground when passing over bumps (blue line). The fork head, handlebars and body follow terrain (green line) when riding over bumps. The suspension motion is predictable and controlled.



Figure 24: Optimum suspension fork ride performance

Compression dampers

Compression dampers damp deflection movements, i.e. compression loads.

The compression damper controls the compression stroke speed or the extent to which the suspension fork deflects during slow impacts.

When optimally adjusted, the suspension fork counteracts deflection on hilly terrain, stays higher in its deflection range and helps to maintain speed when riding on hilly terrain.

The suspension fork deflects instantly unhindered and absorbs bumps when the bike hits one. Traction is retained (blue line).



Figure 25: Optimum ride performance on hilly terrain

High-speed damper

The high-speed damper (also abbreviated to HSC from *high-speed compression*) is a specialised compression damper.

A high speed is generated in the suspension fork

on a mogul slope or on landing after a jump.

The high-speed damper controls the suspension fork's behaviour positively in such riding situations.

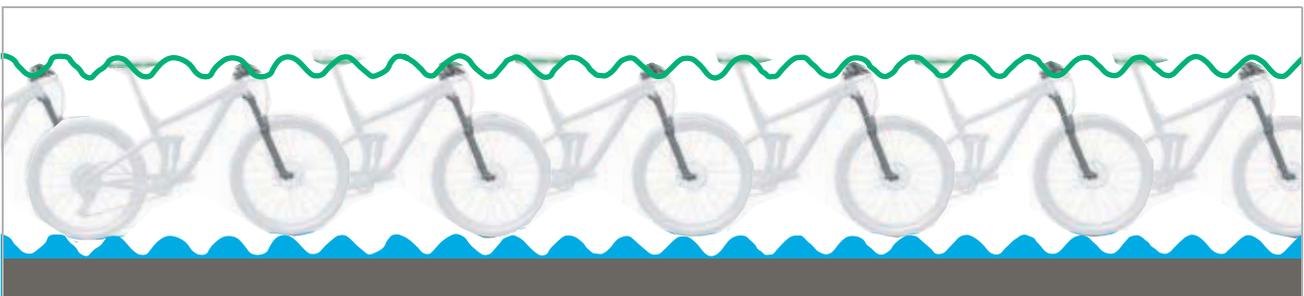


Figure 26: High-speed movements

Low-speed damper

The low-speed damper (also abbreviated to LSC from *low-speed compression*) is a specialised compression damper.

A slow compression speed is generated in the suspension fork when riding over bumps. The low-speed damper controls the suspension fork's behaviour positively in such riding situations.

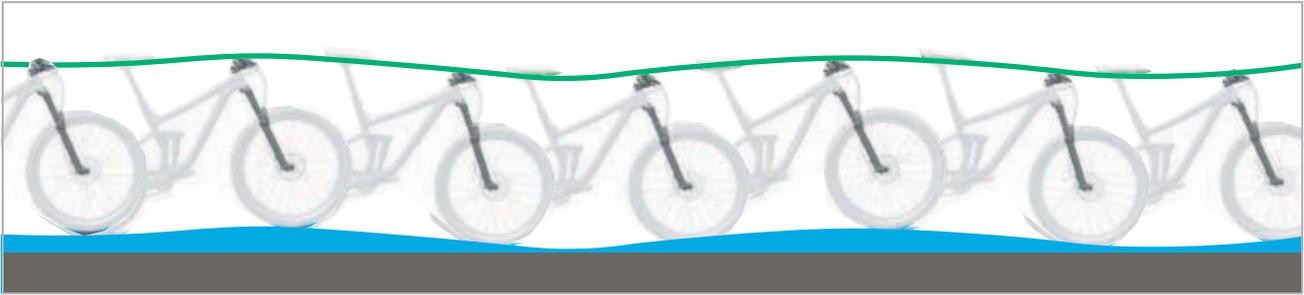


Figure 27: Low-speed movements

3.3.3 Wheel

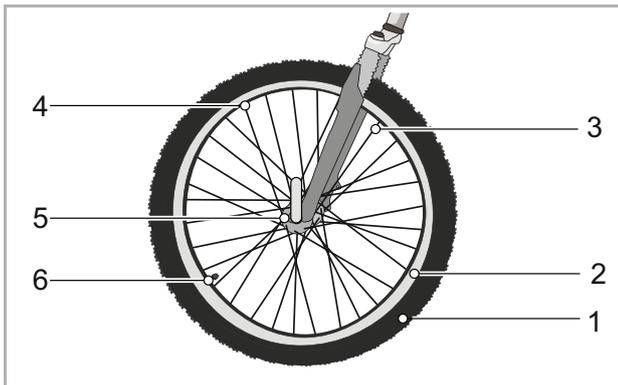


Figure 28: Visible wheel components

- | | |
|---|---------------|
| 1 | Tyres |
| 2 | Rim |
| 3 | Spoke |
| 4 | Spoke nipples |
| 5 | Hub |
| 6 | Valve |

The wheel comprises a tyre, an inner tube with a valve and the wheel itself.

3.3.3.1 Tyres

The tyre forms the outer section of the wheel. The tyre is pulled onto the rim. Tyres differ in design, profile and width, depending on their intended use.



Figure 29: Example: Information on tyres

Tyre size

The tyre size pressure range is indicated on the side of the tyre.

Tyre pressure

The permitted pressure range is indicated on the side of the tyre. It is indicated in psi or bars. The tyre is only able to support the pedelec if there is adequate tyre pressure. The tyre pressure must be adjusted to the body weight and then checked on a regular basis.

Tyre design types

There are five different tyre design types:

- Tube-type tyres
- Tubeless tyres (also tubeless ready)
- Tubular or single tube tyres
- Solid tyres
- Mixed types.

3.3.3.2 Tube-type tyre

A distinction is made between different kinds of tube-type tyre:

- Clinchers with steel wire reinforcement in bead core
- Folding tyres with aramid fibre reinforcement in bead core
- Beaded edge tyres without reinforcement in the bead core but with pronounced beads that hook under the rim edge and overlap in the rim well



Figure 30: Structure of tube-type tyre

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1 | Rim |
| 2 | Tread with profile |
| 3 | Puncture protection belt (optional) |
| 4 | Carcass |
| 5 | Bead core |

Carcass

The carcass is the tyre's supporting structure. There are usually three carcass plies beneath the tread. The carcass comprises a webbing with threads, usually made of polyamide (nylon). The webbing is coated with rubber on both sides and cut at an angle of 45°. The carcass gives the tyre stability thanks to this cut at an angle to the direction of travel. The carcass plies are woven with different densities, depending on the quality of the tyres. The density of the carcass fabric is indicated by the number of threads per inch, in EPI (*ends per inch*) or TPI (*threads per inch*). There are tyres with between 20 and 127 EPI carcasses.

If the EPI value is higher, the diameter of the threads used is lower. Carcass plies with a higher EPI value have threads with a smaller diameter. The higher the EPI value:

- the less rubber is needed to encase the threads,
- the lighter the tyres are
- the more flexible the tyres are and they consequently have less rolling resistance.
- The webbing is denser so that it is more difficult for foreign bodies to penetrate. This increases puncture resistance.

In carcasses with 127 EPI, each individual thread is just 0.2 mm thick and, consequently, more susceptible to damage. This means that a 127 EPI tyre offers low puncture protection. 67 EPI offers the optimum compromise between weight and robustness.

Besides the webbing, the tyre's rubber compound is also important. The rubber compound comprises numerous parts:

40 ... 60%	Natural and synthetic rubber
15 ... 30%	Fillers, e.g. carbon black, silicic acid or silica gel
20 ... 35%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Anti-ageing agent • Vulcanisation agent, e.g. sulphur • Vulcanisation accelerator, e.g. zinc oxide • Pigments and dyes

Table 15: Rubber compound in carcasses

Tread with profile

A rubber tread is attached to the exterior of the carcass.

The tread has little influence on riding characteristics on a smooth road. The grip between the road and tyre is mainly provided by the rolling friction between the rubber and the road surface.

Slicks and road tyres

Unlike cars, a pedelec will not aquaplane. The tread contact is small and the contact pressure high. Thanks to the small contact surface on narrow and treadless tyres, the tyre interlocks with the road surface finish. Theoretically, the tyre will not aquaplane until speeds of 200 km/h are reached.

On a clean road, whether dry or wet, slick tyres will grip more effectively than treaded tyres because the contact surface is larger. The rolling resistance of slick tyres is also lower.

Off-road tyres

The tread is highly important on terrain. In this case, the tread creates an interlock with the ground, thus enabling the driving, braking and steering forces to be transmitted. The MTB tread can also help improve control on dirty roads or farm tracks.

Tread blocks on MTB tyres deform as they meet the contact surface. The energy used for this is partly converted into heat. Another part is stored and converted into the tread block's sliding movement when it leaves the contact surface, which contributes to the tyre's wear.

If a tyre with a deep tread is used on asphalt, this may make an unpleasant noise. If a pedelec with an MTB tyre is mainly ridden on the road, it is thus best to change the tyre for a pair of tyres with as little tread as possible to reduce wear and save energy. In such a case, the specialist dealer needs to replace the tyre with a new one with a shallow tread.

Bead core

Tyre carcasses are wrapped around bead cores. Wrapping the carcass around both sides creates three carcass plies.

To ensure that tyres do not slip when inflated on the rim and have an effective grip, the bead cores are stabilised in two different ways:

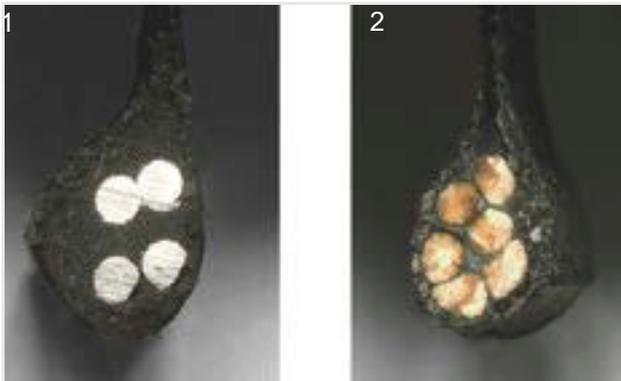


Figure 31: Steel bead core (1) and Kevlar bead core (2)

- with a steel wire. These tyres are called clinchers.
- with aramid fibres (Kevlar®). These tyres are called folding tyres. Folding tyres are about 50-90 g lighter than clinchers. It can also be folded into a smaller pack size.

Puncture protection belt (optional)

There may be a puncture protection belt between the carcass and the tread.



Figure 32: Effect of puncture protection belt

Each tyre manufacturer has its own puncture protection classes which are not on par with one another.

3.3.3.3 Rim

The rim is the metal profile on a wheel which holds the tyre, tube and rim band together. The rim is joined to the hub with spokes.

In rim brakes, the outer surface of the rim is used to brake.

3.3.3.4 Valve

Each tube-type tyre has a valve. Air is pumped into the tyre via the valve. There is a valve cap on each valve.

The screw-on valve cap keeps out dust and dirt.

The pedelec has either a:

- Dunlop valve
- Presta valve
- Schrader valve

Dunlop valve

The Dunlop valve, also known as a conventional valve, is the most widely used valve. The valve insert can be replaced easily and air can be let out very quickly.

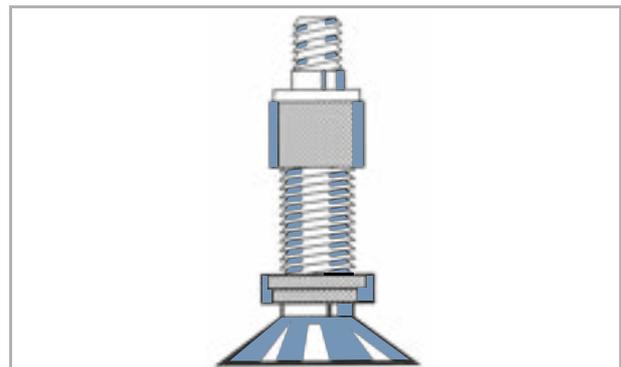


Figure 33: Dunlop valve

Presta valve

The Presta valve, also known as the Sclaverand valve or the French valve, is the narrowest variant of all valves. The Presta valve requires a smaller hole in the rim, which is why it is especially suitable for the narrow rims on racing bikes. It is about 4 to 5 g lighter than a Dunlop or Schrader valve.

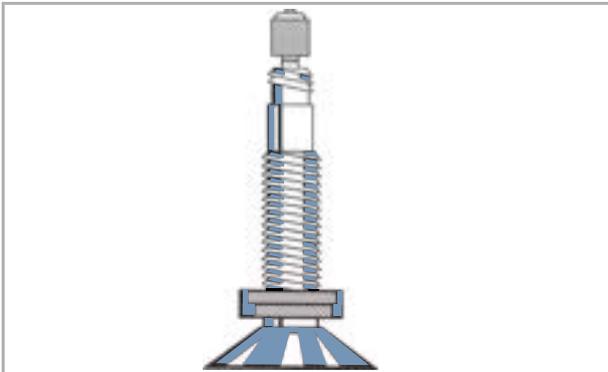


Figure 34: Presta valve

Schrader valve

The Schrader valve can be pumped at filling stations. Older, simple bicycle air pumps are unsuitable for Schrader valves.

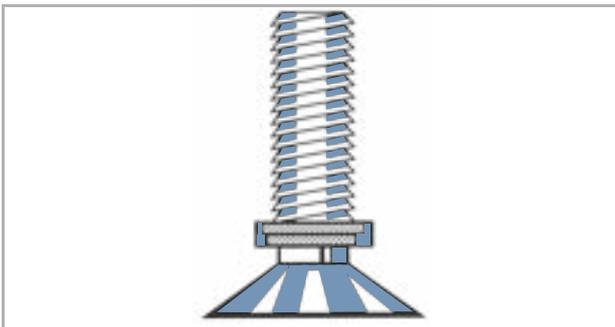


Figure 35: Schrader valve

3.3.3.5 Spoke

A spoke is a rod that connects the hub to the rim. The bent end of the spoke which is hooked into the hub is called the spoke head. A thread between 10 mm and 15 mm is attached to the other end of the spoke.

3.3.3.6 Spoke nipples

Spoke nipples are screw elements with an internal thread which fits onto the spoke thread. Fitted spokes are tensioned by tightening the spoke nipples. This straightens the wheel uniformly.

3.3.3.7 Hub

The hub is located in the centre of the wheel. The hub is connected to the rim and tyre with the spokes. An axle runs through the hub, connecting the hub with the fork at the front and with the frame at the rear.

The hub's main task is to transfer the pedelec's force of weight to the tyres. Special hubs on the rear wheel perform additional functions. There is a distinction between five types of hub:

- Hubs without additional features
- Brake hub (see back-pedal brake)
- Gear hub, also known as a hub gear
- Generator hub (for bicycles only)
- Motor hubs (for front- and rear-driven pedelecs only).

Hub without additional features

The front wheel hubs on pedelecs with central or rear motors are normally hubs without additional features.

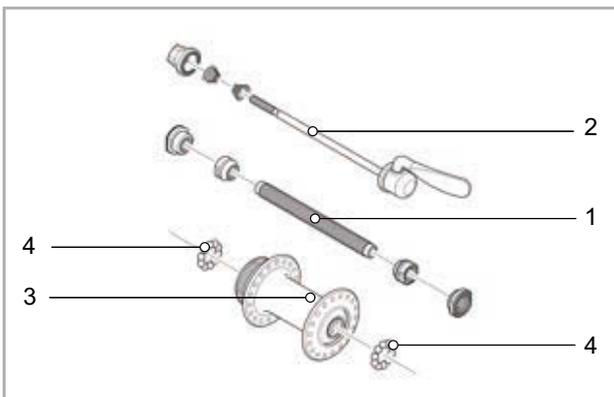


Figure 36: Example of front wheel hub: SHIMANO

- | | |
|---|---------------|
| 1 | Hub axle |
| 2 | Quick release |
| 3 | Hub body |
| 4 | Ball bearings |

3.3.4 Saddle

The purpose of the saddle is to absorb body weight, provide support and enable different riding positions. The shape of the saddle thus depends on the intended use of the pedelec and the rider's physique and posture.

When riding, the rider's body weight is distributed between the pedals, the saddle and the handlebars. When the rider is in an upright position, the relatively small saddle area bears about 75% of their body weight.

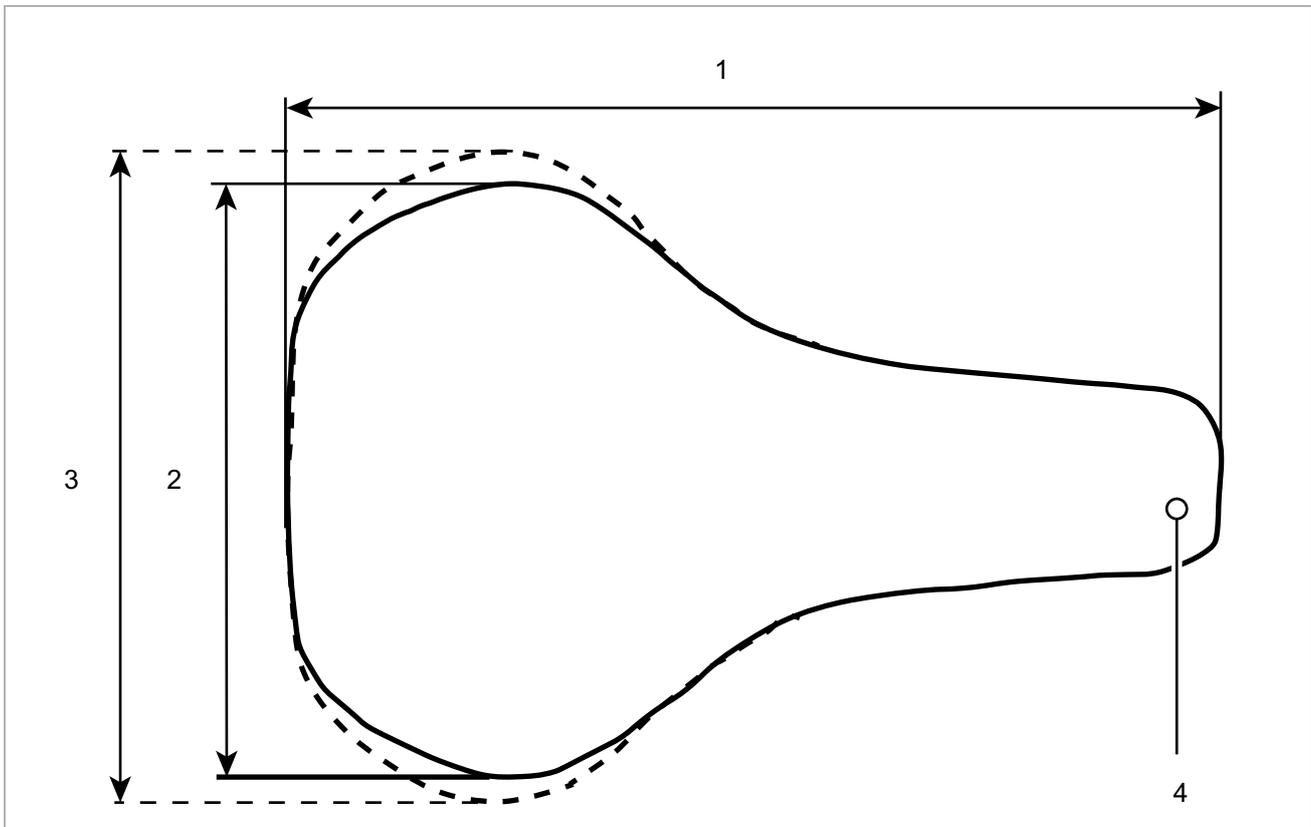


Figure 37: Saddle dimensions

- 1 Saddle length
- 2 Saddle width (narrow version)
- 3 Saddle width (wide version)
- 4 Saddle nose

The seat area is one of the most sensitive regions of the body. The saddle should allow the rider sit free of pain and fatigue. The saddle shape must suit each individual's anatomy. Solutions for sitting discomfort are listed in Section 9.1.

Saddles are provided in different sizes. The width of the pelvis and the gap between the sitting bones is crucial when selecting a saddle. Different saddle variants thus differ in their width.

You will find two methods to calculate the minimum saddle width in Sections 6.5.4.3 and .

3.3.4.1 Ladies' saddle

The distance between the ischial tuberosities and the pubic symphysis is on average a quarter less in women than in men. This is why painful pressure points can occur on men's saddles through the saddle nose since saddles that are too narrow or too soft press on the genitals or coccyx.

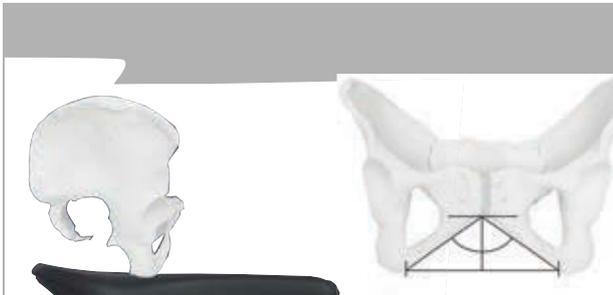


Figure 38: Female pelvis on saddles

For anatomical reasons, the pubic symphysis (front cartilage connection between the two halves of the pelvis) is, on average, a quarter lower than in the male pelvis. The angle between the pubic bones is wider.

The pelvis is more mobile in women than it is in men. Consequently, the pelvis often tilts forward more on the saddle. This causes high pressure in the genital area.

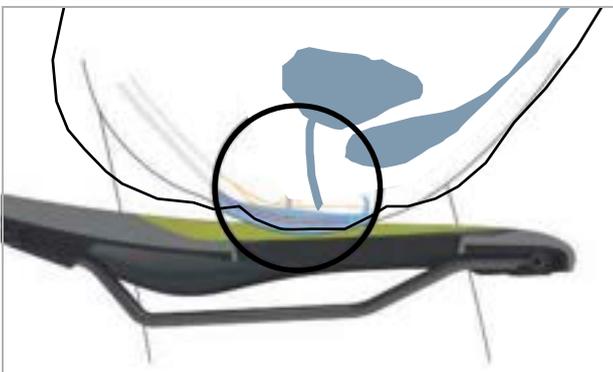


Figure 39: Pressure points on a saddle, female anatomy

3.3.4.2 Men's saddle

In contrast to the female anatomy, men's pubic bones are at a much steeper angle to one another. The pubic symphysis is much higher.

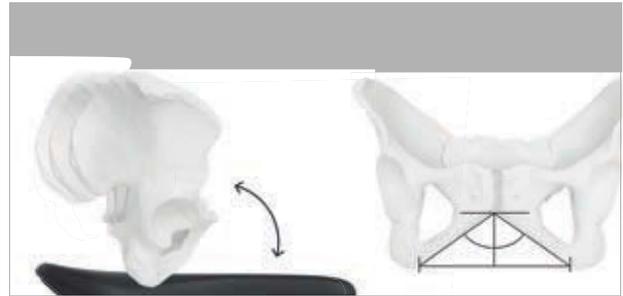


Figure 40: Male pelvis on saddles

The male pelvis is less flexible than women's. Men sit more upright on the saddle and put greater strain on the sitting bones. This means that the transition area between the saddle rear and nose can be kept narrow (Y-shape). This gives more space to pedal.

Numbness when pedalling is often caused by high pressure in the sensitive perineal area. If the saddle is adjusted incorrectly, too narrow or too hard, the nose of the saddle presses directly onto the genitals. Blood circulation deteriorates. The genitals on the outside are seldom the cause of discomfort since they can move out of the way and are not compressed by bone structures.

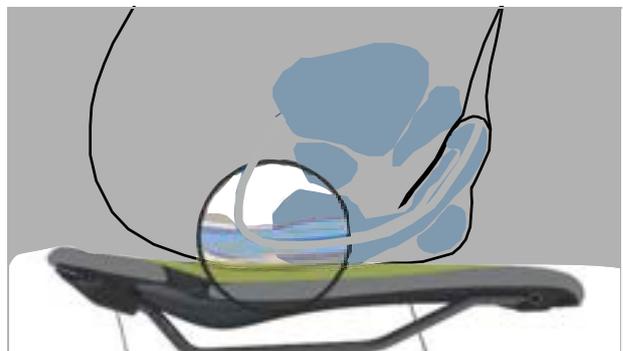


Figure 41: Pressure points on a saddle, male anatomy

3.3.5 Seat post

Seat posts are not designed to fasten the saddle but also to adjust exactly to the optimum sitting position. The seat post can:

- adjust the seat height in the seat tube
- adjust the saddle horizontally with a clamping mechanism and
- adjust the saddle angle by swivelling the entire saddle clamping mechanism.

Retractable seat posts feature a remote control on the handlebars, which can be used to lower the seat post at traffic lights, for example, and then raise it again.

3.3.5.1 Patent seat post



Figure 42: Example of ergotec patent seat post with either one or two seat clamp screws

Patent seat posts have a rigid link between the saddle and the post. Patent seat posts which are angled more markedly towards the rear are offset seat posts. Offset seat posts provide a greater distance between the saddle and the handlebars.

In patent saddle posts, the saddle is attached to the head with one or two seat clamp screws. It is recommended to lubricate the thread in these screws to ensure sufficient tension when tightening the screw.

Patent saddle posts are fastened into the seat tube with either a quick release or a screwable clamp.

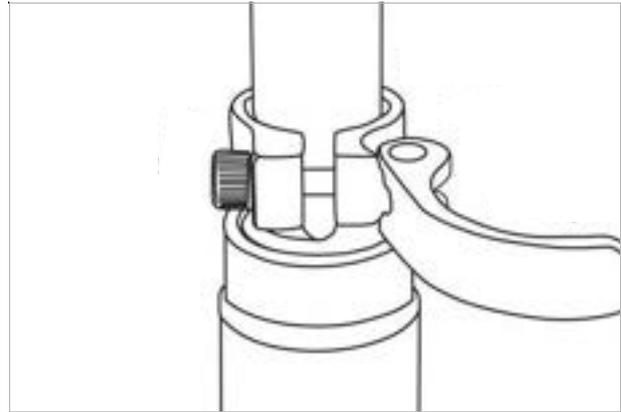


Figure 43: Example of a quick release

3.3.5.2 Suspension seat post

Suspension seat posts can reduce shock after one-time hard impacts, thus improving ride comfort significantly. However, suspension seat posts are not able to compensate for bumps in the road.

If the seat post is the only suspension element, the entire pedelec is a non-suspended mass. This has an unfavourable effect on loaded touring bikes or pedelecs with child trailers.

Suspension seat posts feature small, heavy-duty slide bearings, guides and articulated joints. If they are not lubricated on a regular basis, the sensitive response behaviour diminishes considerably, causing excessive wear.

The preload in non-damped suspension seat posts must be adjusted in such a way that the suspension seat post does not deflect with just body weight. This prevents the suspension seat post from deflecting and bobbing intermittently at higher pedalling frequencies or if the rider pedals irregularly.

The spring stiffness can be set lower with damped suspension seat posts, thus making use of the negative deflection.

3.3.5.3 Structure of LIMOTEC, A1

The LIMOTEC A1 seat post is a continuously height-adjustable seat post.

The remote control on the handlebars lowers the seat post. This can be used to adjust the saddle height during a ride, e.g. when stopped at traffic lights. Both hands remain on the handlebars during adjustment.

Structure



Figure 44: Structure and dimensions of the LIMOTEC A1 seat post

- 1 Seat post length
- 2 Stroke travel
- 3 Seat post remote control
- 4 Minimum insertion depth

Stroke travel

The *piston stroke* is the maximum height that the seat post can extend.

3.3.5.4 Structure of EIGHTPINS H01

The EIGHTPINS H01 seat post is a continuously height-adjustable seat post. An infinitely variable, hydraulically lockable gas compression spring provides a stroke up to 212 mm.

The remote control on the handlebars lowers the seat post. This can be used to adjust the saddle height during a ride, e.g. when stopped at traffic lights. Both hands remain on the handlebars during adjustment.

Structure

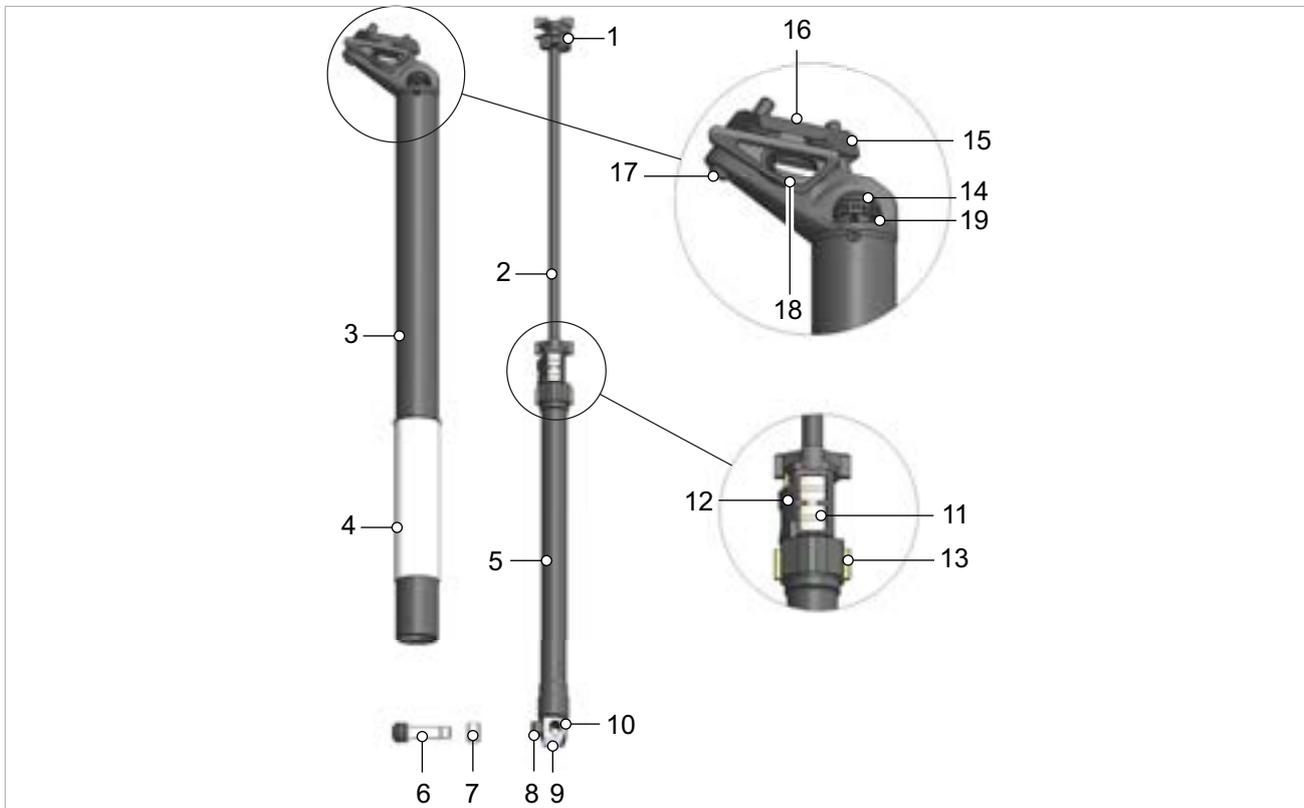


Figure 45: Structure of 8Pins seat post

1	Height adjustment clamp	11	EIGHTPINS pawl
2	Piston rod	12	Release slider unit
3	EIGHTPINS saddle seat post	13	Guiding block
4	Slide bushing tube	14	Saddle tilt setting wheel
5	EIGHTPINS capsule	15	Saddle clamping nut
6	Postpin	16	Upper saddle clamping plate
7	Adjustment ring	17	Rear clamping screw
8	Post pin installation unit	18	Lower saddle clamping plate
9	Compensation clip	19	Height adjustment mechanism
10	Overload friction coupling		

3.3.6 Brake

A pedelec's brake system is primarily operated using the brake lever on the handlebars.

- If the left brake lever is pulled, the brake on the front wheel is applied.
- If the right brake lever is pulled, the brake on the rear wheel is applied.

The brakes are used to regulate speed and make an emergency stop. Applying the brakes will bring the pedelec to a safe, rapid halt in an emergency.

The brake is applied using the brake lever either

- with the brake lever and brake cable (mechanical brake) or
- with the brake lever and hydraulic brake cable (hydraulic brake).

3.3.6.1 Mechanical brake

The brake lever is connected to the brake via a wire inside the shift cable (also known as a Bowden cable).



Figure 46: Bowden cable structure

3.3.6.2 Hydraulic brake

The brake fluid is in a closed hose system. If the brake lever is pulled, the brake fluid transfers pressure to the brake on the wheel.

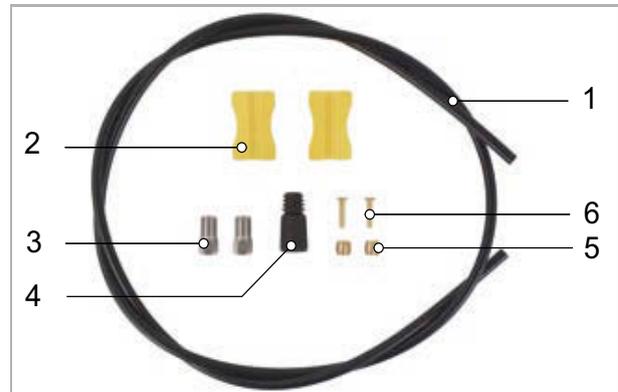


Figure 47: Components in a brake cable

- | | |
|---|-------------|
| 1 | Brake cable |
| 2 | Cable clip |
| 3 | Union nut |
| 4 | Cover cap |
| 5 | Knob |
| 6 | Insert pin |

3.3.6.3 Disc brake

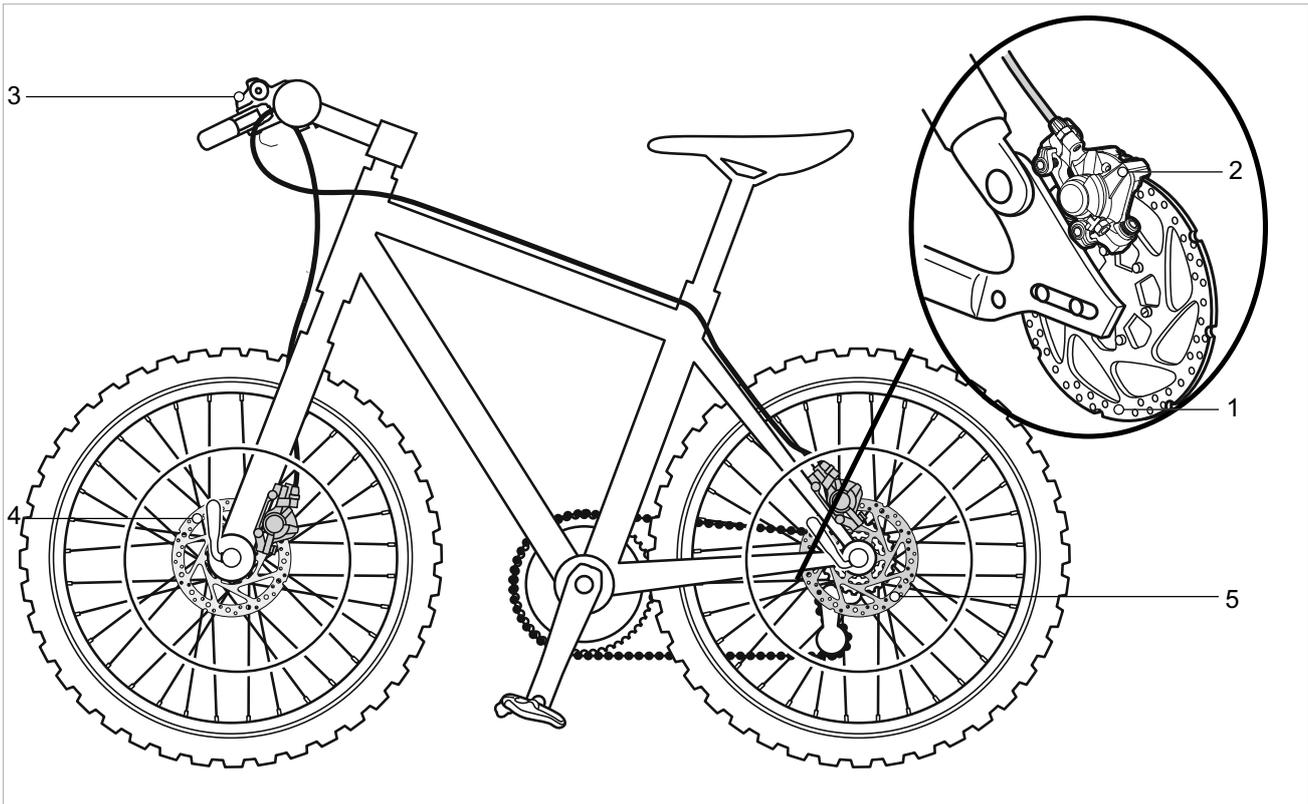


Figure 48: Brake system with disc brake – example

- 1 Brake disc
- 2 Brake calliper with brake linings
- 3 Handlebars with brake lever
- 4 Front wheel Brake disc
- 5 Rear wheel brake disc

On a pedelec with a disc brake, the brake disc is permanently screwed to the hub.

You increase brake pressure by pulling the brake lever. The brake fluid is used to transfer pressure through the brake cables to the cylinders in the brake calliper.

The braking force is boosted by a speed reduction and applied to the brake linings. These apply the brake disc mechanically. If the brake lever is pushed, the brake linings are pressed against the brake disc and the wheel movement is decelerated until it comes to a stop.

3.3.7 Mechanical drive system

The pedelec is driven by muscle power, just like a bicycle.

The force which is applied by pedalling in the direction of travel drives the front chain wheel. The chain or belt transmits the force onto the rear chain wheel and then onto the rear wheel.

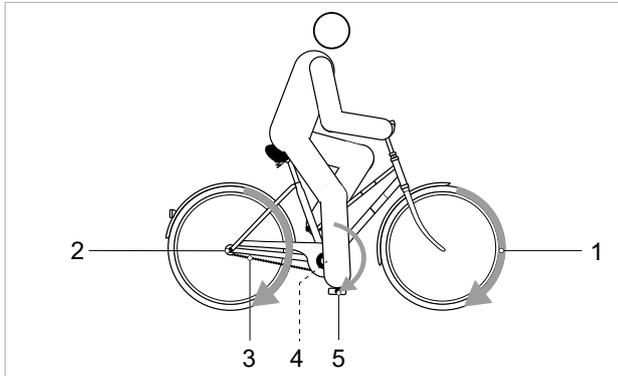


Figure 49: Diagram of mechanical drive system

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1 | Direction of travel |
| 2 | Chain or belt |
| 3 | Rear chainring or belt sprocket |
| 4 | Front chainring or belt sprocket |
| 5 | Pedal |

The pedelec is equipped with either a chain or belt drive.

3.3.7.1 Chain drive layout



Figure 50: Chain drive with derailleur gears

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| 1 | Rear derailleur |
| 2 | Chain |

The chain drive is compatible with a

- Back-pedal brake,
- Hub gear or
- Derailleur gears.

3.3.7.2 Parts of a belt drive



Figure 51: Belt drive

- | | |
|---|---------------------|
| 1 | Front belt sprocket |
| 2 | Rear belt sprocket |
| 3 | Belt |

A belt drive is compatible with

- Back-pedal brake and
- Hub gear.

A belt drive is not compatible with derailleur gears.

3.3.7.3 SRAM rear derailleur, Eagle AXS™

Only applies to vehicles with this equipment

The SRAM XX1 EAGLE AXS rear derailleur is located on the rear wheel.

The SRAM XX1 EAGLE AXS rear derailleur and the SRAM AXS shifter controller are interlinked

via a Bluetooth® connection. The rear derailleur is connected to the electric drive system. The **LED indicator (rear derailleur)** and the AXS button (rear derailleur) is needed to pair with the shifter.

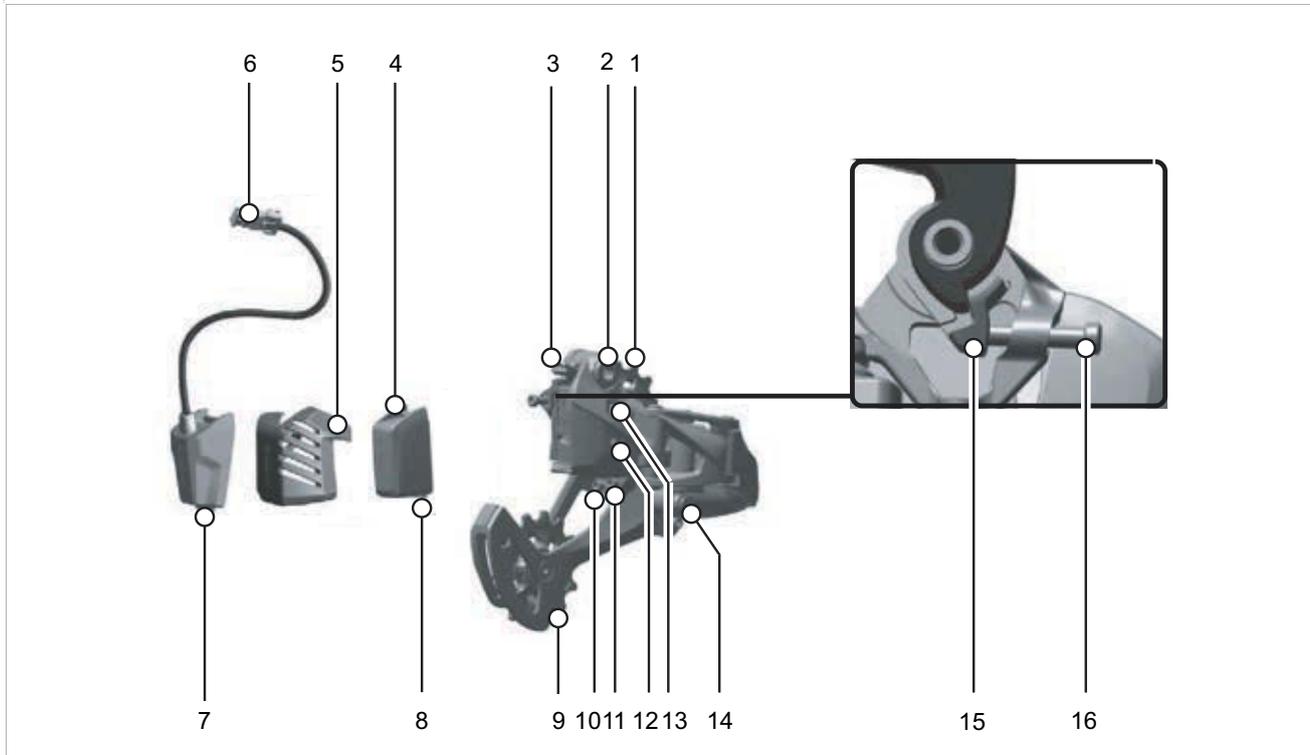


Figure 52: SRAM XX1 EAGLE AXS rear derailleur structure

- 1 Top pulley
- 2 Attachment screw
- 3 Battery lock
- 4 SRAM battery
- 5 Battery guard
- 6 Extension cable
- 7 Extension cable snap-fit
- 8 SRAM battery snap-fit
- 9 Lower pulley
- 10 Top locking screw
- 11 Lower locking screw
- 12 AXS button (rear derailleur)
- 13 LED indicator (rear derailleur)
- 14 Cage lock button
- 15 Retaining clasp
- 16 Setting bolt (rear derailleur) LED indicator (rear derailleur)

The LED indicator (rear derailleur) lights up when the gear is changed.

The colour of the LED indicator (rear derailleur) shows the remaining trip time.

If a gear change is rejected, the **LED indicator (rear derailleur)** flashes red and green. Gear changes may be rejected if the temperature is under -15 °C.

3.3.8 Electric drive system

The pedelec has an electric drive system in addition to a mechanical one.

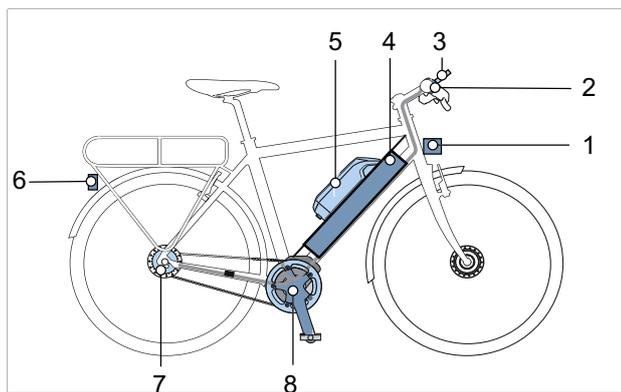


Figure 53: Diagram of an electric drive system with electric components

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 | Front lamp |
| 2 | On-board computer |
| 3 | Display (optional) |
| 4 | PowerTube battery or |
| 5 | PowerPack battery |
| 6 | Rear light |
| 7 | Electric gear shift (optional) |
| 8 | Motor |
| 9 | A charger which is designed for the battery (not shown). |

3.3.8.1 Motor

As soon as the muscle power required for pedalling passes a certain level, the motor is activated gently and assists the pedalling motion. The motor power always depends on the power used to pedal: Motor assistance is lower when little muscle power is used than when a great deal of muscle power is used. This happens no matter what the level of assistance is.

The motor switches off automatically as soon as the rider no longer pedals, the temperature is outside the permitted range, there is an overload or the shut-off speed of 25 km/h has been reached.

A push assist system can be activated. The push assist helps move the pedelec. The push assist system speed depends on the selected gear. The lower the selected gear is, the lower the speed in the push assist function is (at full power). The maximum speed is 4 km/h. The electric drive system stops when the push assist button is released.

The push assist system has a hill hold function. The hill hold function prevents the pedelec from rolling back down a steep slope or steps for ten seconds.

The push assist mode of operation is subject to country-specific regulations and may therefore differ from the above description or may be deactivated.

The pedelec does not have a separate emergency shut-off button. In the event of an emergency, the motor can be stopped by removing the on-board computer. The mechanical brakes are used as an emergency stop system and bring the bicycle to a halt quickly and safely in the event of an emergency.

3.3.8.2 Charger

Each pedelec is supplied with a charger. The following BOSCH charger may be used:

- the 4 A Charger BPC3400.

Observe the charger's operating instructions (see Section 11.4).

3.3.8.3 Lighting

Lighting always includes

- the front lamp (also known as headlight or front light)
- the rear light (also known as rear lamp)

The headlight and the rear light are also on whenever the riding light is activated.

3.3.8.4 System

A smartphone with the BOSCH eBike Flow app installed is required to use all drive system functions. The pedelec is connected to the app via a Bluetooth® connection.

The eBike Flow app can:

- Record activities
- Adjust the level of assistance
- Control the eBike Lock function

Adjusting the level of assistance

The level of assistance can be adjusted within established limits using the BoSCH eBike flow app.

It is not possible to create your own mode completely. You may only modify modes which the system has enabled. The eMTB and TOUR+ modes cannot be adjusted due to technical limitations. Moreover, it may not be possible to adjust a mode due to restrictions in the country where the pedelec is used.

The following parameters can be adjusted in the BOSCH eBike Flow app:

- Motor assistance in relation to the base value of the mode (within the legal requirements)
- Response behaviour by the drive
- Control speed (within the legal limits)
- Maximum torque (within the drive's limits)

eBike Lock function

When the eBike lock function is used, the on-board computer acts in a similar way to a key for the drive system. The drive unit is unlocked as long as the smartphone is connected to the pedelec via Bluetooth®. The electric drive is locked if the smartphone is not connected to the pedelec. The eBike Lock function does not block the pedelec mechanically or similar. The rider can continue to use the mechanical drive system. The lock function does not provide anti-theft protection; it is more an addition to a mechanical lock.

The pedelec can only be activated using the on-board smartphone belonging to the pedelec. The eBike Lock function is linked to the eBike Flow app user account. If third parties are to have temporary or permanent access to the pedelec, the eBike Lock function must be deactivated in the eBike Flow app.

The eBike Lock function can be activated in the BOSCH eBike Flow app. A digital key is added to the smartphone to unlock the pedelec to do so.

The drive system emits audible eBike lock signals when activating and deactivating the eBike Lock function. The audible feedback signal is activated by default. The feedback signal can be deactivated under Settings <My eBike>.

The eBike Lock function is automatically active in the following cases:

- When the control panel is used to switch off the electric drive system
- When the electric drive system is switched off automatically
- (Optional) when the on-board computer is removed

The eBike Lock function is linked to the user account. If the smartphone is lost, another smartphone can be used to unlock the pedelec via the user account in the BOSCH eBike Flow app.

3.3.8.5 Software updates

Software updates are automatically transferred to the on-board computer in the background of the BOSCH eBike Flow app as soon as the app is connected to the on-board computer.

The battery level indicator will flash green during updates to show how the update is progressing.

Once an update has been completely transferred, this is displayed three times when the on-board computer is restarted.

Alternatively, the user can check whether an update is pending under Settings <My eBike> <Components>.

Activity tracking

User recognition is required on a PC or smartphone to record activities.

The rider needs to agree to location data being saved on the portal or the app to record activities. Only then will all activities be displayed on the portal or app.

Your location will only be logged if the on-board computer is linked to the eBike Flow app.

Activities will be displayed after synchronisation in the app and on the portal.

System message

The on-board computer indicates whether a critical or less critical error has arisen in the drive system.

The error messages generated by the drive system can be read in the eBike Flow app and at the specialist dealer's.

The rider can use a link in the eBike Flow app to display all information on errors and assistance on eliminating errors.

You will find more information and a table containing all error messages in Section 6.3.

3.3.8.6 Rechargeable battery

BOSCH batteries are lithium ion batteries which are developed and manufactured to the latest technical standards. Each battery cell is protected by a steel cup and encased in a plastic battery housing. Applicable safety regulations are met.

- The battery has an interior electronic protection circuit, which is specifically designed for the charger and the pedelec.
- The battery temperature is monitored at all times.
- The battery is protected against deep discharge, overcharging, overheating and short circuits by Electronic Cell Protection (ECP).

In the event of a hazard, a protective circuit switches the battery off automatically. In the event of a hazard, a protective circuit switches the battery off automatically.

The battery has a high energy content when charged. The code of practice for their safe handling is found in Section 2 Safety and Section 6.9 Rechargeable battery in the operating instructions. If the electric drive system is not used for 10 minutes and no button has been pressed on the on-board computer or the control panel, the electric drive system and the battery are automatically switched off to save energy.

The type and duration of operating conditions have a significant effect on the battery life. Just like any other lithium-ion battery, the battery will age naturally if it is not being used. The battery's service life can be extended if the battery is well maintained and stored at the correct temperature. The charging capacity will decrease with age, even if the battery is maintained properly. If the operating time is severely shortened after charging, this is a sign that battery has reached the end of its useful life.

Battery performance is reduced when the temperature drops since this increases electrical resistance. You should expect the range to be less than normal at low temperatures in winter. We recommend using thermal protection sleeves when riding longer distances at low temperatures.

Each battery has its own lock.

The following battery can be built into the pedelec: Either an integrated battery or a frame battery.

Integrated battery

Three different types of integrated batteries can be fitted:



Figure 54: Overview of battery variants

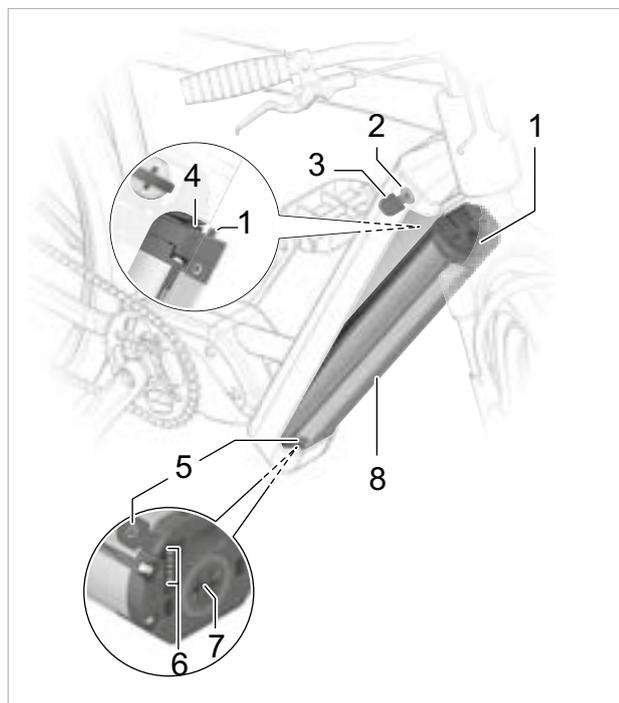


Figure 55: Details on PowerTube

- 1 Securing hook
- 2 Battery lock
- 3 Battery key
- 4 Retainer guard
- 5 On-Off button (battery)
- 6 Battery Level indicator
- 7 Socket for charger plug
- 8 Battery housing

Frame battery

Two different types of frame batteries can be fitted:



Figure 56: Overview of frame battery

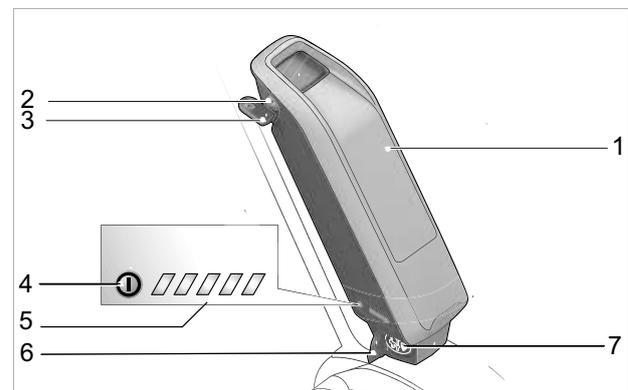


Figure 57: Details of frame battery

- 1 Battery housing
- 2 Battery lock
- 3 Battery key
- 4 On-off button (battery)
- 5 Battery level indicator screen
- 6 Charging port cover
- 7 Charging port

3.3.8.7 System Controller control panel

BOSCH System Controller control panel is in the upper tube.



Figure 58: Position of BOSCH System Controller (1) on-board computer

The BOSCH System Controller controls the system and all indicators on the display screen together with the BOSCH Mini Remote control panel. The BOSCH System Controller features two buttons and two indicators. It can be linked to the eBike Flow app via Bluetooth®.

The control panel battery is powered and charged if a sufficiently charged pedelec battery is inserted into the pedelec and the drive system is switched on.

3.3.8.8 Mini Remote control panel

The Mini Remote control panel is located on the handlebars.

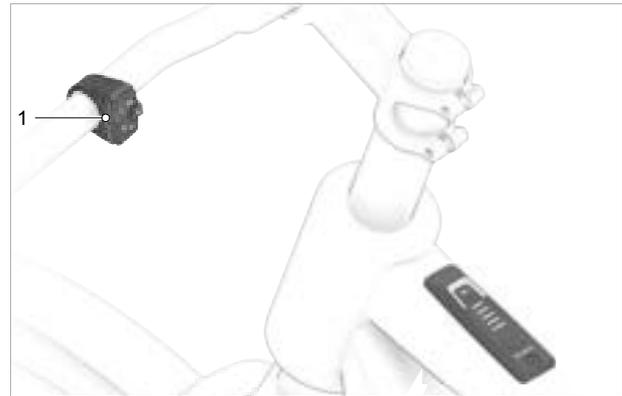


Figure 59: Position of BOSCH Mini Remote (1) control panel

The electric drive system is controlled on the Mini Remote control panel.

The Mini Remote control panel is powered by a CR1620 button cell.

3.4 Description of controls and screens

3.4.1 Overview of handlebars



Figure 60: Detailed view of handlebars with BOSCH System Controller on-board computer and Mini Remote – example

1	Lockout	6	Front wheel handbrake
2	Shifter	7	Handle
3	Handle	8	Seat post remote control
4	Rear wheel handbrake	9	Air valve (suspension fork)
5	Control panel	10	On-board computer

3.4.1.1 BOSCH System Controller control panel

The BOSCH System Controller on the top tube is a control panel. It controls the system with two buttons and has three indicators.

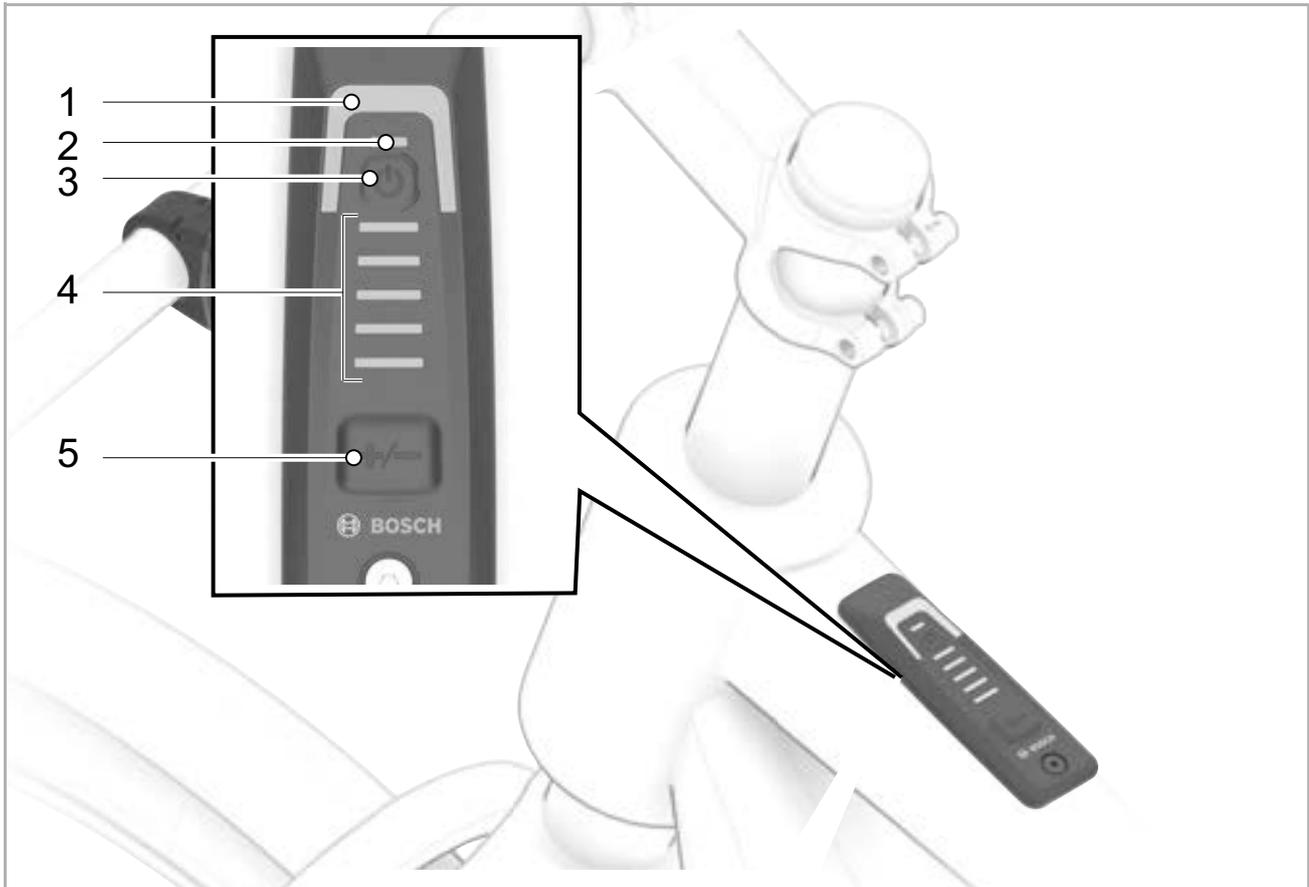


Figure 61: Overview of the System Controller control panel

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | | Level of assistance indicator |
| 2 | | ABS indicator (optional)/ambient light sensor |
| 3 |  | On-Off button (control panel) |
| 4 | | Battery Level indicator (control panel) |
| 5 | + / - | Mode button |

Level of assistance indicator

The higher the selected level of assistance, the more the drive system assists with pedalling. The BOSCH System Controller or BOSCH Mini Remote control unit is used to configure how much the electric drive assists with pedalling.

Level of assistance	Use
OFF	When the drive system is switched on, the motor assistance is switched off. Use the pedelec like a normal pedelec by simply pedalling
ECO	Limited assistance with maximum efficiency for maximum range
TOUR	Constant assistance, for long-range tours
TOUR+	Dynamic support for sports cycling and riding in the countryside
eMTB/SPORT	Powerful assistance, for sporty start-up, optimal assistance on all types of terrain
TURBO	Maximum assistance up to high pedalling frequencies, for sport riding
AUTO	Assistance is adapted to the ride situation dynamically
RACEC	Maximum assistance on eMTB race circuit; highly direct response behaviour and maximum extended boost for high power in competitions
CARGO	Uniform, powerful assistance to transport heavy loads safely

Table 16: Overview of levels of assistance

The level of assistance is displayed by different colours on the level of assistance indicator.

Use	Colour
Maximum level of assistance	Red
Medium level of assistance	Purple
Low level of assistance	Blue
Lowest level of assistance	Green
Assistance off	Black (LEDs are off)

ABS indicator (optional)/light sensor

The ABS indicator lights up on pedelecs with an ABS system when they start up.

The ABS will switch off if the pedelec reaches a speed of 6 km/h.

If there is a fault, the ABS indicator lights up together with the indicator showing the selected level of assistance, which will flash orange.

Press the Select button to acknowledge the fault and the flashing indicator showing the selected level of assistance will go out. The ABS indicator remains lit to indicate that the ABS system is not in operation.

The ambient light sensor will adjust the brightness of the indicators on the System Controller. Keep ambient light sensor clear at all times.

Battery Level indicator (control panel)

The battery level indicator (control panel) shows the battery charge level. You can also see the battery charge level on the LEDs on the battery itself.

Each blue bar on the indicator signals 20% capacity and each white bar 10% capacity. The top bar indicates maximum capacity.

The indicator will turn orange when it is below 30% and red when below 10%.

When the indicator flashes red at 0%, this means that motor assistance is no longer possible; however, there is reserve capacity for lighting.

Bars	Capacity
5	91 ... 100%
4 × blue + 1× white	81 ... 90%
4 × blue	71 ... 80%
3 × blue + 1× white	61 ... 70%
3 × blue	51 ... 60%
2 × blue + 1× white	41 ... 50%
2 × blue	31 ... 40%
2 × orange	21 ... 30%
1 × orange	11 ... 20%
1 × red	Reserve ... 10%
1 x red, flashing	Flat ... reserve

The uppermost bar on the battery level indicator will flash when the battery is charging.

3.4.1.2 BOSCH Mini Remote control panel

The BOSCH Mini Remote on the handlebars is a control panel. It controls the system and all indicators with four buttons.

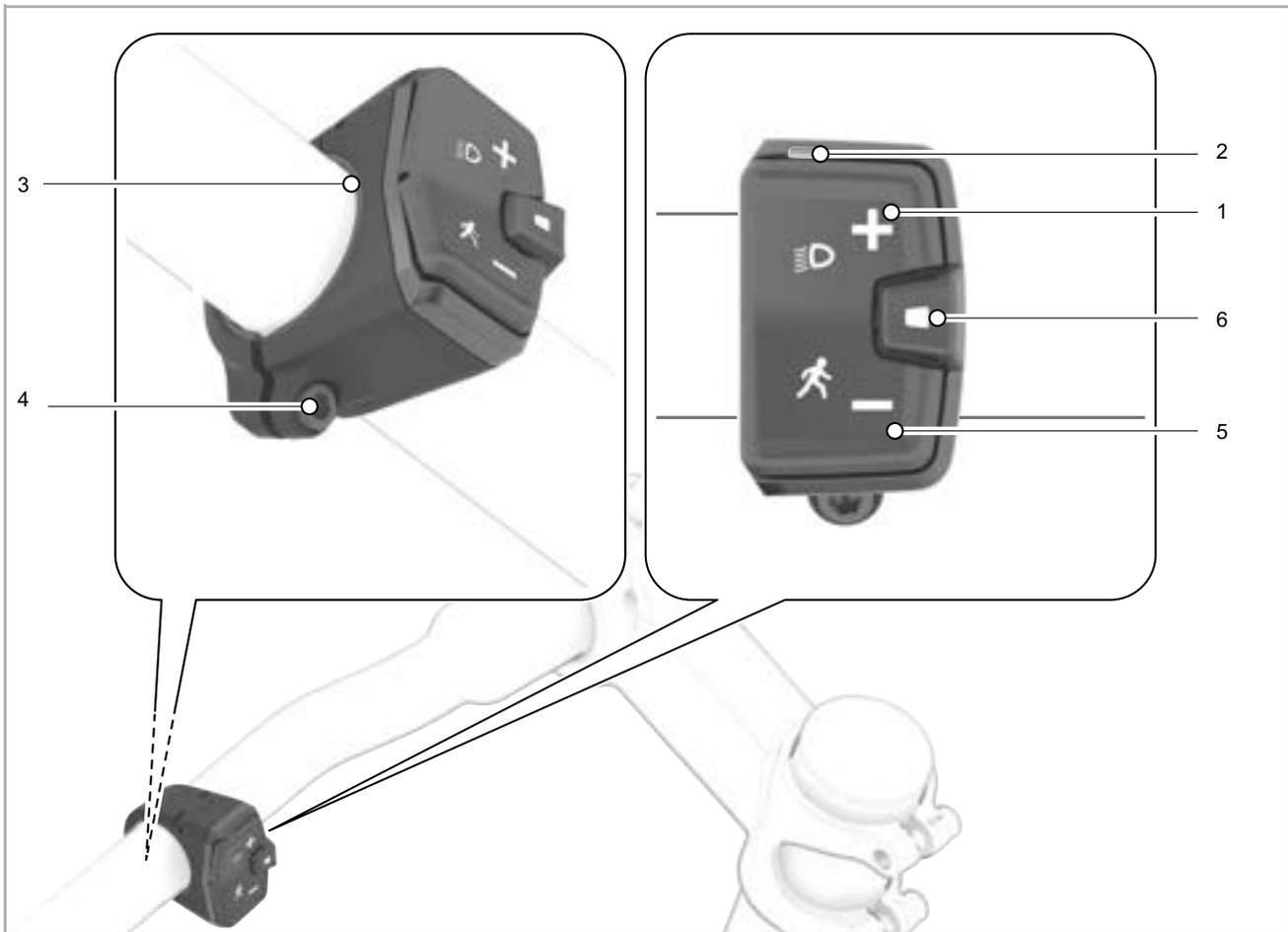


Figure 62: Overview of BOSCH Mini Remote control panel

- | | | | | |
|---|---|--------------------------------|---|--|
| 1 | + | Plus button/ | | |
| |  | Light button | 6 |  Selection button |
| 2 | | LED indicator lamp | | |
| 3 | | Rubber inlay/battery holder | | |
| 4 | | Attachment screw (Mini Remote) | | |
| 5 | - | Minus button/ | | |
| |  | Push assist button | | |

3.4.2 Handbrake

There is a handbrake on the left and right of the handlebars.

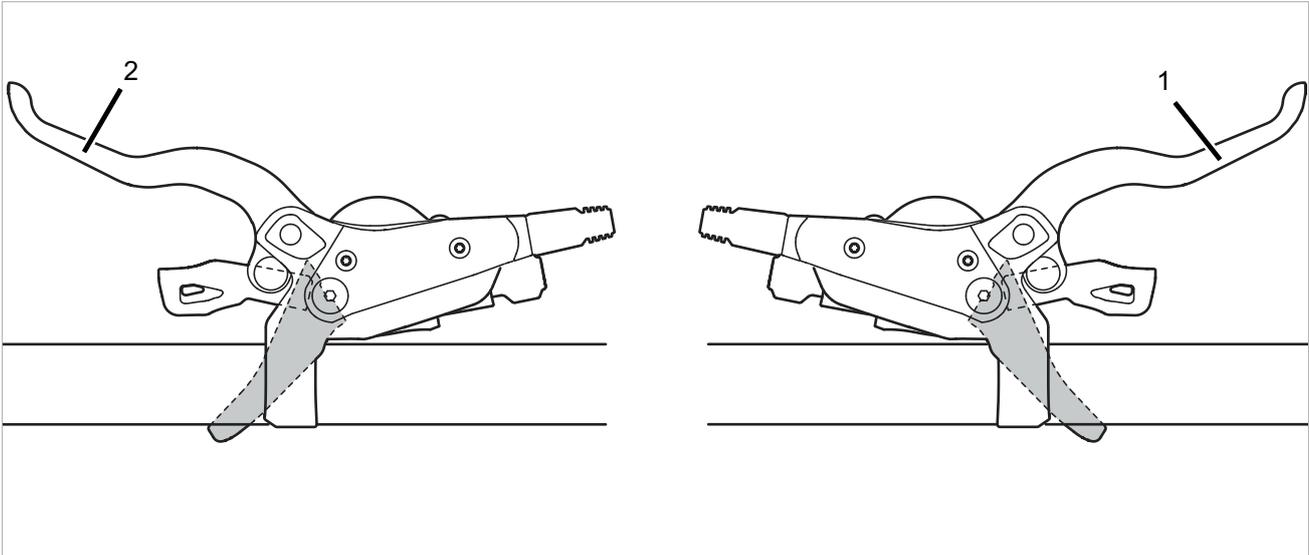


Figure 63: Front wheel (2) and rear (1) brake levers – Shimano brake used as an example

The left handbrake (2) controls the front wheel brake.

The right handbrake (1) controls the rear wheel brake.

3.4.3 Suspension and damping

3.4.3.1 SR SUNTOUR air valve (fork) and sag setting wheel (fork)

Model	AIR EQ	AIR	COIL Adjustable	COIL
	Air valve (fork)	Air valve (fork)	Sag setting wheel	Sag setting wheel
Suspension	Air suspension	Air suspension	Steel spring	Steel spring
				
Rux		x		
Durolux	x			
Auron	x			
ZERON35		x	x	
Axon		x		
Epixon9	x			
Raidon		x		
XCR		x	x	
XCM		x	x	
XCT		x	x	
XCE			x	
M3010			x	x
Mobie45/34/25		x	x	
Mobie35	x			
MobieA32			x	
GVX		x		
NRX		x	x	
NCX32/NCX/TR-HSI		x	x	
NVX			x	
NEX			x	
CR			x	x

3.4.3.2 SR SUNTOUR adjuster damper

Model	R2C2 RC2	3CR	2CR	RC
				
Remote control	No	No	No	No
Fork				
Rux	O			
Durolux	O			O
Auron	O			
Mobie35		O	O	
Mobie34			x	
Aion				O
Zeron35				x

x = present

O = present in PCS piston

Model	RLRC	LORC	RLR	LOR
				
Remote control	Yes	No	Yes	No
Fork				
Auron	O	O		
Axon	x O	x O		
Aion			O	O
Zeron35			x	x
Axon			x	x
Epixon9			x	x
Raidon			x	x
XCR			x	x
XCM				x
Mobie25/45			x	x
GVX			x	x
NRX			x	x

x = present

O = present in PCS piston

Model	RL	LO	NLO	HLO
				
Remote control	Yes	No	No	Yes
Fork				
XCR	x	x		
XCM	x	x	x	x
XCT			x	x
Mobie34 CGO		x		
MobieA32	x	x	x	
NRX	x	x		
NCX32/NCX/TR-HSI	x	x		x
NVX	x		x	
NEX	x		x	x
CR		x		x

x = present

3.4.3.3 SHIMANO SL-T6000 derailleur gears

Only applies to vehicles with this equipment

The gear shift unit is on the left of the handlebars. The gear shift unit features two switches and an indicator.



Figure 64: SHIMANO SL-T6000 gear shift

- 1 Gear indicator
- 2 Lever A (gear shift)
- 3 Lever B (gear shift)

SRAM derailleur gears, Eagle AXS™

Only applies to vehicles with this equipment

The SRAM AXS Controller shifter is located on the handlebars.

The SRAM XX1 EAGLE AXS rear derailleur and the SRAM AXS shifter controller are interlinked via a Bluetooth® connection. The shifter is powered by a battery. The **battery compartment**

cover (shifter) is located on top of the battery. The **LED indicator (shifter)** and the **LED indicator (shifter)** are needed to pair with the rear derailleur. The **rocker switch** controls the gear shift.

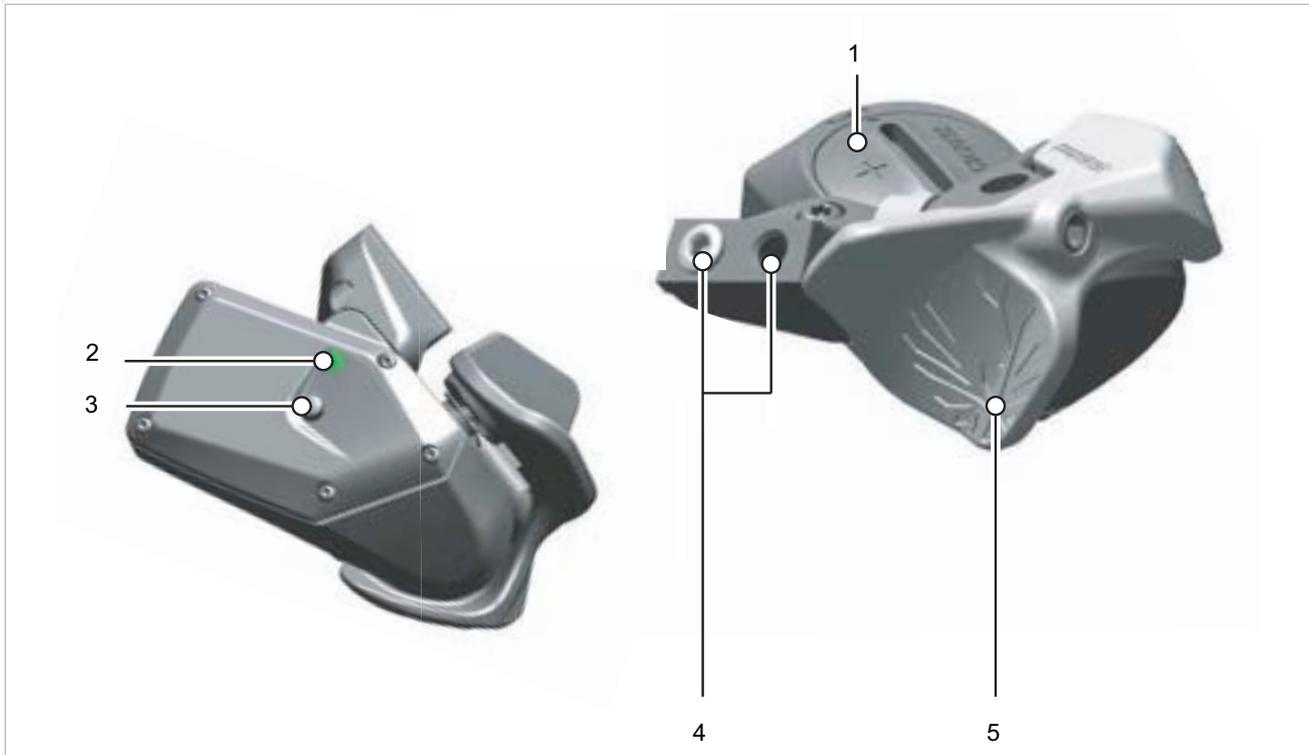


Figure 65: Structure of the SRAM AXS Controller

- 1 Battery compartment cover (shifter)
- 2 LED indicator (shifter)
- 3 AXS button (shifter)
- 4 Holes for attachment locking screw and clamping screw
- 5 Rocker switch

3.4.4 Rechargeable battery

3.4.4.1 Battery Level indicator screen

Each battery has its battery level indicator:

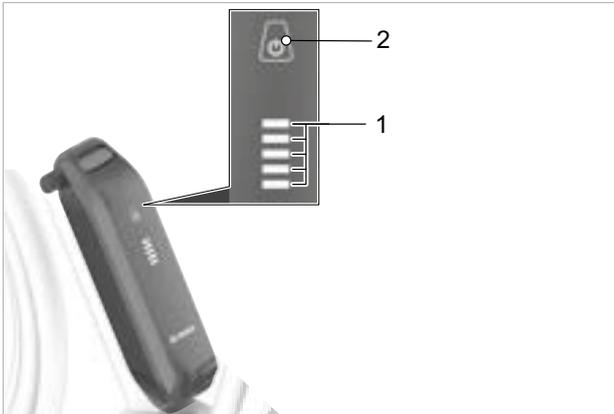


Figure 66: BOSCH PowerPack battery indicator and operating element



Figure 67: BOSCH PowerTube indicator and operating element

- 1 On-Off button (battery)
- 2 Battery Level indicator screen

The five green LEDs on the battery level indicator show the charge level when the battery is switched on. Each LED represents 20% of battery capacity.

LED 1,2,3,4,5	Battery level
● ● ● ● ●	100 ... 80%
● ● ● ● ○	79 ... 60%
● ● ● ○ ○	59 ... 40%
● ● ○ ○ ○	39 ... 20%
● ○ ○ ○ ○	19 ... 15%
○ ○ ○ ○ ○	5 ... 0%

Figure 68: Battery level indicator

Symbols:



All five LEDs will light up when the battery is fully charged. The charge level for the activated battery is also shown on the on-board computer.

If the battery capacity is less than 10%, the last remaining LED indicator will flash.

If the battery level falls below 5%, all the LEDs on the battery level indicator will go out.

The battery level is still shown on the on-board computer.

3.5 Technical data

3.5.1 Pedelec

Power output/system	250 W (0.25 kW)
Shut-off speed	25 km/h
Charging temperature	0 °C... +40 °C
Operating temperature	-5 °C... +40 °C
Storage temperature	+10 °C... +40 °C

Table 17: Pedelec technical data

3.5.2 Emissions

The safety requirements as per Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive 2014/30/EU have been met. The pedelec and the charger can be used in residential areas without restriction.

A-weighted emission sound pressure level	< 70 dB(A)
Total vibration level for the hands and arms	< 2.5 m/s ²
Highest effective value of weighted acceleration for the entire body	< 0.5 m/s ²

Table 18: Emissions from the pedelec

3.5.3 System Controller on-board computer

Operating temperature	-5 °C... +40 °C
Storage temperature	+10 °C... +40 °C
Protection class	IP54
Dimensions	88 × 28 × 27 mm
Weight	0.035 kg
BLUETOOTH Low Energy®	
Frequency	2400...2480 MHz
Transmitting capacity	≤1 mW

Table 19: Technical data for BOSCH System Controller on-board computer (BRC3100)

3.5.4 Mini Remote control panel

Operating temperature	-5 °C... +40 °C
Storage temperature	+10 °C... +40 °C
Battery	1 × CR1620
Protection class	IP54
Dimensions	40 × 39 × 22 mm
Weight	0.016 kg
BLUETOOTH Low Energy®	
Frequency	2400...2480 MHz
Transmitting capacity	≤1 mW

Table 20: Technical data for BOSCH Mini Remote control panel (BRC3300)

3.5.5 BOSCH Performance Line CX motor

Maximum continuous power rating	250 W
Max. torque	85 Nm
Max. support	340%
Crank-chainring transmission	1: 1
Max. speed	25 km/h
Nominal voltage	36 V DC
Permitted chainline	47.5 mm 0/+15 mm
Crank interface	ISIS
Crank screws	M15 × 1
IP protection class	IP54
Weight about	3 kg
Operating temperature	-5... +40 °C
Mass	approx. 2.9 kg
Storage temperature	-10... +40 °C

Table 21: Technical data for BOSCH Performance Line CX motor, BDU3740, BDU3741

3.5.6 Rechargeable battery

3.5.6.1 BOSCH PowerPack 545

Nominal voltage	36 V
Nominal capacity	14.4 Ah
Energy	545 Wh
Weight	3.0 kg
Protection class	IP54
Operating temperature	-5 ... +40 °C
Storage temperature	+10 ... +40 °C
Permitted charging temperature range	0 ... 40 °C

Table 22: Technical data for BOSCH PowerPack 545 battery, BBP3551

3.5.6.2 BOSCH PowerPack 725

Nominal voltage	36 V
Nominal capacity	19.2 Ah
Energy	725 Wh
Weight	4.0 kg
Protection class	IP54
Operating temperature	-5 ... +40 °C
Storage temperature	+10 ... +40 °C
Permitted charging temperature range	0 ... 40 °C

Table 23: Technical data for BOSCH PowerPack 725 battery, BBP3556

3.5.6.3 BOSCH PowerTube 500

Nominal voltage	36 V
Nominal capacity	13.4 Ah
Energy	500 Wh
Weight	3.0 kg
Protection class	IP54
Operating temperature	-5 ... +40 °C
Storage temperature	+10 ... +40 °C
Permitted charging temperature range	0 ... 40 °C

Table 24: Technical data for BOSCH PowerTube 500, BBP3750 horizontal, BBP3751 vertical

3.5.6.4 BOSCH PowerTube 625

Nominal voltage	36 V
Nominal capacity	16.7 Ah
Energy	625 Wh
Weight	3.6 kg
Protection class	IP54
Operating temperature	-5 ... +40 °C
Storage temperature	+10 ... +40 °C
Permitted charging temperature range	0 ... 40 °C

Table 25: Technical data for BOSCH PowerTube 625, BBP3760 horizontal, BBP3761 vertical

3.5.6.5 BOSCH PowerTube 750

Nominal voltage	36 V
Nominal capacity	20.1 Ah
Energy	750 Wh
Weight	4.3 kg
Protection class	IP54
Operating temperature	-5 ... +40 °C
Storage temperature	+10 ... +40 °C
Permitted charging temperature range	0 ... 40 °C

Table 26: Technical data for BOSCH PowerTube 750, BBP3770 horizontal, BBP3771 vertical

3.5.7 Rear frame damper

3.5.7.1 ROCKSHOX Deluxe Select+



Figure 69: ROCKSHOX Deluxe Select rear frame damper structure design

Suspension type	Rear frame damper with DebonAir™ air suspension with IFP chamber
Internal lubricant	Maxima Plush suspension fluid for reduced friction and minimised damper noise
Settings while riding	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rebound can be adjusted using the rebound setting wheel • Compression stroke adjustable with compression lever
Piston tuning	
Damper variant	RL
Rebound setting	H, L, M
Compression tune	H, L, L1, LC, M
Lockout level	320, 380

Table 27: ROCKSHOX Super Deluxe Select+ specifications

3.5.7.2 Technical data for ROCKSHOX Super Deluxe Select+



Figure 70: ROCKSHOX Super Deluxe Select+ rear frame damper structure design

Suspension type	Rear frame damper with DebonAir™ air suspension with IFP chamber
Internal lubricant	Maxima Plush suspension fluid for reduced friction and minimised damper noise
Settings while riding	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rebound can be adjusted using the rebound setting wheel • Compression stroke adjustable with compression lever
Piston tuning	
Damper variant	RL
Rebound setting	H, L, M
Compression tune	H, L, L1, LC, M
Lockout level	320, 380

Table 28: ROCKSHOX Super Deluxe Select+ specifications

3.5.7.3 Technical data for SR SUNTOUR Edge LOR8 Trunnion Mount

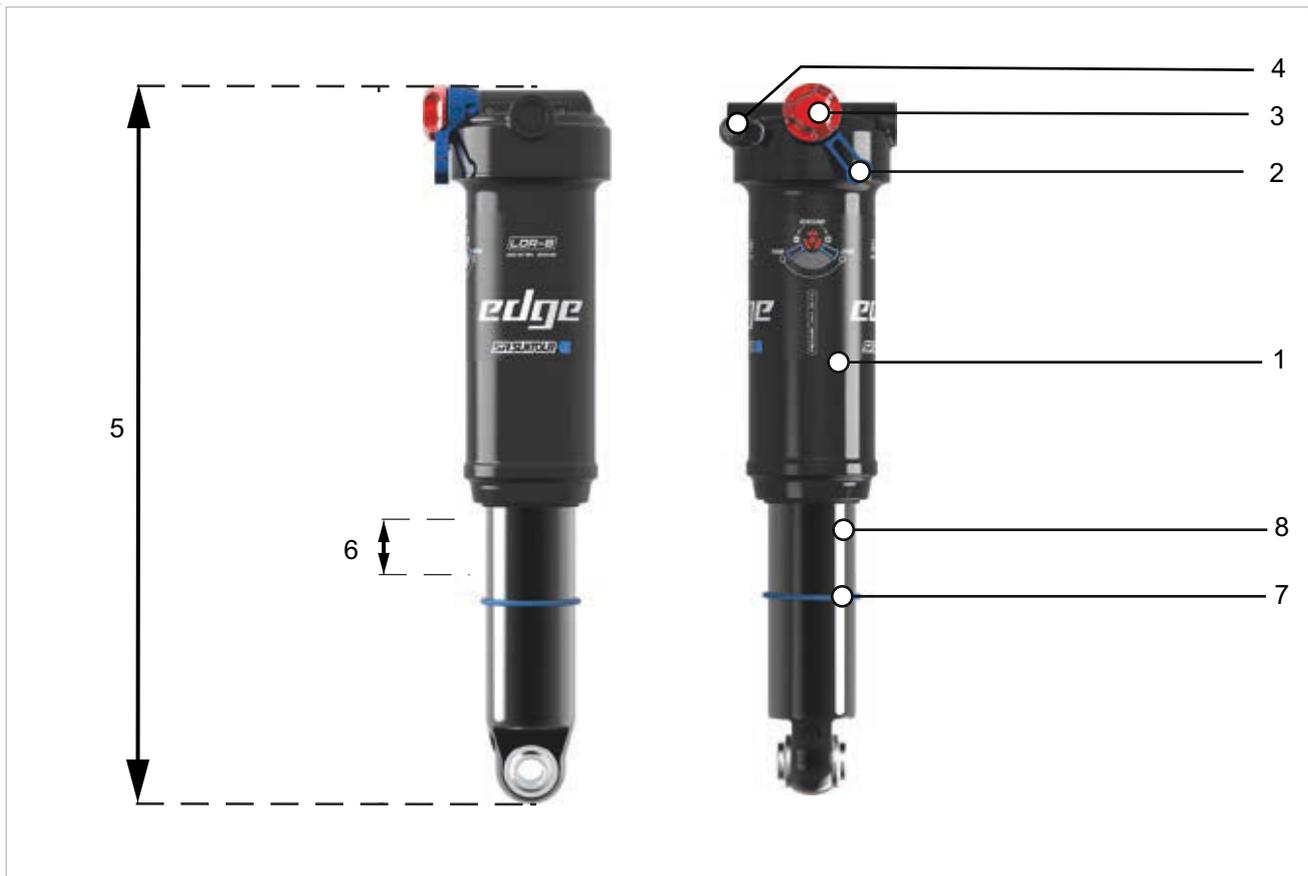


Figure 71: SUNTOUR Edge LOR8 Trunnion Mount rear frame damper structure

Suspension type	Air suspension
Damping	LOR8
Settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rebound adjustable using the rebound adjuster wheel (low speed rebound) with 80% lockout • Compression with compression lever
Max. pressure [PSI]	300

3.5.7.4 Technical data for SR SUNTOUR Edge Plus 2CR

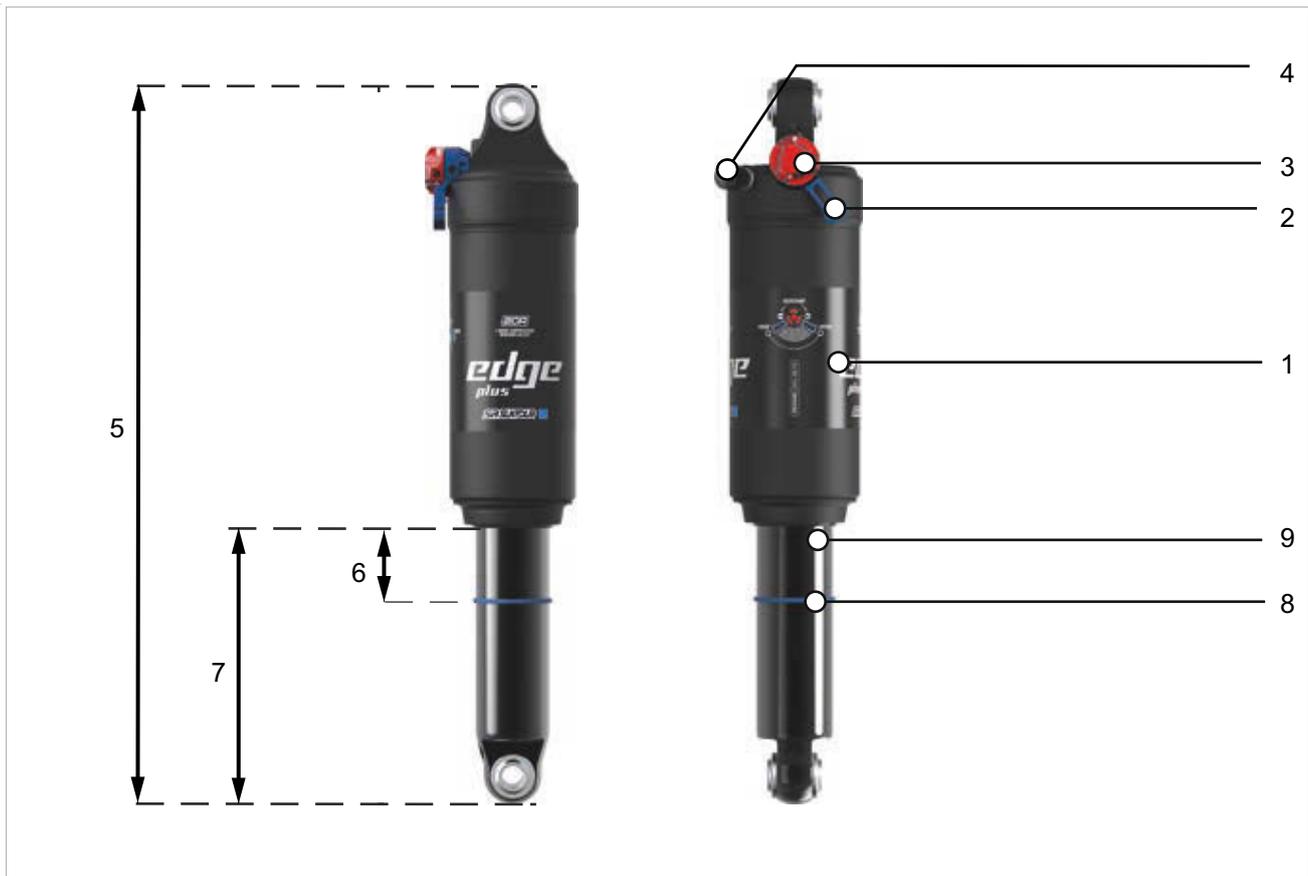


Figure 72: SUNTOUR Edge Plus 2CR rear frame damper structure

Suspension type	Air suspension
Damping	2CR
Settings while riding	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rebound can be adjusted using the rebound adjuster (rear frame damper) • Compression with compression lever
Max. pressure [PSI]	300

Table 29: Specifications for SUNTOUR Edge Plus 2 CR

3.5.8 Suspension fork

3.5.8.1 ROCKSHOX 35 Gold 29"

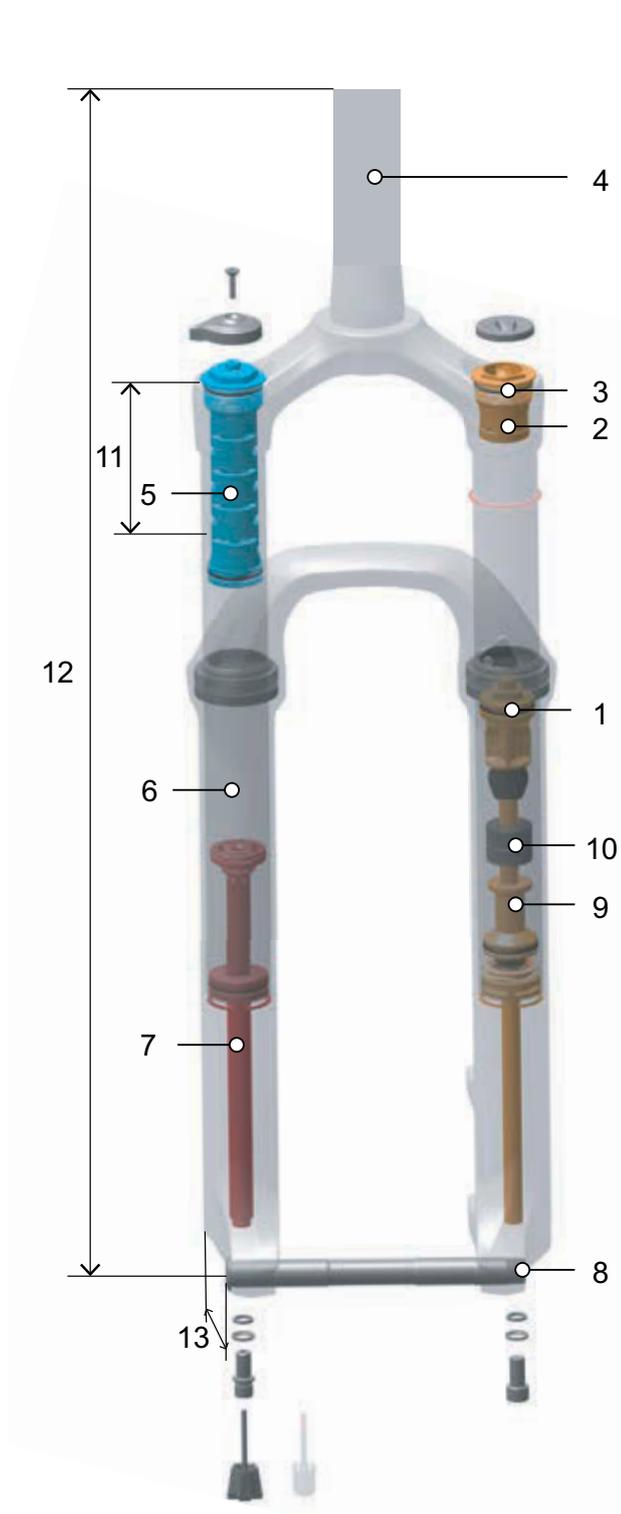


Figure 73: ROCKSHOX 35 Gold 29", FS-35G-RL-A2

Air suspension assembly group		
1	Air suspension piston	DebonAir™
3	Air suspension cover cap	
	Stanchion	
	Fluid	RockShox 5 WT
	Volume	(+) 2 ml
	Lubricating grease	PM600 or SRAM Butter
1	Apply lubricating grease	Air suspension piston
	Lower fork leg	
	Fluid	RockShox 15 WT
	Volume	10 ml
2	Bottomless token	32 mm, black
	Installed	0
	Maximum	2
10	All-travel spacer	Replacement forbidden
Damper		Motion Control™ RL
5	Compression damper,	
	Fluid	RockShox 5 WT
	Fluid fill level	85 ... 90 mm
	Volume	170 ml
7	Rebound damper	
6	Lower fork leg	
	Fluid	RockShox 15 WT
	Volume	10 ml
General information		
11	Deflection	Parts list (see Section 11.3)
4	Head tube	1.8", aluminium, tapered
8	Quick release axle	15× 110 mm
13	Offset	44 mm
14	Length	561, 567 (F) mm
	Weight	2300 g

3.5.8.2 ROCKSHOX Lyrik Select 29"

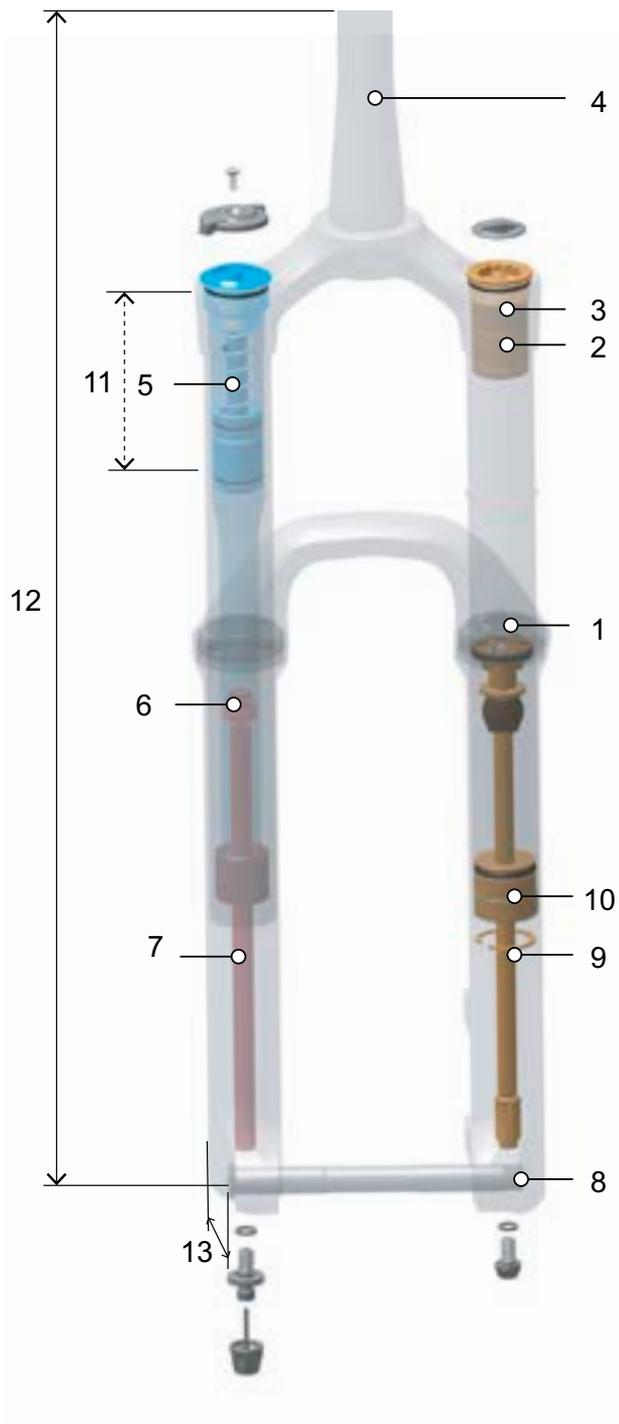
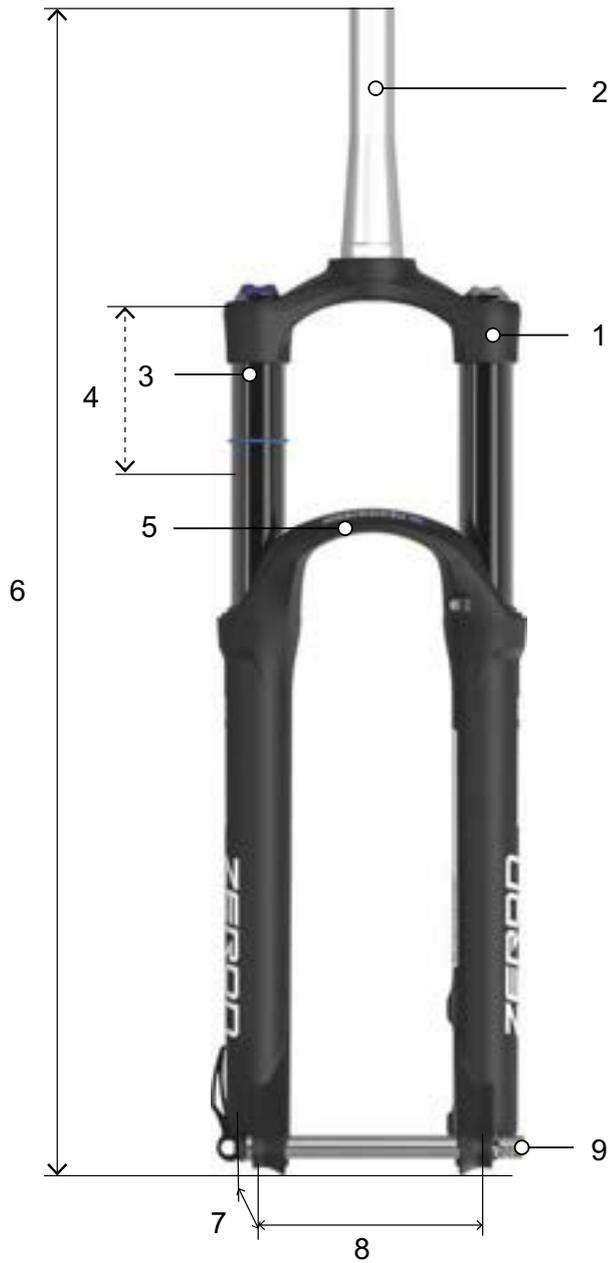


Figure 74: ROCKSHOX Lyrik Select 29",
FS-LYRK-SEL-D1

Air suspension assembly group		
1	Air suspension piston	DebonAir+™
3	Air suspension cover cap	
	Stanchion	
	Fluid	Maxima PLUSH Dynamic Suspension Lube Heavy
	Volume	(+) 3 ml; (-) 1 ml
	Lubricating grease	SRAM Butter
1	Apply lubricating grease	Air suspension piston
	Lower fork leg	
	Fluid	Maxima PLUSH Dynamic Suspension Lube Light
	Volume	30 ml
2	Bottomless token	
	Installed	0
	Maximum	5
10	All-travel spacer	Replacement forbidden
	Damper	Charger™ RC
5	Compression damper,	
	Fluid	Maxima PLUSH3 WT
	Fluid fill level	...
7	Rebound damper	
6	Lower fork leg	
	Fluid	Maxima PLUSH Dynamic Suspension Lube Light
	Volume	30 ml
	General information	
11	Deflection	Parts list (see Section 11.3)
4	Head tube	1.5", aluminium, tapered
8	Quick release axle	Maxle Stealth, 15 × 110 mm
13	Offset	44 mm
12	Length	551 mm

3.5.8.3 SR SUNTOUR, ZERON35-Boost LOR DS 15QLC32-110 29"



Suspension		
1	Steel spring	LOR
8	Stanchion distance	145 mm
Damping		
3	Cartridges	LOR
General information		
4	Deflection	Parts list (see Section 11.3)
2	Head tube	1.5" ... 1-1/8"
9	Quick release axle	Ø15-110 15QLC32-110
7	Offset	51 mm
6	Length	Deflection 120 mm: 550 mm Deflection 150 mm: 570 mm
5	With mudguard	Yes

Figure 75: SR SUNTOUR, ZERON35-Boost LOR DS 15QLC32-110 291

3.5.8.4 SR SUNTOUR LOR cartridge LOR



Figure 76: LOR operating elements

The SR Suntour LOR cartridge features

- a low-speed compression damper
- a low-speed rebound damper

Before riding, use the **rebound adjuster (suspension fork)** (1) to adjust the system to the surface you will ride on.

The suspension system can be adjusted to the current surface during rides using the low-speed compression adjustment wheel (2). The **compression adjuster** can also be used to open and close the damping.

If the pressure in the suspension fork is too high, the blow-off feature releases air by opening a valve. This prevents any damage due to overpressure.

		Function available
	Lockout remote control	...
	Fork head lockout	x
Compression damping	High-speed	...
	Low-speed	x
	Fixed	...
Rebound damping	High-speed	...
	Low-speed	x
	Fixed	...
	Blow-off feature	x
	PCS	...

Table 30: An overview of SR SUNTOUR LOR functions

3.5.9 Rear derailleur

3.5.9.1 SRAM XX1 Eagle AXS rear derailleur



Figure 77: SRAM XX1 Eagle AXS rear derailleur

Derailleur cage	Carbon
Pulleys	Steel
Technology	Eagle™
Derailleur guard	Overload clutch
Software	AXS™
Protection class	IPX7
Gears	12
Maximum sprocket	52
Operating temperature	-10 °C... +40 °C
Air humidity during operation	0%... 100%
Storage temperature	-40 °C... +70 °C
Air humidity during storage	10% ... 85%
Battery	(Optional) SRAM AXS Controller battery

BLUETOOTH Low Energy®	
Frequency	# MHz
Transmitting capacity	# mW

3.5.10 Shifter

3.5.10.1 SRAM Eagle AXS Controller shifter



Figure 78: SRAM Eagle AXS Controller

Technology	Eagle™
Software	AXS™
Protection class	IPX7
Operating temperature	-10 °C... +40 °C
Air humidity during operation	0% ... 100%
Storage temperature	-40 °C... +70 °C
Air humidity during storage	10% ... 85%
Battery	1 x CR2032
BLUETOOTH Low Energy®	
Frequency	# MHz
Transmitting capacity	# mW

3.5.11 Saddle

3.5.11.1 BROOKS ENGLAND saddle width

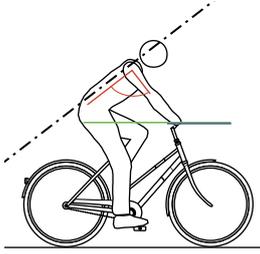
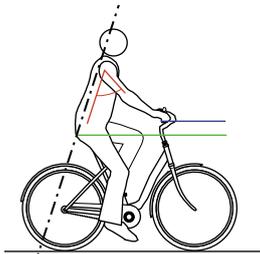
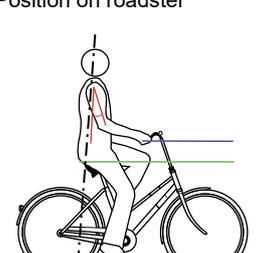
Riding position	
<p>Narrow saddle</p> <p>Sharply inclined upper body, back at an angle of 30°...60°.</p>	<p>Position on trekking bike</p> 
<p>Medium-width saddle</p> <p>Slightly inclined upper body, back at an angle of 60°...70°.</p>	<p>Position on city bike</p> 
<p>Wide saddle</p> <p>Upright, almost vertical posture, back at an angle of almost 90°.</p>	<p>Position on roadster</p> 

Table 31: BROOKS ENGLAND Specifications

3.5.11.2 ERGON saddle width

Suitable sit bone distance	
Medium/large	12 - 16 cm
Small/medium	9 - 12 cm

Table 32: ERGON Specifications

3.5.11.3 SELLE ROYAL saddle width

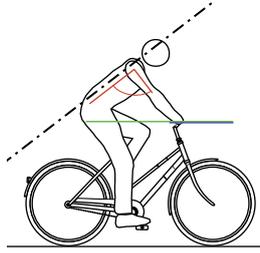
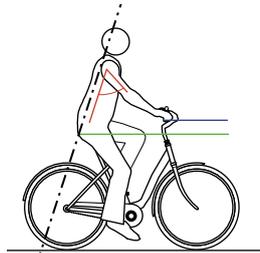
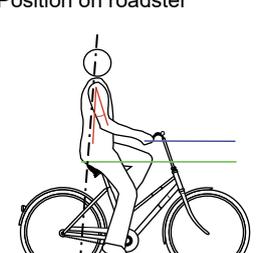
Riding position	
<p>Athletic</p> <p>Sharply inclined upper body, back at an angle of 30°...60°.</p>	<p>Position on trekking bike</p> 
<p>Moderate</p> <p>Slightly inclined upper body, back at an angle of 60°...70°.</p>	<p>Position on city bike</p> 
<p>Relaxed</p> <p>Upright, almost vertical posture, back at an angle of almost 90°.</p>	<p>Position on roadster</p> 
Suitable sit bone distance	
Small	<11 cm
Medium	11 - 13 cm
Large	>13 cm

Table 33: SELLE ROYAL Specifications

3.5.12 Seat post

3.5.12.1 LIMOTEC, A1/A1L

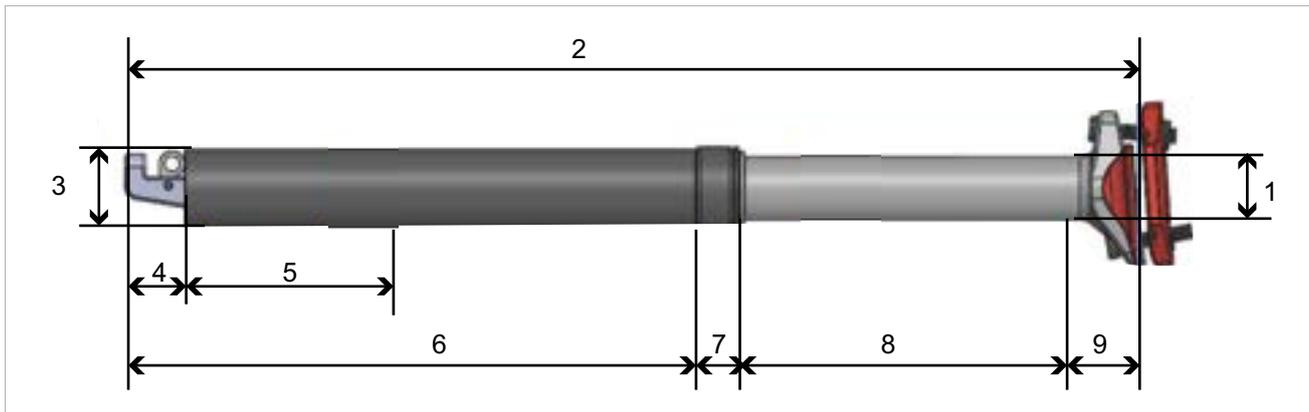


Figure 79: Dimensions of LIMOTEC A1 seat post

Numbering in drawing		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Variable type	Maximum body weight [kg]	Ø [mm]	Length [mm]	Ø [mm]	[mm]	Minimum insertion depth [mm]	[mm]	[mm]	Stroke travel [mm]	[mm]
30.9 Ø/75 mm	120	25.6	295	30.9	25	80	153	12	75	30
31.6 Ø/75 mm	120	25.6	295	31.6	25	80	153	12	75	30
30.9 Ø/100 mm	120	25.6	345	30.9	25	80	178	12	100	30
31.6 Ø/100 mm	120	25.6	345	31.6	25	80	178	12	100	30
30.9 Ø/125 mm	120	25.6	402	30.9	25	80	205	12	125	35
31.6 Ø/125 mm	120	25.6	402	31.6	25	80	205	12	125	35
31.6 Ø/150 mm	120	25.6	445	31.6	25	80	235	12	150	23

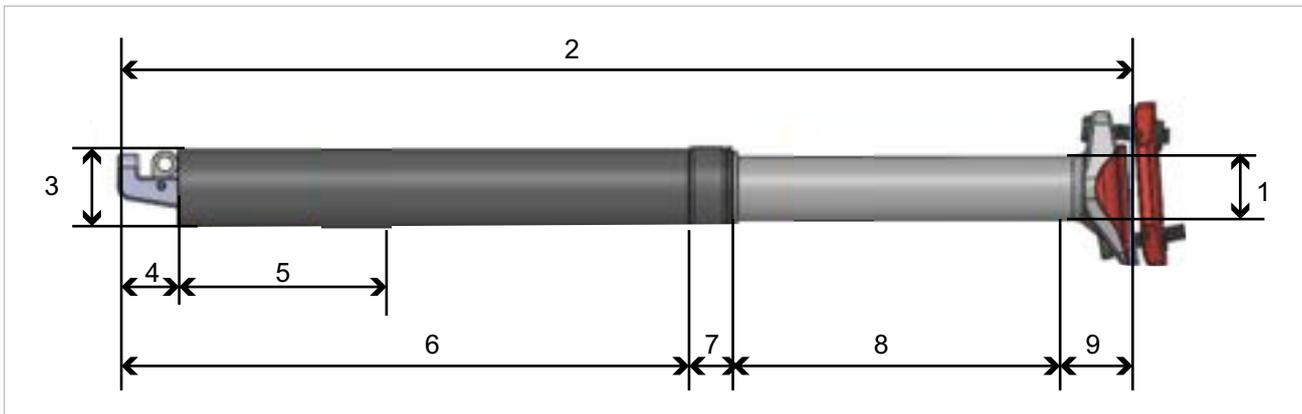


Figure 80: Dimensions of LIMOTEC A1L seat post

Numbering in drawing		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Variable type	Maximum body weight [kg]	Ø [mm]	Length [mm]	Ø [mm]	[mm]	Minimum insertion depth [mm]	[mm]	[mm]	Stroke travel [mm]	[mm]
30.9 Ø/75 mm	120	25.6	295	30.9	25	100	178	...	75	...
31.6 Ø/75 mm	120	25.6	295	31.9	25	100	178	...	75	...
30.9 Ø/100 mm	120	25.6	345	30.9	25	100	203	...	100	...
31.6 Ø/100 mm	120	25.6	345	31.9	25	100	203	...	100	...
34.9 Ø/100 mm	120	28.6	345	34.9	25	100	203	...	100	...
30.9 Ø/125 mm	120	25.6	402	30.9	25	100	230	...	125	...
31.6 Ø/125 mm	120	25.6	402	31.9	25	100	230	...	125	...
34.9 Ø/125 mm	120	28.6	402	34.9	25	100	230	...	125	...
30.9 Ø/150 mm	120	25.6	445	30.9	25	80	253	...	150	...
31.6 Ø/150 mm	120	25.6	445	31.9	25	80	253	...	150	...
34.9 Ø/150 mm	120	28.6	445	34.9	25	110	253	...	150	...
30.9 Ø/170 mm	120	25.6	485	30.9	25	110	273	...	170	...
31.6 Ø/170 mm	120	25.6	485	31.9	25	110	273	...	170	...
34.9 Ø/170 mm	120	28.6	485	34.9	25	110	273	...	170	...
34.9 Ø/200 mm	120	28.6	545	34.9	25	110	293	...	200	...

3.5.13 EIGHTPINS seat post

Maximum body weight

Eightpins seat posts have a rider weight limit.

- The variant with a setback head has a maximum permitted rider weight of 130 kg.
- The variant with a mini-setback head has a maximum permitted rider weight of 110 kg.

Rider height and seat post size

The design for the Eightpins seat post configuration is based on the statistical evaluation of a height survey of around 1,000 people. This evaluation shows that 99% of riders require a saddle height within an adjustment range of 308 mm. There are only a few extreme exceptions above and below this range. The Eightpins size diagram was designed based on these data. The actual saddle height was calculated by multiplying the stride length by a factor of 0.885. It was also assumed that a saddle with an average height of around 40 mm is used.

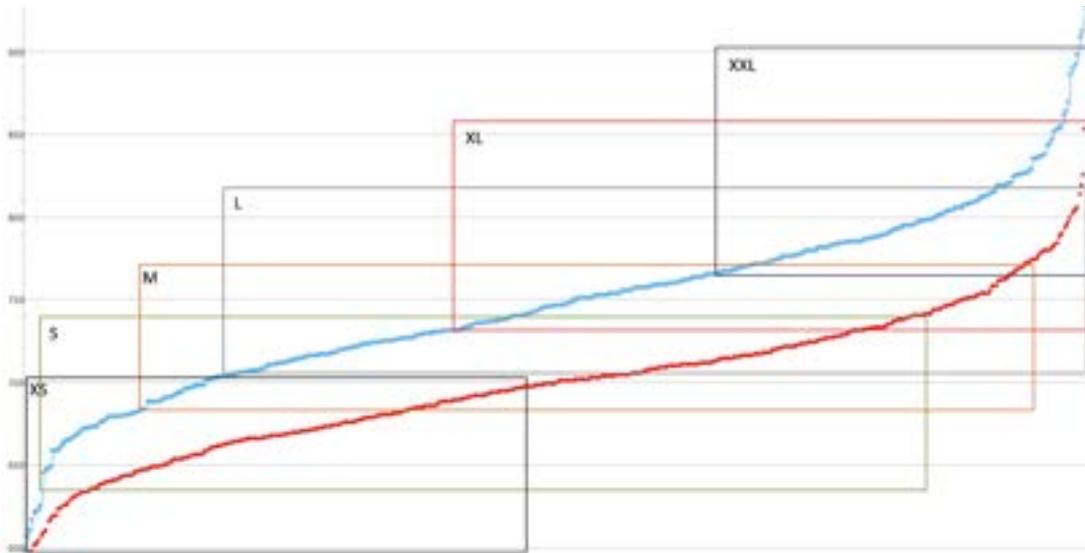


Figure 81: Correlation between women's (red) and men's (blue) body height and seat post sizes

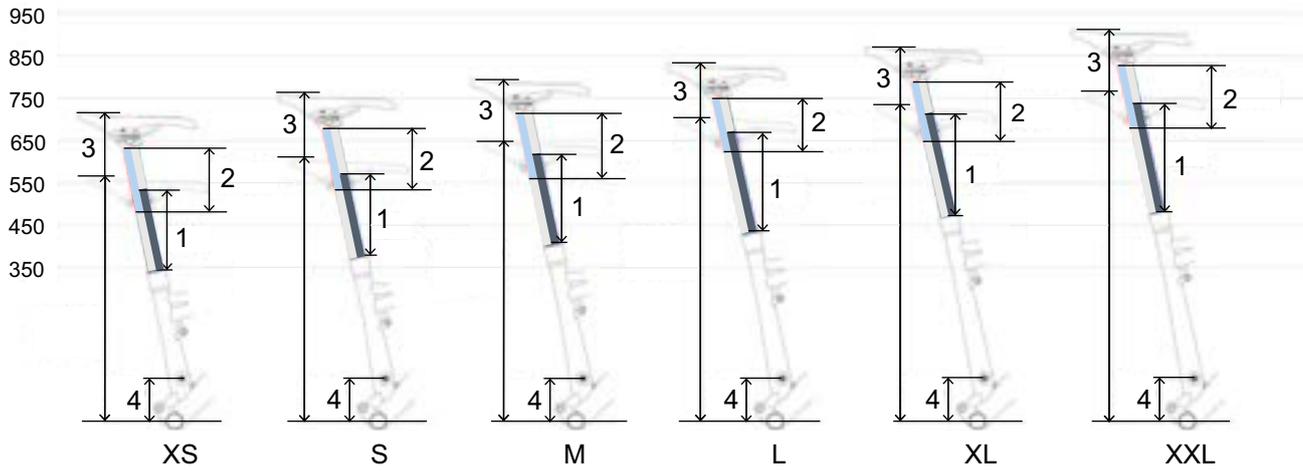


Figure 82: Dimensions of EIGHTPINS seat post with its maximum piston stroke (1), adjustment range (2), maximum and minimum saddle height (3) and the position of the post pin (4) for ISPS with 6 sizes

ISPS with 6 sizes	XS	S	M	L	XL	XXL
Max. piston height NGS2	168	192	216	228	240	258
Max. piston height H01	114	159	175	185	196	212
Adjustment range	102	102	102	114	126	132
Min.... max. height	605... 707	647... 749	683... 785	707... 821	731... 857	767... 899
Position of post pin	85	85	85	85	85	85

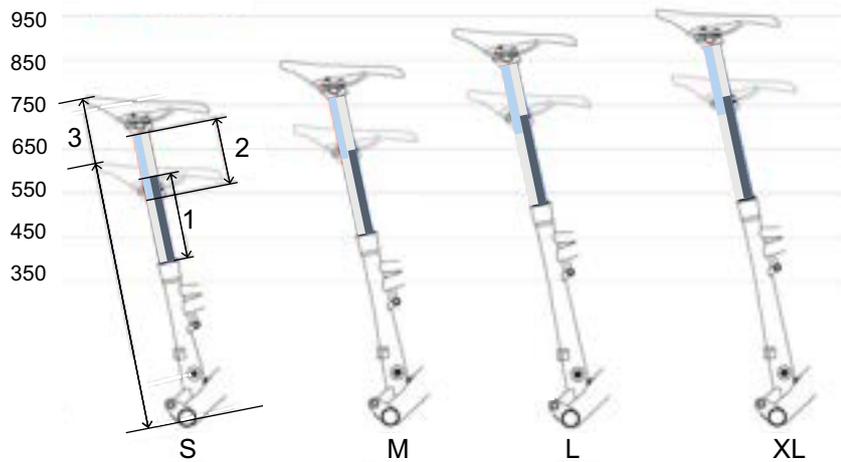


Figure 83: Dimensions of EIGHTPINS seat post with its maximum piston stroke (1), adjustment range (2), maximum and minimum saddle height (3) for ISPS with 4 sizes

ISPS with 4 sizes	S	M	L	XL
Max. piston height NGS2	168	192	210	228
Max. piston height H01	144	162	175	196
Adjustment range	114	120	132	150
Min.... max. height	611... 725	653... 773	689 ...821	731... 881

3.5.14 Tyres

3.5.14.1 SCHWALBE puncture protection level

PPI	Rubber insert	Combination of inserts	Webbing insert
7	SmartGuard®		
6		DualGuard Double Defense®	Tubeless Easy
5	GreenGuard® PunctureGuard		V-Guard
4			RaceGuard®
3	K-Guard		
2			Performance LiteSkin
1			

Figure 84: Classification of puncture protection belts according to puncture protection level (PPL)

	<p>SmartGuard® SmartGuard® comprises a protective belt made of highly elastic special rubber 5 mm thick, which is partly obtained from recycled material.</p>
	<p>DualGuard DualGuard puncture protection technology consists of two layers of special rubber and nylon webbing 2.5 mm thick beneath the tread.</p>
	<p>Double Defense® This combined puncture protection is available in three versions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In the race version, protection is provided by SnakeSkin (all round) and RaceGuard (beneath the tread). • In tour tyres, SnakeSkin takes affect on the side walls while the high-density is attached beneath the tread. • <i>Plus</i> tyres combine one layer of GreenGuard beneath the tread and SnakeSkin on the side walls.
	<p>Tubeless Easy The Tubeless technology, special monofile webbing (SnakeSkin or MicroSkin) prevent air loss and guarantee puncture protection in combination with sealant.</p>

	<p>V-GUARD The V-Guard puncture protection belt comprises of lightweight, cut-resistant fibres. Its webbing ensures highly effective puncture resistance for lightweight race and tour tyres.</p>
	<p>GreenGuard® The GreenGuard® puncture belt comprises highly elastic special rubber 3 mm thick, partially made of recycled material, which is positioned on a 67 EPI carcass.</p>
	<p>PunctureGuard The PunctureGuard puncture protection belt consists of a rubber insert 3 mm thick.</p>
	<p>RaceGuard® The RaceGuard® puncture protection belt comprises two criss-crossing nylon webbings, positioned over a 67 EPI carcass.</p>
	<p>K-Guard The K-Guard puncture protection comprises a natural rubber insert, reinforced with Kevlar® fibres. Kevlar® is a high-tech fibre by DuPont, used in many items to obstruct penetrating objects, including in bulletproof vests.</p>
	<p>Performance and LiteSkin Tyres with a 50 EPI carcass - without puncture protection belt.</p>

3.5.14.2 Tyres, SUPERO puncture protection level

	<p>Level 7</p> <p>An EPS webbing layer is located beneath a 3-mm LPD layer.</p>
	<p>Level 6</p> <p>An EPS webbing layer is combined with a 1-mm layer of rubber.</p>
	<p>EPS BtB</p> <p>EPS BtB (wire-to-wire). The side walls are also protected with a poly-fibre webbing layer in addition to the tread.</p>
	<p>EPS 2</p> <p>A tyre with a 5 EPS protection level has a poly-fibre webbing layer. The webbing is located between the tread and the carcass.</p>
	<p>LDP</p> <p>A tyre with a 5 LDP protection level has an LDP puncture protection webbing layer 3 mm thick. This is an extra thick rubber layer between the tread and the carcass.</p>
	<p>EPS 1</p> <p>Tyres with Level 4 protection feature an additional dense EPS webbing layer. As a result, the tyre is light and is suitable for racing and ATB bikes.</p>
	<p>Kevlar® Inside</p> <p>Tyres with Kevlar® Inside feature a Kevlar® webbing layer 1.5 mm thick between the carcass and wheel.</p>
	<p>The carcass has 60 EPI from Protection Level 2.</p>
	<p>APL puncture protection</p> <p>APL puncture protection offers a rubber protection layer 1 mm thick between the carcass and the tread. The carcass has between 22 and 32 EPI.</p>

PPI	Rubber insert	Combination of inserts	Webbing insert
L7		Level 7	
L6		Level 6	
L5	LDP		EPS 2 EPS BtB
L4			EPS 1
L3			Kevlar® Inside
L2			
L1	APL		

Table 34: Classification of puncture protection belts according to puncture protection level (PPL)

3.5.15 Torque

Model	Torque	Tool
Axle		
Conventional axle nut	35 ... 40 Nm*	15 mm spanner
SR SUNTOUR screw-on axle 12AH2 Axle Securing screw	8 ... 10 Nm 5 ... 6 Nm	6 mm hex bit 5 mm hex bit
SR SUNTOUR screw-on axle 15AH2 Axle Securing screw	8 ... 10 Nm 5 ... 6 Nm	6 mm hex bit 5 mm hex bit
Intend. Edge Axle Securing screw	3 ... 5 Nm 10 Nm	M6
Rechargeable battery		
BOSCH PowerPack 400/500/600/800 4 × attachment screws for casing base locking mechanism 2 × attachment screws for cover 2 × attachment screws for cover 2 × attachment screws for bracket on cable side 1 × attachment screw for bracket on cable side 2 × attachment screws for bracket on lock side 1 × attachment screws for bracket on lock side	5 Nm 2 Nm 2 Nm 1.3 Nm 5 Nm 5 Nm 1 Nm	Torx® T25, M5 × 20 M3.5 × 12 M3.5 × 12 (pointed) Torx® T15 Torx® T25, M5 × 20 Torx® T25 Torx® T15, M3.5 × 12
Display		
FIT Comfort/Compact bracket Attachment screw	0.5 Nm	Hex key, 2.5 mm
FIT Comfort/Compact Mounting bracket	0.8 Nm	Torx® T20
On-board computer		
FIT Remote Basic Mounting bracket	0.8 Nm	Torx® T20
FIT Remote Display Mounting bracket	0.8 Nm	Torx® T20
BOSCH Intuvia 100 bracket  Attachment screw 1, M3 × 22 Attachment screw 2, M3 × 14	1 Nm 1 Nm	3 mm hex bit 3 mm hex bit
BOSCH System Controller Attachment screw	0.5 Nm	Torx® T10

BOSCH Mini Remote Attachment screw	0.4 Nm (not 0.6 Nm, as written on mini-remote)	3 mm hex bit
SHIMANO SC-E5003 Attachment screw	0.8 Nm	3 mm hex bit
Brake linings		
SHIMANO Circlip	2 ... 4 Nm	Hex key, 3 mm Slotted-head screwdriver
TEKTRO for hydraulic disc brake system Attachment screws	3 ... 5 Nm	Hex key, 3 mm
Brake cable		
SHIMANO Connecting screw, handbrake	5 ... 7 Nm	Screw wrench, 8 mm
SHIMANO Connecting screw, brake calliper, version for banjo type connection	5 ... 7 Nm 8 ... 10 Nm	Hex key, 3 mm Hex key, 4 mm
SHIMANO Connecting screw for brake calliper, straight version	5 ... 7 Nm	Hex key, 3 mm
SHIMANO for racing bicycles Connecting screw for cable sleeve	5 ... 7 Nm	Screw wrench, 8 mm
TEKTRO for hydraulic disc brake system Bleed valve on brake calliper	4 ... 6 Nm	#
TEKTRO for hydraulic disc brake system Lock screw for the fluid reservoir on the handbrake	2 ... 4 Nm	Torx® T15
Brake calliper		
SHIMANO Adapter attachment screw and brake calliper attachment screw, version with IS brake mount	6 ... 8 Nm	...
SHIMANO Brake calliper attachment screw, post-mount version	6 ... 8 Nm	...
TEKTRO for hydraulic disc brake system Adapter attachment screws	6 ... 8 Nm	#
TEKTRO for hydraulic disc brake system Brake calliper attachment screw	6 ... 8 Nm	Hex key, 5 mm
Brake disc		
SHIMANO for centre lock type Quick release attachment screw	40 ... 50 Nm	TL-LR15 TL-FC36/TL-LR11 Adjustable spanner
SHIMANO for centre lock type Attachment screw, nut version	40 ... 50 Nm	TL-LR10 Screw wrench

SHIMANO for 5-hole version Attachment screws	2 ... 4 Nm	Star bit [no. 25]
SHIMANO for 6-hole version Attachment screws	2 ... 4 Nm	Star bit [no. 25]
TEKTRO for hydraulic disc brake system Attachment screws	4 ... 6 Nm	Torx® T25
Cantilever brake		
SHIMANO Brake calliper attachment screw	5 ... 7 Nm	Hex key, 5 mm
SHIMANO Attachment screw for brake shoe	8 ... 9 Nm	Hex key, 5 mm Screw wrench, 10 mm
SHIMANO Bowden cable attachment screw	6 ... 8 Nm	Hex key, 5 mm
Dual pivot rim brake		
SHIMANO Attachment screw	8 ... 10 Nm	Hex key, 5 mm
SHIMANO, models with nut Attachment screw	8 ... 10 Nm	Screw wrench, 10 mm
SHIMANO Attachment screw for brake shoe	5 ... 7 Nm	Hex key, 4 mm
SHIMANO, left side Attachment screw for brake cable	6 ... 8 Nm	Hex key, 5 mm
SHIMANO, right side Attachment screw for brake cable	1 ... 1.5 Nm	Hex key, 2 mm
Seat post remote control		
Eightpins Attachment screw Bowden cable fastener	2.5 Nm 5 Nm	4 mm hex bit 3 mm hex bit
Freewheel		
SHIMANO	35 Nm	Multiple freewheel tool TL-FW3
Suspension fork		
Intend Edge Double bridge screw	12 Nm	
SR SUNTOUR Suspension side, top, plastic	5 Nm	
SR SUNTOUR Suspension side, top, aluminium	20 Nm	
SR SUNTOUR Suspension side, bottom	10 Nm	Hex bit (torque)
SR SUNTOUR Suspension side, bottom	8 Nm	Aluminium nut (torque)
SR SUNTOUR Suspension side, bottom, (Adjust deflection)	7 Nm	
SR SUNTOUR Damping side, top, plastic	5 Nm	

SR SUNTOUR Damping side, top, aluminium	20 Nm	
SR SUNTOUR Damping side, bottom, without adjuster	10 Nm	
SR SUNTOUR Damping side, bottom, with adjuster	7 Nm	
SR SUNTOUR Fork head clamps	7 Nm	
SRAM RockShox, 35 Cover cap	28 Nm	socket nut, 24 mm
SRAM RockShox, Lyrik, ZEB Compression damper cover cap	28 Nm	RockShox cover cap/cassette tool (or standard cassette tool)
SRAM RockShox, Lyrik, ZEB DebonAir+ suspension cover cap	28 Nm	RockShox cover cap/cassette tool (or standard cassette tool)
SRAM RockShox, Lyrik, ZEB Dual Position air suspension cover cap	28 Nm	socket nut, 24 mm
SRAM RockShox, 35 Attachment screw – compression adjustment ring and remote operation ring	1.4 Nm	2.5 mm hex bit
SRAM RockShox, Lyrik, ZEB Attachment screw – compression adjuster Charger RC (Select)	1.35 Nm	2.5 mm hex bit
SRAM RockShox, Lyrik, ZEB Attachment screw – compression adjustment ring Charger RC (Select)	0.75 ... 1.1 Nm	2.5 mm hex bit
SRAM RockShox, 35 Attachment screw – deflection adjustment ring (Dual Position Coil)	1.35 Nm	2.5 mm hex bit
SRAM RockShox, Lyrik, ZEB ButterCup housing guide rod end plate - end plate to guide rod - air suspension and damper	3.3 Nm	Torx® T25
SRAM RockShox, Lyrik, ZEB ButterCup housing (top) to ButterCup housing (bottom) – air suspension and damper	3.3 Nm	23 mm spanner head
SRAM RockShox Bottomless Tokens	4 Nm	8 mm socket nut and 24 mm hex bit
SRAM RockShox, Lyrik, ZEB Sealing head (rebound) for damper cartridge barrel cover cap – Charger RC (Select), Rush RC (Base)	2 Nm	10 mm socket nut
SRAM RockShox, Lyrik, ZEB Pressure relief valve (PRV) and stopper	9 Nm	19 mm spanner head

SRAM RockShox Locking screw – remote control stop ring	Hand-tight or 0.1 ... 0.3 Nm	2 mm hex bit
SRAM RockShox, Lyrik, ZEB Clamping screw – rebound adjuster ring	0.84 Nm	2.5 mm hex bit
SRAM RockShox, Lyrik, ZEB Air suspension guide rod insert (Select+, Select, Base – only DebonAir+)	3.3 Nm	5 mm hex bit
SRAM RockShox, Lyrik, ZEB Cam adjuster clamping screw – compression damper adjuster (HSC) × 2	0.56 Nm	2.5 mm hex bit
SRAM RockShox Lower screws	6.8 Nm	5 mm hex bit
Handbrake		
SHIMANO Attachment screw	6 ... 8 Nm	Hex key, 4 mm Hex key, 5 mm
SHIMANO Attachment screw BL-M987/ BL-M9000/BL-M9020	4 ... 6 Nm	Hex key, 4 mm
SHIMANO, lever for disc brake Bleed nipple	4 ... 6 Nm	Socket wrench, 7 mm
SHIMANO, lever for disc brake Bleed screw	0.3 ... 0.5 Nm	...
TEKTRO for hydraulic disc brake system Attachment screws	5 ... 7 Nm	Hex key, 4 mm
Chainring		
FIT, Brose FIT Crank start spider locking	28 Nm	ISIS bottom bracket axle tool
FIT, Panasonic FIT Crank star screws	13 Nm	Hex key, 5 mm
FIT, Panasonic FIT Crank start spider locking	40 Nm	ISIS bottom bracket axle tool
FIT, Panasonic FIT Crank star screws	13 Nm	Hex key, 5 mm
SHIMANO, for MTB/trekking Largest chainring Medium chainring Smallest chainring	14 ... 16 Nm 16 ... 17 Nm	...
SHIMANO, single version Attachment screw for crank/chainring	12 ... 14 Nm	5 mm hex key/star bit [No. 30]
SHIMANO, dual version Largest chainring Smallest chainring	12 ... 14 Nm 16 ... 17 Nm	5 mm hex key/star bit [No. 30] 5 mm hex key/star bit [No. 30]
SHIMANO, triple design Largest chainring Medium chainring Smallest chainring	12 ... 14 Nm 16 ... 17 Nm	5 mm hex key/star bit [No. 30] 5 mm hex key/star bit [No. 30]

SHIMANO, FC-M8000, single version Attachment screw for crank/ chainring	12 ... 14 Nm	Star bit [no. 30]
SHIMANO, FC-M8000, dual version Largest chainring Smallest chainring	12 ... 14 Nm 16 ... 17 Nm	Star bit [no. 30] Star bit [no. 30]
SHIMANO, FC-M8000, triple version Largest chainring Medium chainring Smallest chainring	10 ... 12 Nm 16 ... 17 Nm	Star bit [no. 30] Star bit [no. 30]
Chain guard		
Brose chain guard bash guard Attachment screws	6 Nm	Hex key, 3 mm
Chain guard for BOSCH Motor BDU37xx Attachment screws	max. 10 Nm	M6 × 10; head: max. 5 mm; length: max. 8.5-mm
Crank bearing/crank set		
Conventional cartridge crank bearing	35 ... 45 Nm	...
SHIMANO, HOLLOWTECH li/two-part crank set Linker for adapter and inner sleeve	35 ... 50 Nm	TL-FC24/TL-FC25/TL-FC32/TL-FC36
SHIMANO, HOLLOWTECH li/two-part crank set Cap	0.7 ... 1.5 Nm	TL-FC16 / TL-FC18
SHIMANO, HOLLOWTECH li/two-part crank set Screw for left-hand crank arm	12 ... 14 Nm	Hex key, 5 mm
SHIMANO, OCTALINK model Linker for adapter and main body	50 ... 70 Nm	TL-UN74-S/ TL-UN66
SHIMANO, OCTALINK model Crank set	35 ... 50 Nm	Hex key, 8 mm Hex key, 10 mm
SHIMANO, SQUARE model Linker for adapter and body	50 ... 70 Nm	TL-UN74-S
SHIMANO, SQUARE model Crank set	35 ... 50 Nm	Hex key, 8 mm
Handlebars		
Clamping screw, conventional	5 ... 7 Nm*	#
CONTROL TECH Handlebar clamp with one or two screws	14 ... 16 Nm	#
SHIMANO Handlebar clamp with one or two screws	20 ... 29 Nm	#
Motor		
FIT, Brose S-Mag FIT Motor attachment screws (horizontal/vertical)	23/25 Nm	Socket wrench, AF 13 mm Hex key, AF 6 mm
FIT, Panasonic FIT Motor attachment screws	20 ... 24 Nm	Hex key, 6 mm

BOSCH motor BDU37xx 6 x attachment screws for motor	20 ± 2 Nm	Torx Plus® P40, M8 × 16				
		<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Torx®</td> <td>Torx Plus®</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	Torx®	Torx Plus®		
Torx®	Torx Plus®					
						
Motor cover						
BOSCH motor cover BDU37xx						
Attachment screws for lower motor cover	Initial fitting: 3 ± 0.5 Nm Retrofit: 2 ± 0.5 Nm	Torx® TX 20				
Attachment screws for motor cover	Initial fitting: 3 ± 0.5 Nm Retrofit: 2 ± 0.5 Nm	Torx® TX 20, 4 × 8 mm				
Brose FIT motor cover	1 Nm	Hex key, 3 mm				
Hub						
ROHLOFF, 14/500 Bayonet lock/cable drum screws	1.5 Nm	2 mm hex bit				
ROHLOFF, 14/500 Oil drain screw	0.5 Nm	3 mm hex bit				
ROHLOFF, 14/500 Attachment screw for chain tensioner and torque support collar	...	5 mm hex bit				
ROHLOFF, 14/500 To rotate the gear shift shaft	...	Open-end spanner 8 mm				
ROHLOFF, 14/500 All other screws	3 Nm	Torx® TX 20				
ROHLOFF, 14/500 CC versions	7 Nm					
ROHLOFF, 14/500 Axle nut TS	30 ... 35 Nm					
ROHLOFF, 14/500 Frame collar clamp attachment screw	6 Nm	4 mm hex bit				
ROHLOFF, 14/500 Axle plate attachment screw	7 Nm	5 mm hex bit				
ROHLOFF, 14/500 Chainring screws	7 Nm	5 mm hex bit				
ROHLOFF, 14/500 Attachment screw for disc brake mount	8 Nm	M6				
ROHLOFF, 14/500 Disc brake attachment screw	10 Nm	5 mm hex bit				
ROHLOFF, 14/500 Axle plate screws	3 Nm	Torx® TX 20				
ROHLOFF, 14/500 Torque support collar clamp screw	2.5 Nm					
ROHLOFF, 14/500 Frame collar clamp	6 Nm	SW10 screw wrench; hold screw in place with 4 mm hex bit				

ROHLOFF, 14/500 Chain tensioner attachment screw	8 Nm	5 mm hex bit
ROHLOFF, 14/500 Chain guide attachment screw	3 Nm	Torx® TX 20
ROHLOFF, 14/500 Rear spacer sleeve attachment screw	3 Nm	Torx® TX 20
ROHLOFF, 14/500 Attachment screw for shift handle on handlebars	1 Nm	2.5 mm hex bit
ROHLOFF, 14/500 End stop	3 Nm	Torx® TX 20
ROHLOFF, 14/500 Cable guide	6 Nm	4 mm hex bit
SHIMANO quick release version FH-M3050, FH-M4050, FH-MT200-B, FH-MT400, FH-MT400-B, FH-MT500, FH-MT500-B, FH-MT510, FH-MT510-B, FH-RM33, FH-RM35, FH-TX505 FH-TY505, FH-UR600 HB-M3050, HB-M4050, HB-MT200, HB-MT400, HB-MT400-B, HB-RM33, HB-TX505 SLX FH-M7000, FH-M7010, FH-M7010-B HB-M7000, HB-M7010, HB-M7010-B DEORE FH-M618, FH-M618-B, FH-M6000, FH-M6010, FH-M6010-B, HB-M618, HB-M618-B, HB-M6000, HB-M6010, HB-M6010-B Brake disc attachment screw	40 Nm	Adjustable spanner and special tool TL-LR15 (SHIMANO)
SHIMANO E-THRU quick release axle Retaining ring for brake disc	40 Nm	Special tool TL-FC36 (SHIMANO)
SHIMANO, FH-M3050, FH-M4050, FH-M7000, FH-M6000, FH-RM33, FH-RM35, FH-UR600 Attachment screw, freewheel body	35 ... 50 Nm	10 mm hex bit
SHIMANO, FH-MT200, FH-TX505, FH-TY505 Attachment screw, freewheel body	147 ... 200 Nm	12 mm hex bit
SHIMANO, FH-M7010, FH-M7010-B, FH-M6010, FH-M6010-B, FH-M618, FH-M618-B, FH-MT400, FH-MT400-B, FH-MT500, FH-MT500-B, FH-MT510, FH-MT510-B Lock nut	15 ... 20 Nm	Hub spanner, 17 mm

SHIMANO , HB-M7000, HB-M6000 HB-M4050 Lock nut	10 ... 15 Nm	Hub spanner, 13 mm and 17 mm
SHIMANO , HB-M7010, HB-M7010-B HB-M6010, HB-M6010-B, HB-M618, HB-M618-B, HB-MT400, HB-MT400-B Lock nut	21 ... 26 Nm	Hub spanner, 22 mm
SHIMANO hub dynamo E2 model	20 - 25 Nm	Screw wrench
SHIMANO hub dynamo J2 model	20 Nm	Screw wrench
SHIMANO hub dynamo J2-A model	20 Nm	Screw wrench
Pedal		
Pedal, conventional	33 ... 35 Nm	Screw wrench, 15 mm
SHIMANO Attachment screw	35 ... 55 Nm	Screw wrench, 15 mm
Seat post		
by.schulz, G1 M8 seat clamp screw M5 fixing grub screws	20 ... 24 Nm 3 Nm	2.5 mm hex bit
by.schulz, G2 M6 seat clamp screw M5 fixing grub screws	12 ... 14 Nm 3 Nm	2.5 mm hex bit
EIGHTPINS NGS2 Seat post axle Slipper clutch Valve cover Post pin axle Rear clamping screw (saddle) M5 attachment screw for outer sleeve	8 Nm 18 Nm 0.5 Nm 8 Nm 8 Nm 0.5 Nm	6 mm hex bit 3 mm hex bit 5 mm hex bit 5 mm hex bit 3 mm hex bit 3 mm hex bit
EIGHTPINS H01 Seat post axle Slipper clutch Valve cover Post pin axle Rear clamping screw (saddle) M5 attachment screw for outer sleeve	8 Nm 18 Nm 0.5 Nm 8 Nm 8 Nm 0.5 Nm	6 mm hex bit 3 mm hex bit 5 mm hex bit 5 mm hex bit 3 mm hex bit 3 mm hex bit
LIMOTEC LimoDP Clamping screw for seat post Clamping screw for saddle	6 ... 7 Nm 7 ... 9 Nm	
SR SUNTOUR suspension seat post Saddle clamp screw M5 fixing grub screws	15 ... 18 Nm 3 Nm	5.0 mm hex bit 2.5 mm hex bit
Shifter		
SHIMANO DEORE SL-M4100 Attachment screw	3 Nm	4 mm hex bit
SHIMANO DEORE SL-M5100 Attachment screw	3 Nm	4 mm hex bit
SHIMANO DEORE SL-M6100 Attachment screw	3 Nm	4 mm hex bit

SHIMANO DEORE XT SL-M8100 Attachment screw	3 Nm	4 mm hex bit
SHIMANO DEORE XT SL-M8130 Attachment screw	3 Nm	4 mm hex bit
SHIMANO, SLX SL-M7100 Attachment screw	3 Nm	4 mm hex bit
SHIMANO XTR SL-M9100 Attachment screw	3 Nm	4 mm hex bit
SRAM AXS Controller Collar attachment screw	2 Nm	Torx® T25
Rear derailleur		
SHIMANO for MTB/trekking Attachment screw, standard type	8 ... 10 Nm	Hex key, 5 mm
SHIMANO for MTB/trekking Attachment screw with bracket	3 ... 4 Nm	Hex key, 5 mm
SHIMANO for BMX bicycles Attachment screw	3 ... 4 Nm	Adjustable spanner
SHIMANO for MTB/trekking Attachment screw for inner cable	6 ... 7 Nm	Hex key, 4 mm/ Hex key, 5 mm/ Adjustable spanner
SHIMANO for MTB/trekking Attachment screw for the guide pulley	2.5 ... 5 Nm	Hex key, 3 mm
SHIMANO for MTB/trekking Attachment screw for the tensioning roller	2.5 ... 5 Nm	Hex key, 3 mm
SHIMANO for racing bicycles Attachment screw, standard type	8 ... 10 Nm	Hex key, 5 mm
SHIMANO for racing bicycles Attachment screw with bracket	3 ... 4 Nm	Screw wrench
SHIMANO for racing bicycles Attachment screw for inner cable	6 ... 7 Nm	Hex key, 4 mm/ Hex key, 5 mm
SHIMANO for racing bicycles Attachment screw for pulley	2.5 ... 5 Nm	Hex key, 3 mm
Headlight		
FUXON headlight Attachment screw	>5 Nm	...
SUPERNOVA, M99 Pure/Pure+, V521s Attachment screw	2 Nm	M6 attachment screw, self-locking nut, washer
SUPERNOVA, M99 Pure/Pure+, V521s Stem screw	6 Nm	
Front derailleur		
SHIMANO for MTB/trekking Attachment screw, clip type, E-type and direct fitting	5 ... 7 Nm	Hex key, 5 mm

SHIMANO for MTB/trekking Inner bearing adapter	35 ... 50 Nm	...
SHIMANO for MTB/trekking Top swing screw, clip type and e-type	5 ... 7 Nm	Hex key, 5 mm/ Screw wrench, 9 mm
SHIMANO for MTB/trekking Down swing screw, clip type, direct fitting	5 ... 7 Nm	Hex key, 5 mm
SHIMANO for racing bicycles Attachment screw	5 ... 7 Nm	Hex key, 5 mm/ Screw wrench, 9 mm
SHIMANO for racing bicycles Bowden cable attachment screw	6 ... 7 Nm	Hex key, 5 mm
Underride guard		
FIT, Brose Attachment screws	6 Nm	Socket wrench, 8 mm Hex key, 4 mm Hex key, 3 mm
V-Brake brake		
SHIMANO Attachment screw for connecting cable	6 ... 8 Nm	Hex key, 5 mm
SHIMANO Brake shoe nut	6 ... 8 Nm	Hex key, 5 mm
SHIMANO Bowden cable attachment screw	6 ... 8 Nm	Hex key, 5 mm
Stem		
FSA, carbon quill stem	9 Nm	15 mm spanner

4 Transporting and storing

4.1 Weight and dimensions for transportation

Weight and dimensions during transportation

Type no.	F frame	Dimensions Box [cm]	Weight** [kg]	Shipping weight [kg]
23-18-3067	#	#	#	#
23-18-3068	#	#	#	#
23-18-3069	#	#	#	#
23-18-3070	#	#	#	#
23-18-3073	#	#	#	#
23-18-3074	#	#	#	#

Table 35: Type number, model and pedelec type

* Vehicle weight without battery

Not yet available when the instructions were produced

4.2 Designated handles, lifting points

The box does not have any handles.

4.3 Transportation

! CAUTION

Crash caused by unintentional activation

There is a risk of injury if the drive system is activated unintentionally.

- ▶ Remove the battery.

4.3.1 Using the transport securing system

Applicable for pedelec disc brakes only

! CAUTION

Oil leak if no transport securing device

The brake securing device prevents the brakes from being applied accidentally during transportation or shipment. This could cause irreparable damage to the brake system or an oil leak, which will harm the environment.

- ▶ Never push the brake lever when the wheel has been dismantled.
 - ▶ Always use the transport securing system when transporting or shipping.
-
- ▶ Insert the **transport securing devices** between the brake linings.
- ⇒ Transport securing device is squeezed between the two linings and prevents undesired sustained braking which can cause brake fluid to leak out.

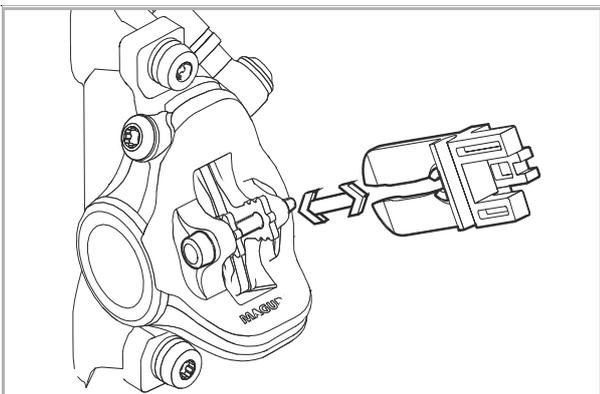


Figure 85: Fastening the transport securing device

4.3.2 Transporting the pedelec

4.3.2.1 By car

Bicycle rack systems which use the handlebars or frame to hold the pedelec in an upside-down position exert inadmissible forces on its components during transportation. This can cause the supporting parts to break.

- ▶ Remove battery (see Section 6.12.1.1 or 6.12.2.1).
- ▶ Remove all detachable components (display screen, bicycle pump, water bottle and similar) from the pedelec.
- ▶ Transport the battery in a dry, clean position where it is protected from direct sunlight.
- ▶ Never use bicycle rack systems which use the pedelec's handlebars or frame to hold the pedelec in an upside-down position. The specialist dealer will give a consultation on correct selection and safe use of a rack system.
- ▶ Take into account the weight of the ready-to-use pedelec when transporting it.

4.3.2.2 By train

Pedelects can usually be transported in trains with a bicycle compartment.

- ✓ If you want to take your e-bike with you on the train, you should take into account that access to platforms are not always barrier-free. You should thus allow enough time to get on and off the train.
- 1 Buy a bicycle ticket for the pedelec.
 - 2 Fasten the pedelec securely in the compartment.
 - 3 Take a seat in the passenger carriage.

It is possible to take a pedelec on certain high-speed train routes. The battery must remain firmly mounted during the journey and must not be charged.

4.3.2.3 By local transport

You can normally take pedelecs on local public transport, e.g. by bus or suburban rail, if you purchase a bike ticket. There may be times when this is not permitted. Local transport companies will give you relevant information.

4.3.2.4 By long-distance bus

Pedelecs can usually be taken on the long-distance bus for an extra charge, although places are limited. It is best to book early. However, not every bus line accepts pedelecs. You should check with the long-distance bus provider concerned before travelling.

4.3.2.5 On flights

It is forbidden to transport rechargeable batteries on passenger planes. Most airlines won't even transport pedelecs without batteries on passenger planes either.

It is a good idea to find out about pedelec leasing at your destination in advance if you wish to use a pedelec while on holiday. This way, you won't need to forgo pedelec riding fun during your holidays.

4.3.3 Shipping a pedelec

- ▶ When shipping the pedelec, we recommend that you have the specialist dealer place it in proper packaging.

4.3.4 Transporting the battery

Batteries are subject to hazardous goods regulations. Undamaged batteries may be transported by private persons in road traffic.

Commercial transport operators must comply with regulations on packaging, labelling and the transportation of hazardous goods. Open contacts must be covered and the battery securely packaged.



4.3.5 Shipping the battery

The battery is considered a hazardous good and only trained persons may pack and ship a battery. Contact specialist dealer.

- ▶ If you have a valid hazardous good certificate, pack and ship the battery as per current hazardous goods regulations.





4.4 Storing

- ▶ Always store pedelec, battery, on-board computer, display and charger separately.

Storage temperature	+10... +40 °C
Humidity	30%...85%
Ideal storage temperature	+10... +20 °C
Optimum air humidity	30%...60%

Table 36: Ambient conditions for storage

- ▶ Temperatures under -5 °C or over +40 °C and air humidity over 85% must generally be avoided.
- ▶ Store pedelec, on-board computer, battery and charger in a place which is
 - dry
 - clean
 - protected from direct sunlight
 - well-ventilated
 - never store in the open air.

4.4.1 Pedelec

Store pedelec in a garage or a dry basement.

4.4.2 On-board computer, display and charger

Store on-board computer, display and charger in a dry environment at room temperature.

4.4.3 Rechargeable battery

- ▶ Storage at about 10 °C to 20 °C for a long battery life.
- ▶ Store batteries in rooms with smoke detectors. A protection box with an electrical connection is an optimal solution.
- ▶ Never store batteries near to inflammable or easily combustible objects.
- ▶ Never store batteries near sources of heat.

New battery

- ✓ Inspect battery for damage after delivery.
- ⇒ If batteries are faulty, observe instructions in *Handling a damaged or faulty battery during storage and disposal* (see Section 2.1.1).
- ✓ It is best to store damage-free batteries separately for 24 hours and keep them under observation.
- ▶ If no faults occur, store batteries in a separate room with fire doors and smoke detectors. If the battery is stored in its original packaging, stack a maximum of five batteries on top of one another.

Battery in use

- 1 Immediately remove batteries from customer pedelec before maintenance or repair.

Treat unchecked batteries as faulty batteries.

If batteries are faulty, observe instructions in *Handling a damaged or faulty battery during storage and disposal* (see Section 2.1.1).

- 2 Inspect battery.
- 3 Battery are stored as agreed with the insurance company.

Defective battery

- ▶ If batteries are faulty, observe instructions in *Handling a damaged or faulty battery during storage and disposal* (see Section 2.1.1).

4.4.4 Break in operation

Notice

Batteries discharge if they are not used. If the battery is stored for a longer period of time when empty, it can become damaged and its storage capacity can be greatly reduced.

- ▶ Store battery with at least 30% charge.
- ▶ Charge battery every six months.
- ▶ Charge LED on the Remote or System Controller via the USB diagnostic interface for about an hour every three months.

The battery may become damaged if it is connected permanently to the charger.

- ▶ Never connect the battery to the charger permanently.
- ▶ Remove the on-board computer and battery from their mount if the pedelec is not going to be used for up to four weeks.
- ▶ If the pedelec is removed from service for longer than four weeks, you need to prepare it for a break in operation (see Section 4.4.4.1).

4.4.4.1 Preparing for a break in operation

- 1 The pedelec needs to be cleaned with a damp cloth and preserved with wax spray. Never wax the friction surfaces of the brake.
- 2 Have the specialist dealer carry out maintenance and basic cleaning and apply preservative agent before longer periods without use.
- 3 Remove battery (see Section 6.12.1.1 or 6.12.2.1).
- 4 Charge battery between 30% and 60% so that two or three LEDs light up on the battery level indicator.

4.4.4.2 Carrying out a break in operation

- 1 Store the pedelec, battery and charger in a dry, clean environment. We recommend storing them in uninhabited rooms with smoke alarms. Dry locations with an ambient temperature between 10 °C and 20 °C are ideal.
- 2 Check the battery level after 6 months. If only one LED on the battery level indicator lights up, recharge the battery to around 30%–60%.



5 Assembly

WARNING

Risk of eye injury

Problems may arise if components are set incorrectly. They may cause serious injuries to the face.

- ▶ Always wear safety glasses to protect eyes when assembling pedelecs.

CAUTION

Crash and crushing hazard caused by unintentional activation

There is a risk of injury if the electric drive system is activated unintentionally.

- ▶ Remove the battery.

- ✓ Assemble the pedelec in a clean, dry environment.
- ✓ The work environment temperature should be between 15 °C and 25 °C.
- ✓ The fitting stand used must be approved for a maximum weight of least 30 kg.

5.1 Unpacking

The packaging material consists mainly of cardboard and plastic film.

- ▶ Dispose of the packaging in accordance with the regulatory requirements (see Section 10).
- ⇒ Pedelecs are fully assembled in the factory for test purposes and then dismantled for transportation. The pedelec is 95% to 98% pre-assembled.

Scope of delivery

<input type="checkbox"/>	1 × pre-assembled pedelec
<input type="checkbox"/>	1 × front wheel
<input type="checkbox"/>	2 × pedals
<input type="checkbox"/>	2 × quick releases (optional)
<input type="checkbox"/>	1 × charger
<input type="checkbox"/>	1 × set of operating instructions on CD
<input type="checkbox"/>	1 × battery (supplied separately from the pedelec)

5.2 Required tools

The following tools are required to assemble the pedelec:

	Knife
	Ring spanners 8 mm, 9 mm, 10 mm, 13 mm, 14 mm and 15 mm
	Torque wrench Working range 5... 40 Nm
	by.schulz handlebars: TORX® bits: T50, T55, and T60
	Hex key 2 mm, 2.5 mm, 3 mm, 4 mm, 5 mm, 6 mm and 8 mm
	Cross-recess screwdriver
	Slotted-head screwdriver

Table 37: Tools required for assembly



5.3 Commissioning

Only trained specialist staff may perform initial commissioning since initial commissioning of the pedelec requires special tools and specialist knowledge.

Experience has shown that a pedelec which has not yet been sold is automatically handed to customers as soon as it appears ready to ride.

It makes sense to prepare each pedelec so that it is fully ready for use immediately after being assembled.

- ▶ Complete an assembly report to document quality assurance (see Section 11.1).
- ▶ Carry out all possible assembly work specified on the assembly report.
- ▶ Record all actions completed on the assembly report.

5.3.1 Checking the battery

The battery must be checked before it is charged for the first time.

- ▶ Press the **On-Off button (battery)**.
- ⇒ If none of the LEDs on the **battery level indicator** light up, the battery may be damaged.
- ⇒ The battery may be fully charged if at least one, but not all, of the LEDs on the **battery level indicator** lights up.



5.3.2 Preparing the wheel

There is an arrow on the sides of the tyres with the inscription ROTATION to show the direction of rotation. The inscription says DRIVE on older tyres. The rotation direction arrow indicates the recommended direction of rotation. On road tyres, the direction of rotation is mainly for optical reasons.

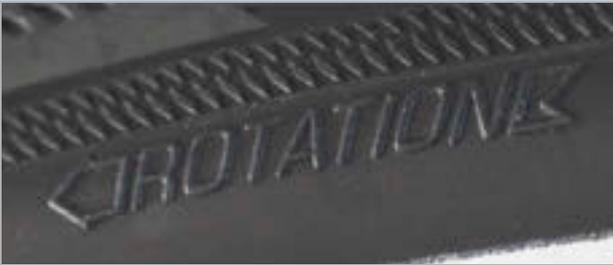


Figure 86: Rotation direction arrow

The direction of rotation is much more important on off-road terrain because the tread creates an interlock with the ground. While the rear wheel needs to transmit the drive forces, the front wheel is responsible for transmitting braking and steering forces. Drive and braking forces have different directions of action. This is why some tyres are mounted on the front and rear wheels in opposite directions. On these tyres, there are two rotation direction arrows:

- The FRONT rotation direction arrow indicates the recommended direction of rotation for the front wheel.
- The REAR rotation direction arrow indicates the recommended direction of rotation for the rear wheel.



Figure 87: Rotation direction arrow on MTB tyres

- ▶ The rotation direction arrow must point in the direction of travel when the wheel is placed in the fork.
- ▶ There are also non-directional tyre profiles with no rotation direction arrow.



5.3.3 Adjusting the suspension system to body weight

Not included in price



Seat post and forks are components that may be replaced after approval by the vehicle or parts manufacturer.

Replacing with different sizes and hardnesses within a product series is permitted for seat posts.

Steel suspension in suspension forks and seat posts are designed to bear the rider's body weight. If the body weight is exceeded or not reached, the suspension system will no longer function as intended. This has no effect on the suspension fork's or seat post's approved load capacity but the suspension system will no longer function perfectly or it won't work at all.

- Adjust all components such as suspension forks or suspension seat posts with steel springs to the rider's body weight.

5.3.3.1 Adjusting SR Suntour suspension elements

Not included in price

SR SUNTOUR steel suspension forks and parallelogram seat posts are available in three different hardness types for different body weights:

Coil spring model	Soft	Medium	Rigid
Max. bodyweight [kg]	50... 75	70... 95	90... 120

Table 38: Suspension hardness and body weight

Unless specified otherwise, SR Suntour forks and seat posts are supplied with medium hardness ex factory.

A harder and a softer suspension hardness are available so that the suspension fork can be adjusted to the rider's body weight.



Figure 88: SR Suntour coil spring hard

- 1 Ask about body weight before selling the pedelec.
- 2 Compare with Table 38.
- 3 If the body weight differs from the specifications, order suitable spring elements from SR Suntour and install them.



5.3.4 Adjusting the LIMOTEC seat post

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- ✓ The rider's body weight exceeds or falls below the seat post's functional weight.
- 1 Order new Limotec seat post with suitable functional weight.
- 2 Remove existing seat post.

Replacing Limotec A1 and A5

- 3 Use the seat height formula to calculate the optimum seat post height for leg length:
Seat height (SH) = inner leg length (I) \times 0.9
- 4 Lower the seat post further into the seat tube.
- 5 Tighten the seat post Bowden cable in the frame up to the remote control to the same length as the seat post was lowered.
- 6 Trim the seat post Bowden cable on the handlebars if necessary.



5.3.5 Installing the wheel in the SUNTOUR fork

Only applies to Suntour forks with this equipment

5.3.5.1 Screw-on axle (12AH2 and 15AH2)

Only applies to Suntour forks with this equipment

✓ Before installing the wheel, ensure that the O-ring is in the right position on the thread piece.

- 1 Insert the front wheel into the fork ends.
- 2 Insert the axle into the hub on the drive side.

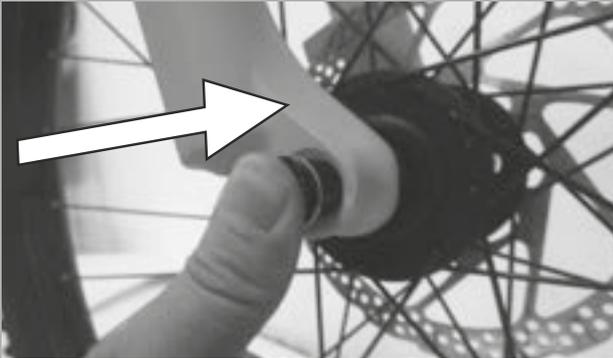


Figure 89: Inserting the axle in the direction of the arrow

- 3 Use a 6 mm hex key to tighten the axle using between 8 and 10 Nm. The axle thread must be visible.

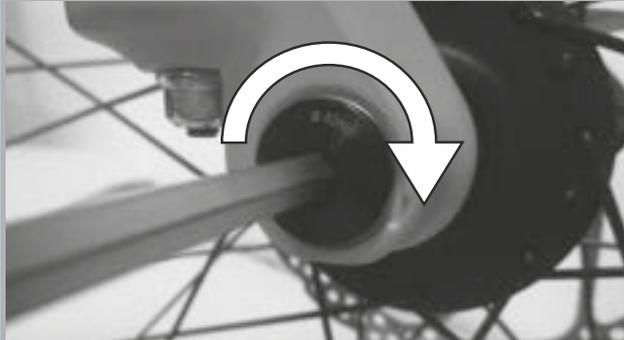


Figure 90: Tighten the axle in the direction of the arrow

- 4 Insert the securing screw on the non-drive side.



Figure 91: Inserting the securing screw

- 5 Tighten the securing screw with a 5 mm hex key using between 5 and 6 Nm.

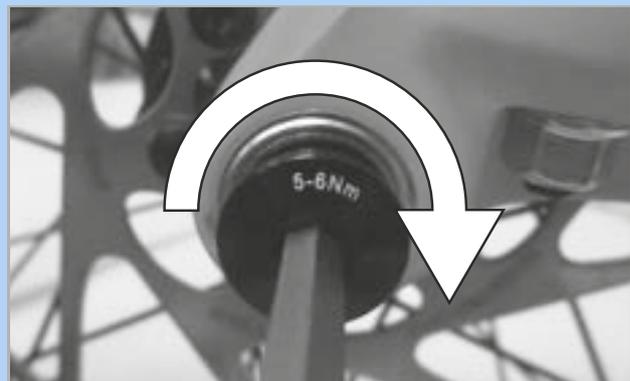


Figure 92: Tightening the securing screw

⇒ The wheel is now fitted.



5.3.5.2 20 mm cross axle

Only applies to Suntour forks with this equipment

CAUTION

Crash caused by loose cross axle

A faulty or incorrectly installed cross axle may become caught in the brake disc and block the wheel. This will cause a crash.

- ▶ Never fit a defective cross axle.

Crash caused by faulty or incorrectly installed cross axle

The brake disc becomes very hot during operation. Parts of the cross axle may become damaged as a result. The cross axle becomes loose. This will cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ The cross axle and the brake disc must be opposite one another.

Crash caused by incorrectly set cross axle

Insufficient clamping force will result in unfavourable transmission of force. The suspension fork or the quick release axle may break. This will cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Never fasten the cross axle with a tool (e.g. hammer or pliers).

- 1 Insert the cross axle into the hub on the drive side.

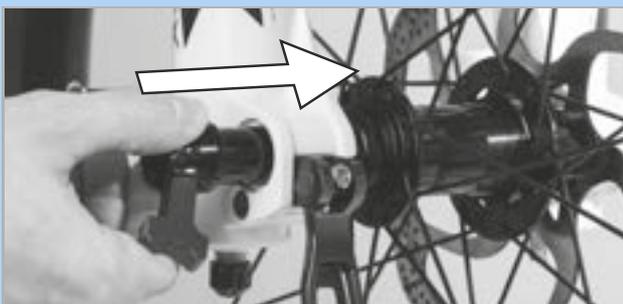


Figure 93: Inserting the cross axle in the direction of the arrow

- 2 Tighten the cross axle with the red handle.

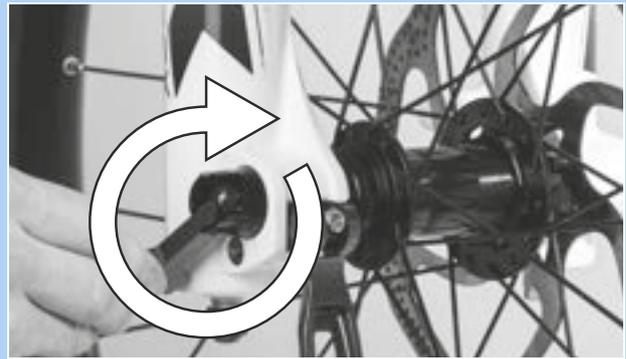


Figure 94: Tighten the axle in the direction of the arrow

- 3 Push red lever into the cross axle.

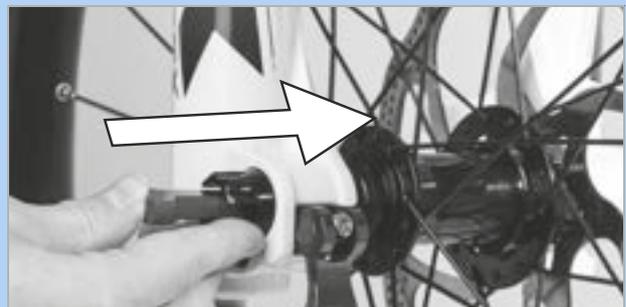


Figure 95: Pushing the red lever in the direction of the arrow

- 4 Closing the quick release lever.



Figure 96: Pressing the quick release lever in the direction of the arrow

⇒ The cross axle is secured.



- 5 Check the position and clamping force of the quick release lever. The quick release lever must be flush with the shock absorber.



Figure 97: Perfect position for the clamping lever

- 6 Use 4 mm hexagon socket spanner to adjust the clamping lever clamping force if required.

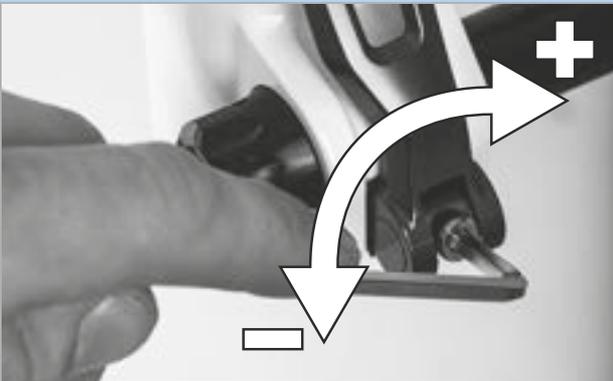


Figure 98: Adjusting the quick release clamping force

- 7 Check the quick release lever position and clamping force.

⇒ The wheel is now fitted.



5.3.5.3 Q-LOC quick release

Only applies to Suntour forks with this equipment

CAUTION

Crash caused by unfastened quick release

A faulty or incorrectly installed quick release may become caught in the brake disc and block the wheel. This will cause a crash.

- ▶ Never fit a defective quick release.

Crash caused by faulty or incorrectly installed quick release

The brake disc becomes very hot during operation. Parts of the quick release may become damaged as a result. The quick release comes loose. This will cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ The front wheel quick release lever and the brake disc must be situated on opposite sides.

Crash caused by incorrectly set clamping force

Excessively high clamping force will damage the quick release and cause it to lose its function. Insufficient clamping force will result in unfavourable transmission of force. The suspension fork or the quick release may break. This will cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Never fasten a quick release using a tool (e.g. hammer or pliers).
- ▶ Only use the clamping lever with the specified set clamping force.

- ✓ Before installing, ensure that the quick release flange is extended. Open the lever fully.

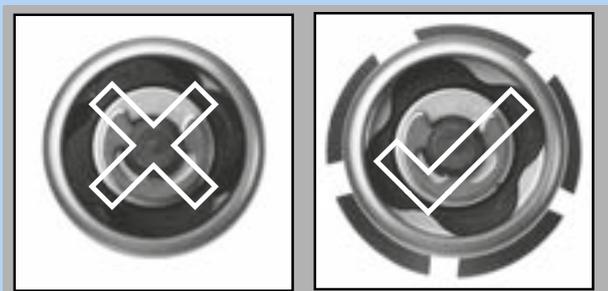


Figure 99: Closed and opened flange

- 1 Push in the quick release until you can hear a click. Make sure that the flange is extended.

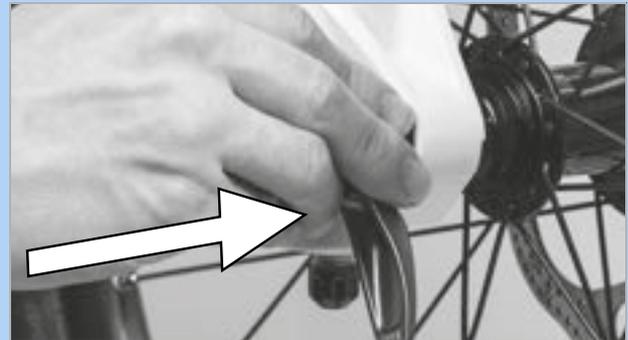


Figure 100: Inserting the quick release in the direction of the arrow

- 2 Adjust tensioning with half-open clamping lever until the flange reaches the fork end.

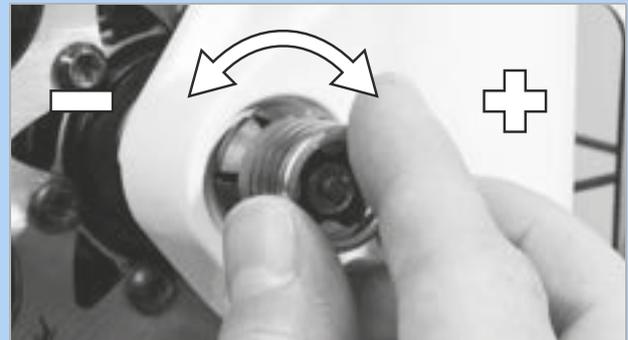


Figure 101: Adjusting the clamping

- 3 Fully close the quick release. Check that it is firmly in place and adjust it on the flange if necessary.



Figure 102: Closing the quick release

- ⇒ The wheel is now fitted.



5.3.6 Fitting the pedals

The pedals have two different threads to ensure they don't come loose while the rider is pedalling.

- The pedal on the left facing the direction of travel has a left-hand thread and is marked L.
- The pedal on the right facing the direction of travel has a right-hand thread and is marked R.

The mark is either on the top end, the axle or the pedal body.

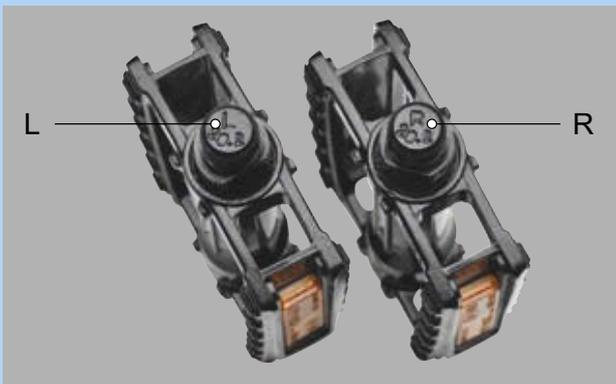


Figure 103: Example of mark on pedals

- 1 Coat threads in both pedals with waterproof grease.
- 2 Turn the pedal marked L anti-clockwise by hand into the crank arm on the left as seen when facing the direction of travel.

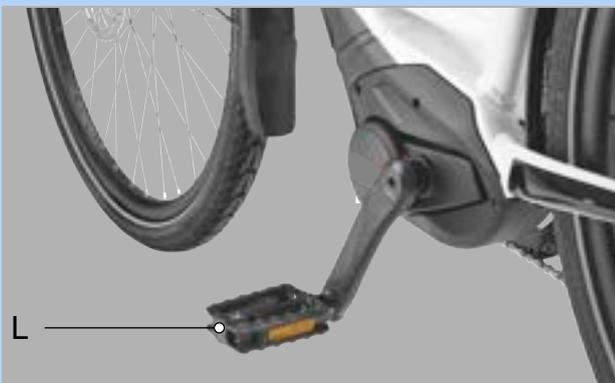


Figure 104: L-pedal in the left-hand crank arm

- 3 Turn the pedal marked R anti-clockwise by hand into the crank arm on the right as seen when facing the direction of travel.

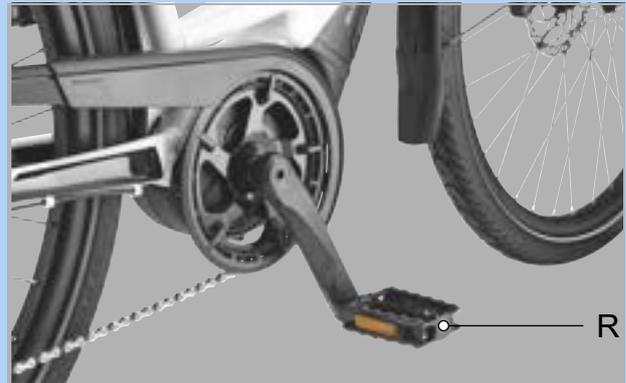


Figure 105: R-pedal in the right-hand crank arm

- 4 Use a 15 mm spanner to fasten the left-hand pedal thread in an anti-clockwise direction and the right-hand pedal in a clockwise direction with a torque between 33 Nm and 35 Nm.



5.3.7 Pairing the System Controller with Mini Remote

The System Controller and Mini Remote operating units are interlinked via a Bluetooth® connection. The control units must be reconnected, for example, if connection was not established during production or if the control units were disconnected when components were replaced.

- ✓ Installing the Bosch eBike Flow app on the smartphone (see Section 6.5.17.1).
 - ✓ The pedelec is stationary.
 - ✓ Switching on the electric drive system (see Section 6.13.1).
 - ✓ Pairing the System Controller control panel with a smartphone (see Section 6.5.17.2).
- 1** Click on **<Connect Mini Remote>** in the BOSCH eBike Flow app.
 - ⇒ A prompt will appear to place the System Controller and Mini Remote into pairing mode.
 - 2** Press the On-Off button on the System Controller for longer than 3 seconds.
 - ⇒ The upper bar on the battery level indicator (control unit) will flash blue.
 - ⇒ The control unit will switch on the Bluetooth® Low Energy connection and switches to pairing mode.
 - 3** Hold down any button on the Mini Remote.
 - ⇒ The LED indicator lamp will flash blue.
 - ⇒ The Mini Remote will change to pairing mode.
 - 4** Follow the instructions in the BOSCH eBike Flow app.
 - ⇒ If the LED indicator lamp on the Mini Remote flashes red three times, this indicates the connection has been interrupted.
 - ▶ Switching off the electric drive system (see Section 6.13.2).
 - ▶ Repeat process.
 - ▶ The indicator lamp on the Mini Remote will flash green three times within 30 seconds if pairing is successful.



5.3.8 Connecting the SRAM AXS shifter and rear derailleur

The SRAM XX1 EAGLE AXS rear derailleur and the SRAM AXS shifter controller are interlinked via a Bluetooth® connection. The rear derailleur and the shifter must be reconnected to one another if connection was not established during production or if the shift units were disconnected when components were replaced, added or removed, for example.

The pairing process does not need to be repeated when the battery is inserted or removed.

All AXS systems have a main component which is used to start and end the pairing session. The main component is the SRAM XX1 EAGLE AXS rear derailleur.

If there are two shifters, the pairing process must be carried out separately for each shifter.

- ✓ A charged battery is inserted into the SRAM AXS Controller shifter (see Section 9.3.3).
- ✓ The pedelec is stationary.
- ✓ The electric drive system is switched on.

1 Press the **AXS button (rear derailleur)** on the SRAM XX1 EAGLE AXS rear derailleur. Hold pressed down until the green **LED indicator (rear derailleur)** flashes slowly.

⇒ The pairing session starts. The pairing session is ended automatically after 30 seconds of inactivity.



Figure 106: SRAM XX1 EAGLE AXS rear derailleur with LED indicator (rear derailleur) (1) and AXS button (rear derailleur) (2)

2 Press the **AXS button (shifter)** on the SRAM AXS Controller shifter. Hold it down until the green **LED indicator (shifter)** flashes rapidly.

⇒ The SRAM XX1 EAGLE AXS rear derailleur and SRAM AX Controller shifter are now paired.



Figure 107: Rear derailleur SRAM AXS Controller with LED indicator (rear derailleur) (1) and AXS button (rear derailleur) (2)

3 Release the **AXS button (shifter)**.

4 Press the **AXS button (rear derailleur)** on the SRAM XX1 EAGLE AXS rear derailleur.

⇒ The green LED will stop flashing. Pairing session is now complete.



5.3.9 Checking the stem and handlebars

5.3.9.1 Checking the connections

- 1 Stand in front of the pedelec. Clamp the front wheel between your legs. Grasp the handlebar grips.
- 2 Try to twist the handlebars against the direction of the front wheel.
 - ⇒ The stem must not move or twist.
- 3 If the stem can be twisted, check fastening.
 - ⇒ If the stem cannot be fastened, contact your specialist dealer.

5.3.9.2 Checking stem is firmly in position

- 1 Press full body weight on the handlebars.
 - ⇒ The handlebars must not move downwards in the fork.

Stem with clamping lever version I

- 2 If the handlebars should move, increase the lever tension in the clamping lever.
- 3 Turn knurled nut in a clockwise direction with the clamping lever open.
- 4 Close clamping lever and check stem is firmly in position again.
- 5 If the handlebars cannot be fastened, contact your specialist dealer.

Stem with clamping lever version II and stem with screw

- ▶ If the handlebars cannot be fastened, contact your specialist dealer.

5.3.9.3 Checking the bearing clearance

- 1 Place the fingers of one hand on the upper headset cup. Pull the front wheel brake with the other hand and try to push the pedelec backwards and forwards.
 - Keep in mind that there may be noticeable backlash due to worn-out bearing bushes or brake lining backlash in suspension forks and disc brakes.
 - ⇒ The headset cup halves must not move towards one another.
- 2 Adjust bearing clearance as per the stem repair manual as quickly as possible; otherwise, the bearing will become damaged. Contact specialist dealer.

5.4 Selling the pedelec

- ▶ Complete pedelec pass on the operating instructions envelope.
- ▶ Note down the manufacturer and the number of the battery key.
- ▶ Adjust the stand and shifter.
- ▶ Adjusting the pedelec (see Section 6.5).
- ▶ Briefly instruct pedelec rider on all the pedelec's functions (see Section 6.7 to Section 6.18.2).

6 Operation

6.1 Risks and hazards



WARNING

Injuries and death caused by blind spots

Other road users, trucks, cars and pedestrians often underestimate the speed of pedelecs. Likewise, other road users frequently do not see pedelecs. This may lead to an accident with serious injuries or even death.

- ▶ Wear a helmet. The helmet must have a reflective strip or a light in a clearly visible colour.
- ▶ Clothing should be retroreflective or as light as possible. Fluorescent materials are also suitable. High-visibility jackets and straps on your upper body ensure even greater safety.
- ▶ Always take a defensive approach to riding.
- ▶ Avoid the blind spots of vehicles turning off the road. Reduce speed as a precaution when other road users turn right.

Injuries and death caused by riding incorrectly

A pedelec is not a bicycle. Mistakes made while riding and underestimated speeds quickly lead to hazardous situations. This can cause an accident with serious or fatal injuries.

- ▶ Slowly get used to road traffic and speed before riding at speeds over 12 km/h, especially if you have not ridden a bike for some time.
- ▶ Increase the levels of assistance gradually.
- ▶ Practice braking hard on a regular basis.
- ▶ Take and complete a riding safety course.



WARNING

Injuries and death caused by distraction

A lack of concentration while riding increases the risk of an accident. This may cause a crash with serious injuries.

- ▶ Never allow yourself to be distracted by the on-board computer or your smartphone.
- ▶ Stop pedelec if you want to make inputs on the on-board computer other than change the level of assistance. Only enter data when stationary.



CAUTION

Crash caused by loose clothing

Laces, scarves and other loose items may become entangled in the spokes on the wheels and the chain drive. This may cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Wear sturdy footwear and close-fitting clothing.

Crash caused by difficult-to-spot damage

If the pedelec topples over or you have a fall or an accident, there may be difficult-to-spot damage to components such as the brake system, quick releases or frame. This may cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.

Crash caused by soiling

Heavy soiling can impair pedelec functions, such as braking. This may cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Remove coarse soiling before riding.



Crash caused by material fatigue

Intensive use can cause material fatigue. A component may suddenly fail in case of material fatigue. This may cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Remove the pedelec from service immediately if there are any signs of material fatigue. Have your specialist dealer inspect the component.
- ▶ Arrange the mandatory inspection appointments with your specialist dealer on a regular basis. During the major inspection, the specialist dealer will inspect the pedelec for any signs of material fatigue on the frame, fork, suspension element mountings (if there are any) and components made of composite materials.

Carbon becomes brittle when exposed to heat radiation such as heating. This can cause the carbon part to break and result in a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Never expose carbon components parts on the pedelec to strong sources of heat.

Crash caused by poor road conditions

Loose objects, such as branches and twigs, may become caught in the wheels and cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Be aware of the road conditions.
- ▶ Ride slowly and brake in good time.

The *tyres* may slip on wet roads. In wet conditions you must also expect a longer braking distance. The braking sensation differs from the usual sensation. This can cause loss of control or a crash, which may result in injuries.

- ▶ Ride slowly and brake in good time when it is raining.

Notice

Heat or direct sunlight can cause the *tyre pressure* to increase above the permitted maximum pressure. This can destroy the *tyres*.

- ▶ Park pedelec in the shade.
- ▶ On hot days, regularly check the *tyre pressure* and adjust it as necessary.

When riding downhill, high speeds may be reached. The pedelec is only designed to exceed a speed of 25 km/h for short intervals. The *tyres* in particular can fail if exposed to a continuous load.

- ▶ Use the brakes to decelerate the pedelec if you reach speeds greater than 25 km/h.

Moisture penetrating at low temperatures may impair individual functions due to the open structural design.

- ▶ Always keep the pedelec dry and free from frost.
- ▶ If the pedelec is used at temperatures below 3 °C, the specialist dealer must perform a major inspection beforehand and prepare it for winter use.

Off-road riding subjects the joints in the arms to severe strain.

- ▶ Take a break from riding every 30 to 90 minutes, depending on the road surface conditions and your physical fitness.

6.2 Tips for a greater range

The pedelec's range depends on many influencing factors. A single battery charge may only last fewer than 20 kilometres but much more than 100 is also possible. Test the pedelec's range before embarking on longer rides. There are a few tips which will generally help you maximize range.

Suspension elements

- ▶ Only open suspension fork and damper when necessary on terrain or gravel paths. Block suspension fork and damper on tarmacked roads or on hills.

Mileage

The more own physical effort the rider makes, the greater the attainable range is.

- ▶ Shift down 1 to 2 gears to increase the induced power and pedalling frequency.

Pedalling frequency

- ▶ Ride using pedalling frequencies of over 50 revolutions per minute. This optimises the electric drive's efficiency.
- ▶ Avoid pedalling very slowly.

Weight

- ▶ Minimise the total weight of pedelec and baggage.

Stopping and starting

- ▶ Ride long distances at a constant speed.
- ▶ Avoid stopping and starting frequently.

Level of assistance

- ▶ The lower the selected level of assistance is, the greater the range is.

Gear switching habits

- ▶ Use a low gear and a low level of assistance on hills and when setting off.
- ▶ Switch up a gear depending on the speed and terrain.
- ▶ 50-80 crank rotations per minute are optimal.
- ▶ Avoid high stress loads on the crank during a gear change.
- ▶ Switch gear back in good time, e.g. before inclines.

Tyres

- ▶ Always select the right tyres for the surface type. As a general rule, narrower treads move along more easily than heavier ones. Long studs and large grooves usually have an unfavourable effect on energy consumption.
- ▶ When riding on asphalt, it is important to always use the maximum permitted tyre pressure.
- ▶ When riding off-road, on gravel tracks or soft woodland or meadow soils, it is important to remember: the lower the tyre pressure is, the greater the rolling resistance is and thus the greater electric drive system energy consumption is.

Rechargeable battery

Electrical resistance increases as the temperature drops. Battery performance is reduced. As a result, you should expect the range to be shorter than normal in winter.

- ▶ Use a thermal protection sleeve on the battery in winter.

The range also depends on the battery's age, charge level and state of repair.

- ▶ Maintain the battery and replace older batteries where necessary.

6.3 Error message

6.3.1 On-board computer

The on-board computer indicates whether a critical or less critical error has arisen in the drive system.

The error messages generated by the drive system can be read in the eBike Flow app and by the specialist dealer.

The rider can use a link in the eBike Flow app to display information on errors and assistance on eliminating errors.

6.3.1.1 Critical errors

The level of assistance indicator and battery level indicator (control panel) flash red to signal critical errors.

Flash sequence	Meaning
	LED Remote is flashing red: in the case of a critical error

- ▶ Press on the **mode button** on the System Controller or the **Select button** on the Mini Remote.
- ⇒ The error code is acknowledged. The level of assistance indicator and the battery level indicator (control panel) display the colour of the configured level of assistance and the battery level continuously again.

You can eliminate errors yourself using the following table. Contact your specialist dealer if the problem persists.

Code	Method of resolution
660001	▶ Do not charge battery and do not use again. Contact specialist dealer.
660002	
890000	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Acknowledge error code. 2 Switching off the electric drive system (see Section 6.13.2). 3 Switching on the electric drive system (see Section 6.13.1). <p>If the problem persists:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4 Acknowledge error code. 5 Install software update. 6 Switching off the electric drive system (see Section 6.13.2). 7 Switching on the electric drive system (see Section 6.13.1). <p>If the problem persists:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Contact specialist dealer.

Table 39: List of on-board computer error messages

6.3.1.2 Less critical errors

The level of assistance indicator (control panel) will flash orange in the event of less critical errors.

Flash sequence	Meaning
	LED Remote will flash orange in the case of less critical errors

- ▶ Press on the **mode button** on the System Controller or the **Select button** on the Mini Remote.
- ⇒ The error code is acknowledged. The level of assistance indicator and the battery level indicator (control panel) display the colour of the configured level of assistance and the battery level continuously again.

You can eliminate errors yourself using the following table when necessary. Contact your specialist dealer if the problem persists.

Code	Description	Method of resolution
523005 514001 514002 514003 514006	The sensors do not detect the magnetic field properly.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Check that the magnet wasn't lost while riding. ▶ If a magnet sensor is used, check that the sensor and magnet have been fitted properly. In doing so, ensure that the cable to the sensor is not damaged. ▶ If a rim magnet is used, ensure that there are no magnetic field interference near the drive unit.

Table 40: List of on-board computer error messages

6.3.2 Rechargeable battery

The battery is protected against deep discharge, overcharging, overheating and short circuits by Electronic Cell Protection (ECP). In the event of a hazard, a protective circuit switches the battery off automatically. If a fault is detected on the battery, the LEDs will flash on the battery level indicator.

Description	Method of resolution
<p>Code: </p> <p>If the battery is outside its charging temperature range, three LEDs will flash on the battery level indicator.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Disconnect charger from battery. 2 Leave battery to cool down or warm up. 3 Contact your specialist dealer if the problem persists.
<p>Code: </p> <p>If a battery fault is detected, two LEDs will flash on the battery level indicator.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Contact specialist dealer.
<p>Code: </p> <p>No LEDs will light up if there is no power.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Check all plug connections. 2 Check contacts on the battery for dirt. Clean the contacts carefully if needed. 3 Contact your specialist dealer if the problem persists.

Table 41: List of battery error messages

6.4 Instruction and customer service

The supplying specialist dealer will provide customer service. Contact details can be found on the pedecec pass for these operating instructions. The specialist dealer will explain all the pedecec functions to the new owner in person, this being when the specialist dealer hands over the pedecec at the latest. These operating instructions are provided with every pedecec, so that the rider can consult them at a later stage.

The supplying specialist dealer will also perform all inspection, modifications and repairs in the future.

6.5 Adjusting the pedecec



Crash caused by incorrectly adjusted torque

If a screw is fastened too tightly, it may break. If a screw is not fastened enough, it may loosen. This will cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Always observe the torque indicated on the screw and in the operating instructions.

Only a correctly adjusted pedecec will guarantee the desired ride comfort and health-promoting activity.

All settings must be re-configured if the body weight or maximum baggage weight changes.

6.5.1 Preparing

The following tools are required to adjust the pedecec:

	Tape measure
	Scales
	Spirit level
	Ring spanners 8 mm, 9 mm, 10 mm, 13 mm, 14 mm und 15 mm
	Torque wrench Working range 5... 40 Nm
	Hex key 2 mm, 2.5 mm, 3 mm, 4 mm, 5 mm, 6 mm and 8 mm
	Cross-recess screwdriver
	Slotted-head screwdriver

Table 42: Tools required for assembly

6.5.2 Determining the sitting position

The starting point for a comfortable posture is the correct position of the pelvis. If the pelvis is in the wrong position, it can cause different types of pain, e.g. in the shoulder or back.

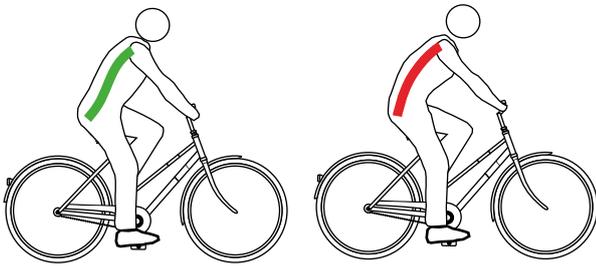


Figure 108: The pelvis is in the right position (green) or incorrect position (red)

The pelvis is in the right position if the spine forms an S-shape and a natural, easy arch.

The pelvis is positioned incorrectly if it tilts slightly backwards. As a result, the spine becomes curved and can no longer deflect to an optimal extent.

A suitable sitting position must be selected beforehand depending on the pedelec type, physical fitness and desired trip distance or speed.

It is especially advisable to check and optimise the sitting position once more before longer rides.

Position on trekking bike	Position on sports bike
Angle of upper body (black dashed line)	
Sharply inclined upper body, back at an angle of 30°...60°. Greater distance between handlebars and saddle.	Greatly inclined upper body, back at an angle of 15°...30°. Saddle higher than the handlebars.
Upper arm-upper body angle (red line)	
An angle of 90° is optimum. The muscular support required in the arms, back and shoulder girdle is reduced at 90°.	Above 90° Shoulders, arms and hands need to provide a great deal of support, the supporting muscles in the back are heavily strained and the load on the bearing surface shifts to the front.
Saddle-handlebar height difference [cm] (blue and green line)	
5 to 0 Handlebars and saddle are almost at the same height.	< 0 The saddle is positioned far higher than the handlebars.
Benefits	
Shoulders, neck and hands provide more of the support effort, thus promoting a dynamic, agile riding style. Impact is reduced on the back, spine and buttocks, which is particularly important on longer rides. The whole body can apply force to the pedals effectively.	Optimum power transmission. Aerodynamic: low air resistance.
Disadvantages	
There is greater strain on the hands, neck and shoulders. The muscular system needs to be trained for this higher strain, i.e. riders should practise.	Requires highly trained muscles in back, legs, shoulders, abdomen! Comfortable position only for people who are fit.
Fitness level and use	
Medium to high fitness level, riding long distances.	Speed-oriented, sports cycling.

Table 43: Overview of sitting positions

6.5.3 Seat post

6.5.3.1 Adjusting the seat post to body weight

Not included in price



Seat posts are components that may be replaced after approval by the vehicle or parts manufacturer. Only seat posts that are approved for use on e-bikes may be used to replace existing ones.

Replacing with different sizes and hardnesses within a product series is permitted for seat posts. Moreover, seat posts may be exchanged if the rearward offset for the series or original range of use is not greater than 20 mm. This is because a change in load distribution outside the intended adjustment range can lead to hazardous steering performance. The seat post length must always be the same when replacing posts.

The correct functioning of the following seat posts depends on the body weight:

- Suspension seat post
- Rhomboid seat post
- Lowerable seat post

If the body weight falls below or exceeds the specifications in Section Maximum permitted total weight (PTW), either the seat post spring or, in the case of integrated seat posts, the complete seat post must be replaced with a seat post from the same product series that is appropriate for the body weight.

The preload in non-damped suspension seat posts must be adjusted in such a way that the suspension seat post does not deflect with just body weight. This prevents the suspension seat post from deflecting and bobbing intermittently at higher pedalling frequencies or if the rider pedals irregularly.

The spring stiffness can be set lower with damped suspension seat posts, thus making use of the negative deflection.

6.5.4 Saddle

6.5.4.1 Replacing the saddle

Not included in price



Saddles are components that may be replaced after approval by the vehicle or parts manufacturer. Replacing different sizes within a product series is permitted for saddles.

Moreover, saddles may be exchanged if the rearward offset to the series or original range of use is not greater than 20 mm since a change in load distribution outside the intended adjustment range can lead to critical steering performance. The saddle shape plays a role here. Only saddles that are approved for use on e-bikes may be used to replace the existing ones.

If the pre-mounted saddle is uncomfortable or causes pain, a saddle optimised to the rider's physique must be used.

- 1 Determining the saddle shape (see Section 6.5.4.2).
- 2 Determining the minimum saddle width (see Section 6.5.4.3).
- 3 Selecting the saddle hardness (see Section 6.5.4.4).

6.5.4.2 Determining the saddle shape

Ladies' saddle

To distribute the pressure optimally over the female bone structure in the seat area, a ladies' saddle should:

- have a relief opening far to the front
- have a wide V-shaped saddle edge.



Figure 109: Example: Ergotec ladies' saddle

Men's saddle

Numbness when pedalling is often caused by high pressure in the sensitive perineal area. If the saddle is adjusted incorrectly, too narrow or too hard, the nose of the saddle presses directly onto the genitals. Blood circulation deteriorates.

The genitals on the outside are seldom the cause of discomfort since they can move out of the way and are not compressed by bone structures.

You should always consult a doctor if you have problems with your prostate. After a prostate operation or inflammation, it is advisable to avoid any pressure in the perineal area and take a longer break from pedelec riding after consulting your doctor. A prostate saddle should then be used. This reduces the pressure in the perineal area by up to 100%.

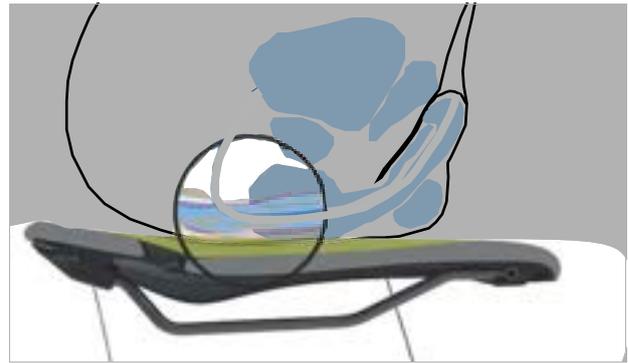


Figure 110: Pressure points on a saddle, male anatomy

To distribute the pressure on the male bone structure in the seat area optimally, the saddle should:

- Shift the pressure to the sitting bones and parts of the pubic arches
- The perineal area must remain as free of pressure as possible



Figure 111: Example: Ergotec men's saddle

6.5.4.3 Determining the minimum saddle width

With corrugated cardboard

- 1 Place corrugated cardboard on a flat, hard, unpadded seat.
- 2 Sit in the middle of the corrugated board.

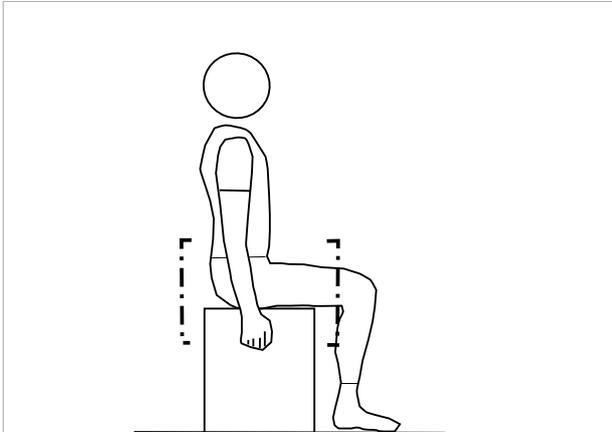


Figure 112: Sitting on the corrugated board

- 3 Pull the seat with your hands and arch your back.
 - ⇒ The sitting bones are more prominent and stand out more clearly on the corrugated cardboard.
- 4 Trace the outer edges of the two depressed areas in a circle.
- 5 Determine the centre of both circles and mark them with a dot.
- 6 Measure the distance between the two centres.

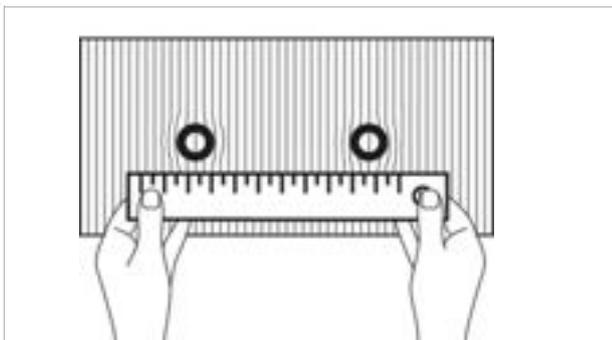


Figure 113: Measuring the distance

- ⇒ The distance between the two centre points is the sit bone distance and corresponds to the minimum saddle width.
- 7 Calculate saddle width (see Section 6.5.4.4).



With a gel cushion

- 1 Smooth gel cushion.
- 2 Place gel cushion on a flat, hard, unpadded seat.
- 3 Sit in the middle of the gel cushion.

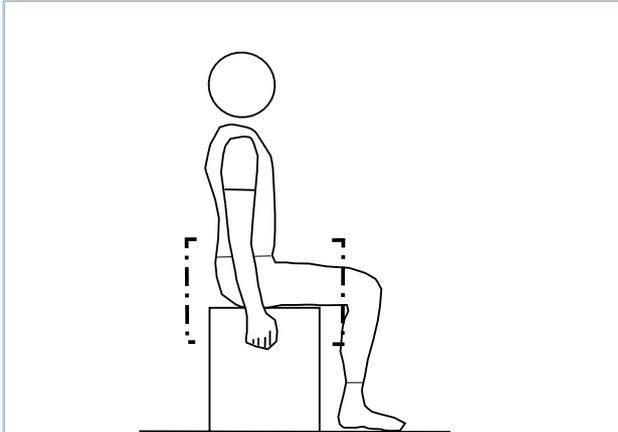


Figure 114: Sitting on the gel cushion

Pull the seat with your hands and arch your back.

- 4 The sitting bones are more prominent and stand out more clearly on the gel cushion.

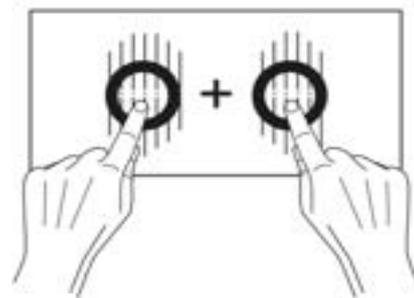


Figure 115: Adding the centres together

- 5 Determine the centres of both sitting bones.
- 6 Add the two values together.
 - ⇒ The total of the values is the sitting bone distance and corresponds to the minimum saddle width.
- 7 Calculate saddle width (see Section 6.5.4.4).

Using calculation

Depending on the position, the following value is added to the minimum saddle width.

Position on roadster	+ 4 cm
Position on city bike	+ 3 cm
Position on trekking bike	+ 2 cm
Position on sports bike	+ 1 cm
Triathlon/time trials	+ 0 cm

Table 44: Calculating the saddle width

6.5.4.4 Selecting the saddle hardness

Saddles are available in a wide range of hardnesses and must be adapted to the pedelec's use:

- A pedelec that is mainly used for commuting in jeans calls for a soft saddle.
- A pedelec that is mainly used for sports riding with padded cycling shorts requires a hard saddle.

If the degree of hardness is not suitable, a new saddle must be selected.

6.5.4.5 Adjusting the saddle hardness

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

The hardness of air cushion saddles can be adjusted using the pump valve beneath the seat surface.

Soft	Pump 3 times
Medium	Pump 5 times
Hard	Pump 10 times

Table 45: VELO air cushion saddle settings

6.5.4.6 Straightening the saddle

- Position saddle in direction of travel. In doing so, align the tip of the saddle with the top tube.

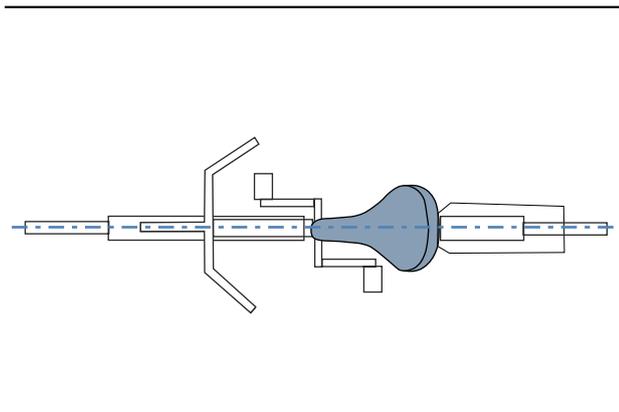


Figure 116: Positioning the saddle in direction of travel

6.5.4.7 Positioning the saddle with EIGHTPINS suspension seat post

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

The Eightpins seat post is equipped with an overload coupling. This allows the seat post to be rotated around its longitudinal axis in the event of a fall so that neither the saddle nor the seat post mechanisms are damaged.

If the saddle alignment is rotated around its longitudinal axis, the saddle can be easily rotated by hand to position the saddle in the right direction again.

If the release/rotation force is too weak, the seat post's breakaway torque can be adjusted to be greater.

- 1 Position saddle in direction of travel. In doing so, align the tip of the saddle with the top tube.

The seat post may be rotated a maximum of 90° to the left or 90° to the right. If it is rotated more than 90° in either direction, over-twisting will inevitably damage the Bowden cable mount and the seat post will be rendered unusable.

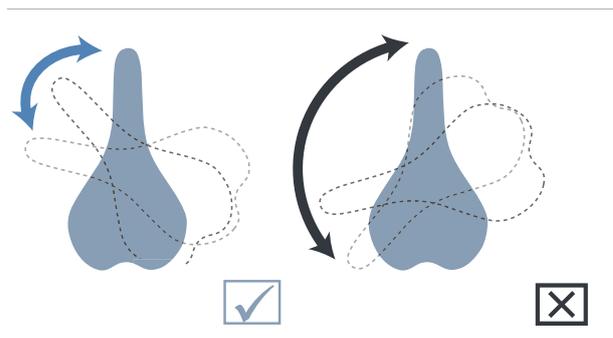


Figure 117: Rotating the saddle correctly (left) and turning it too far (right)

- 2 Use a torque wrench to tighten the seat post axle with 8 Nm.



Figure 118: Tightening the seat post axle

6.5.4.8 Adjusting the saddle height

- ✓ To adjust the saddle height safely, either:
 - Push the pedelec near to a wall so that the pedelec rider can lean on the wall to support themselves or
 - Ask another person to hold the pedelec.
- 1 Use the seat height formula to set the saddle height roughly:

$$\text{Seat height (SH)} = \text{inner leg length (I)} \times 0.9$$
- 2 Climb onto the bicycle.
- 3 Place your heel on the pedal and extend your leg, so that the pedal is at the lowest crank rotation point. Your knee should now be fully extended.

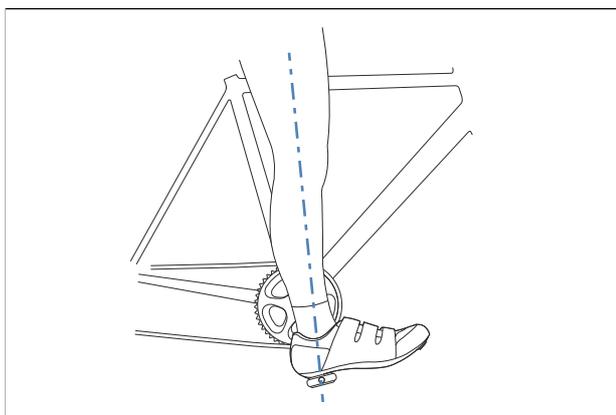


Figure 119: Heel method

- 4 Take a test ride.
 - ⇒ Pedelec riders sit straight on the saddle at an optimal saddle height.
 - If the pelvis moves to the left and right as you pedal, the saddle is too high.
 - If your knees are painful after a few kilometres, the saddle is too low.
- ⇒ Position the seat post according to needs if necessary. Adjust the seat height with the quick release.
- 5 Open the quick release on the seat post to change the seat height (1). To do so, push the clamping lever away from the seat post (3).

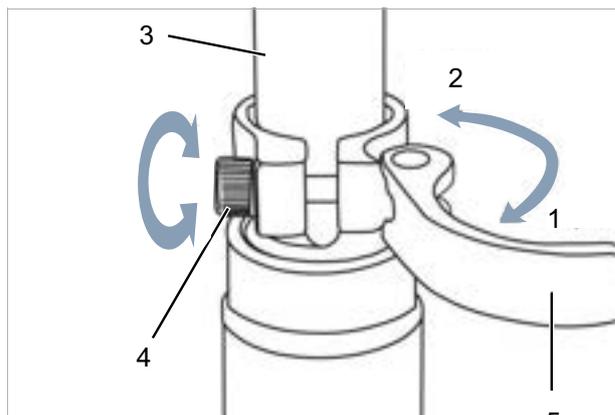


Figure 120: Opening the seat post quick release

- 6 Set the seat post to the required height.



Crash caused by an excessively high seat post setting

A seat post with is set too high will cause the seat post or the frame to break. This will cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Do not pull the seat post out of the frame beyond the minimum insertion depth marking.

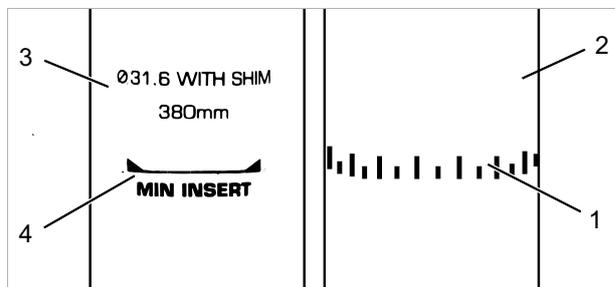


Figure 121: Detailed view of the seat post – examples of the minimum insertion depth marking

- 7 To close it, push the seat post clamping lever as far as it will go into the seat post (2).
- 8 Check the clamping force of the quick releases.

6.5.4.9 Setting the saddle height with the remote control

Use the seat height formula to set the saddle height:

$$\text{Seat height (SH)} = \text{inner leg length (I)} \times 0.9$$

- 1 Lowering the saddle (see Section 6.9.2.1).
- 2 Raising the saddle (see Section 6.9.2.2)

Notice

- ▶ If you are unable to achieve the required saddle height, lower the seat post further into the seat tube. The seat post Bowden cable must be tightened in the frame up to the remote control to the same length as the seat post was lowered.
- ▶ If this is not possible, contact your specialist dealer.

6.5.4.10 Adjusting the EIGHTPINS seat post saddle height

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- 1 Press the seat post operating lever on the handlebars.
- ⇒ The seat post's internal hydraulic gas pressure spring is fully extended.



Figure 122: Extending the hydraulic gas pressure spring

- 2 Push the seat post height adjustment operating lever forwards.
- ⇒ Height adjustment is now open.
- 3 Adjust the seat height roughly by pressing upwards or downwards and using the seat height formula:
Seat height (SH) = inner leg length (I) × 0.9
- ⇒ The required seat height is reached.



Figure 123: Setting the seat post height

- 4 Press the height adjustment operating lever backwards.
- ⇒ If the operating lever should jam, pull the saddle 1-2 mm upwards or move it downwards 1-2 mm. The height adjustment teeth can mesh together again.
- 5 The height adjustment operation lever must be placed in blocked mode, in the rear position on the limit stop, while riding.



Figure 124: Tightening the seat post axle

6.5.4.11 Adjusting the saddle position

The saddle can be shifted on the saddle frame. The right horizontal position ensures an optimal leverage position for legs. This prevents knee pain and painful incorrect pelvis positions. If you have displaced the saddle more than 10 mm, you need to adjust the saddle height again since both settings affect one another.

- ✓ The saddle setting must only be made when the bicycle is stationary.
 - ✓ To adjust the saddle position either:
 - Push the pedelec near to a wall so that the pedelec rider can lean on the wall to support themselves or
 - Ask another person to hold the pedelec.
 - ✓ Move the saddle within its permitted displacement range only (marked on the saddle stay).
- 1 Climb onto the pedelec.
 - 2 Place the pedals into the vertical position with your feet.
- ⇒ Pedelec riders are adopting the optimal saddle position if the perpendicular line from the kneecap runs through the pedal axle.
- ▶ If the perpendicular line crosses behind the pedal, bring the saddle further forward.
 - ▶ If the perpendicular line crosses in front of the pedal, bring the saddle further back.

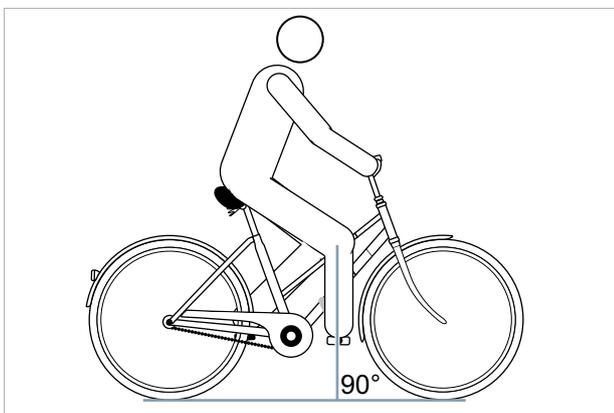


Figure 125: Knee cap perpendicular line

- 3 Unfasten and adjust the designated screw connections, and clamp them with the maximum tightening torque for the saddle clamping screws.

6.5.4.12 Adjusting the saddle tilt

The saddle tilt must be adjusted to the seat height, the saddle and handlebar position, and the saddle shape to ensure an optimum fit. The seating position can be optimised in this way if needed.

The saddle prevents pedelec riders from slipping backwards or forwards when placed in a horizontal position. This prevents seat problems. In any other position, the tip of the saddle may press uncomfortably into the crotch area. It is also recommended that the centre of the saddle is exactly straight. This ensures that the rider is seated with their sit bones on the wide rear part of the saddle.

- 1 Adjust the saddle tilt to horizontal.
- 2 Position saddle middle so that it is completely straight.

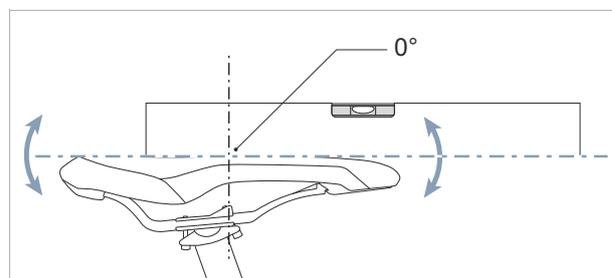


Figure 126: Horizontal saddle tilt with 0° tilt in the centre of the saddle

- ⇒ Pedelec riders sit comfortably on the saddle and do not slip backwards or forwards.
- 3 Pedelec riders tend to slip forwards on the narrow part of the saddle, adjust the riding position (see Section 6.6.2.3) or tilt the saddle very slightly backwards.

6.5.4.13 Adjusting the Eightpins H01 seat post saddle tilt

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

The saddle tilt must be adjusted to the seat height, the saddle and handlebar position, and the saddle shape to ensure an optimum fit. The seating position can be optimised in this way if needed.

The saddle prevents the rider from slipping backwards or forwards when placed in a horizontal position. This avoids seat problems. In any other position, the tip of the saddle may press uncomfortably into the crotch area. It is also recommended that the centre of the saddle is exactly straight. This ensures that the rider is seated with their sit bones on the wide rear part of the saddle.

- 1 Loosen the rear attachment screw on the seat post head with a 5 mm Allen key.



Figure 127: Loosening the rear screw

- 2 Adjust the saddle tilt horizontally by turning the front seat clamping screw.
- 3 Position saddle middle so that it is completely straight.

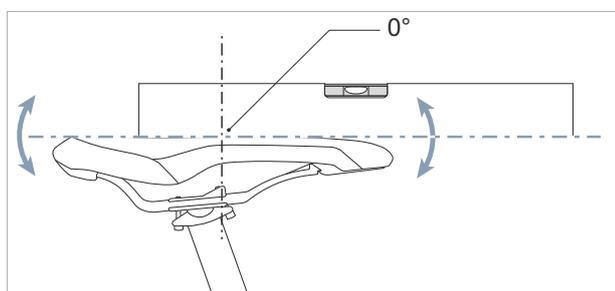


Figure 128: Horizontal saddle tilt with 0° tilt in the centre of the saddle

⇒ The rider is sitting comfortably on the saddle and does not slip backwards or forwards.

- 4 If the rider tends to slip forwards on the narrow part of the saddle, adjust the seat position (see Section 6.6.2.3) or tilt the saddle very slightly backwards.
- 5 Tighten the rear screw with a torque wrench and a maximum torque of 8 Nm.



Figure 129: Securing the front and rear screws

Notice

Never fasten the screw on the seat post head more tightly than the stipulated torque of 8 Nm, as it could break the seat post.

6.5.4.14 Eightpins NGS2 seat post saddle tilt

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

The saddle prevents the rider from slipping backwards or forwards when placed in a horizontal position. This avoids seat problems. In any other position, the tip of the saddle may press uncomfortably into the crotch area. It is also recommended that the centre of the saddle is exactly straight. This ensures that the rider is seated with their sit bones on the wide rear part of the saddle.

- 1 Loosen the rear attachment screw on the seat post head with a 5 mm Allen key.



Figure 130: Loosening the rear screw

- 2 Use the setting wheel to adjust the saddle tilt horizontally.
 - ▶ If you turn it clockwise, the tip of the saddle tilts upwards.
 - ▶ If you turn it anti-clockwise, the tip of the saddle tilts downwards.



Figure 131: Adjusting the saddle tilt with the setting wheel

- 3 Position saddle middle so that it is completely straight.

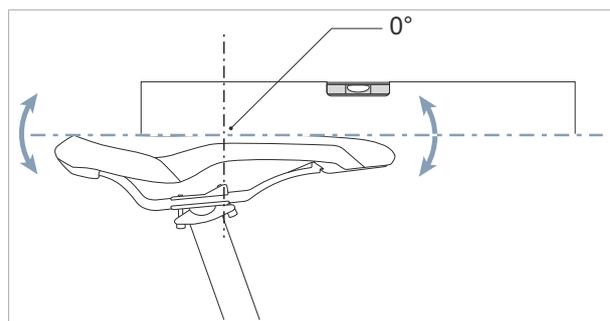


Figure 132: Horizontal saddle tilt with 0° tilt in the centre of the saddle

- ⇒ The rider is sitting comfortably on the saddle and does not slip backwards or forwards.
- 4 If the rider tends to slip forwards on the narrow part of the saddle, adjust the saddle position (see Section 6.5.4.11) or tilt the saddle very slightly backwards.
 - ▶ Tighten the rear clamping screw with a 5 mm torque wrench and a maximum torque of 8 Nm.



Figure 133: Adjusting the saddle tilt with the setting wheel

Notice

Never fasten the screw on the seat post head more tightly than the stipulated torque of 8 Nm, as it could break the seat post.

6.5.4.15 Check saddle

- ▶ Check the saddle after adjustment (see Section 7.5.8).

6.5.5 Handlebars

6.5.5.1 Replace handlebars

Not included in price



Handlebars are components that may be replaced after approval by the vehicle or parts manufacturer. Only handlebars that are approved for use on e-bikes may be used to replace the existing ones. Handlebars may be replaced if the cable and/or line lengths do not need to be changed. A change in riding position is allowed within the original cable length. Furthermore, the load distribution on the pedelec changes considerably and may potentially lead to hazardous steering performance.

- ▶ Check handlebar width and hand position.
- ▶ Have handlebars replaced at the specialist dealer's if necessary.

6.5.5.2 Adjusting the handlebar width

The handlebar width should be as wide as the rider's shoulders as a minimum. This is measured from mid-point to mid-point on the hand contact surfaces.

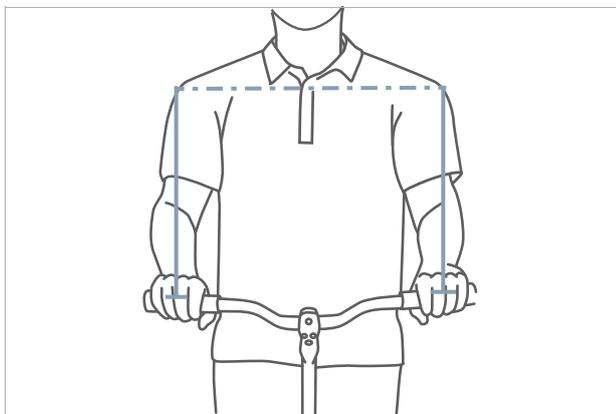


Figure 134: Determining the optimal handlebar width

The wider the handlebars are, the more control they provide, although wide handlebars require greater supporting force. Wider handlebars are particularly useful to ensure a safer ride for loaded touring bikes.

6.5.5.3 Adjusting the hand position

The hand is in an optimal position on the handlebars when the forearm and hand are in a straight line, i.e. the wrist is not bent. In this way, the nerves are not pinched and do not cause pain.

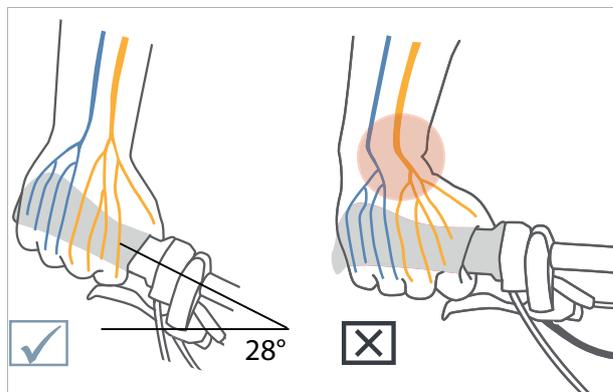


Figure 135: Distribution of nerves with curved and straight handlebars

The narrower the shoulders are, the greater the bend of the handlebars should be (maximum 28°).

Straight handlebars are advisable for sports bikes (e.g. MTB). They support direct steering behaviour, but lead to peaks in pressure and greater muscular strain on the arm and shoulder muscles.

6.5.5.4 Adjusting the handlebars

The handlebars and their position determine the posture that the pedelec rider adopts on the pedelec.

- 1 After selecting the seating position (see Section 6.5.2), determine the angle of the upper body and the upper arm.
- 2 Tension the back muscles when adjusting the handlebars. The only way to stabilise the spine and protect it from excessive strain is to tension the back and abdominal muscles. Passive muscles are not able to perform this important task.
- 3 Set the required handlebar position by adjusting height and angle (see Section 6.5.6).
- 4 After adjusting the handlebars, check the saddle height and riding position again. The position of the pelvis on the saddle may have changed when the handlebars were adjusted. This can have considerable impact on the position of the hip joint due to the pelvis tilting and may change the usable leg length on the saddle support by up to 3 cm.
- 5 Correct the saddle height and position if necessary (see Section 6.5.4.8 and 6.5.4.11).

6.5.6 Stem

6.5.6.1 Replacing the handlebars

Not included in price



Handlebar-stem units are components that may be replaced after approval by the vehicle or parts manufacturer.

Only units that are approved for use on e-bikes may be used to replace the existing ones. A stem must be replaced if cable and/or line lengths do not need to be changed.

A change in riding position is allowed within the original cable length. Furthermore, the load distribution on the pedelec changes considerably and may potentially lead to hazardous steering performance.

6.5.6.2 Adjusting the handlebar height with quick release

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- 1 Open the stem clamping lever.

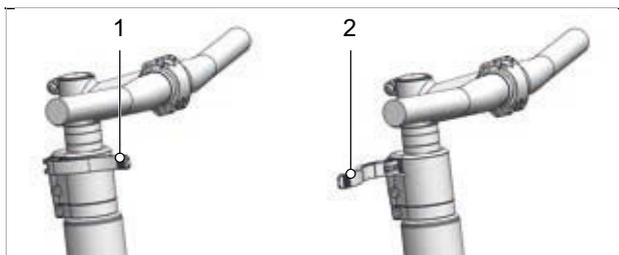


Figure 136: Open (2) and closed (1) stem clamping lever; All Up used as an example

- 2 Pull out the handlebars to the required height. Observe minimum insertion depth.

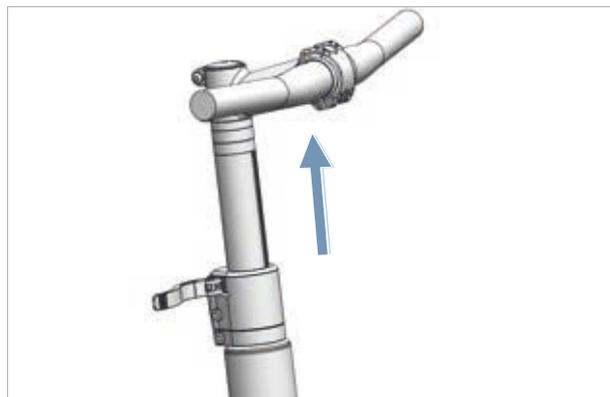


Figure 137: Pulling the handlebars upwards; All Up used as an example

- 3 Close the stem clamping lever.

6.5.6.3 Checking the stem stability

- ▶ Hold handlebars firmly after adjusting the saddle. Press full body weight on the handlebars.
- ⇒ The handlebars remain stable in their position.

6.5.6.4 Adjusting the quick release clamping force



Crash caused by incorrectly set clamping force

Applying excessive clamping force damages the quick release. Insufficient clamping force will result in unfavourable transmission of force. This can cause components to break. This will cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Never fasten a quick release using a tool (e.g. hammer or pliers).

If the *handlebar clamping lever* stops before reaching its end position, unscrew the *knurled nut*.

- ▶ Tighten the *knurled nut* on the seat post if the *seat post clamping lever's* clamping force is not effective enough.
- ▶ Contact your specialist dealer if the clamping force cannot be set.

6.5.6.5 Setting the quill stem

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

In the case of a quill stem, the stem and fork steerer form a permanently interconnected component, which is clamped in the fork steerer. The stem and shaft must be replaced together.

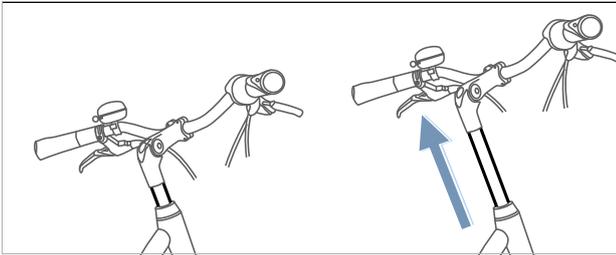


Figure 138: Adjusting the quill stem height

- 1 Undo screw.
- 2 Pull quill stem out.
- 3 Tighten screw.

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

Angle-adjustable stems are available in different lengths for quill and Ahead stems.

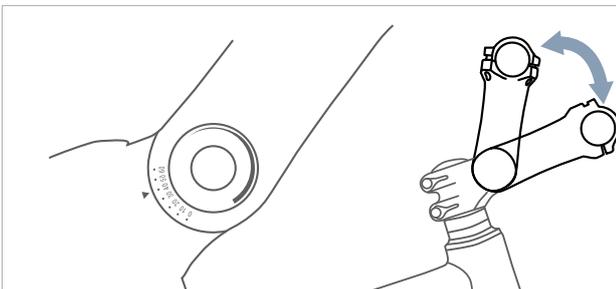


Figure 140: Different versions of angle-adjustable stems

Adjusting the stem angle (c) changes both the distance from the upper body to the handlebars (b) and the handlebar height (a).

6.5.6.6 Adjusting the Ahead stem

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

In the case of an Ahead stem, the stem is placed directly on the fork steerer, which protrudes over the frame.

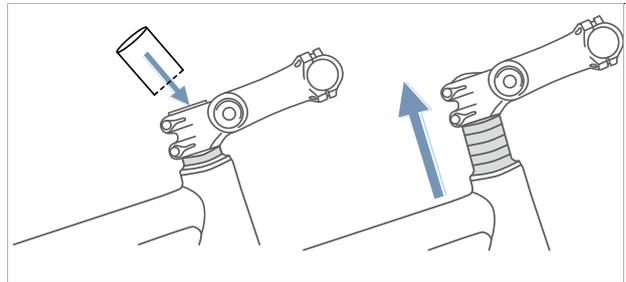


Figure 139: Raising the Ahead stem by fitting spacer rings

The handlebar height is adjusted once during production using spacer rings. The part of the fork steerer protruding is then cut off. The handlebar stem can then no longer be set higher, but only slightly lower.

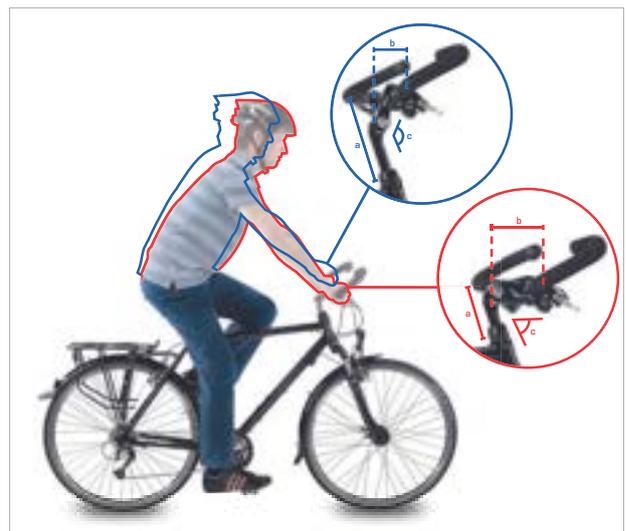


Figure 141: City bike (blue) and trekking bike position (red) by changing the angle

6.5.6.8 Checking the stem

- Check saddle stem after adjusting it (see Section 7.5.6).

6.5.7 Handles

6.5.7.1 Replacing the handles

Not included in price



Handles with bolt clamps are components which may be replaced without approval. Only handles that are approved for use on e-bikes may be used to replace the existing ones.

If there is pain or numbness in the index, middle finger or thumb, this may be due to excessive pressure on the exit of the carpal tunnel. On longer rides, this can increasingly cause hand fatigue and make it more and more difficult to maintain a correct hand position.

In the case of ergonomically shaped handles, the palm rests on the anatomically shaped handle. A greater contact surface means that the pressure is more evenly distributed. Nerves and vessels are no longer squeezed in the carpal tunnel.

Moreover, the hand is supported and held in the correct position so that the hand can no longer bend.

If the pre-mounted handles are uncomfortable or cause pain or numbness in the index, middle finger or thumb, ergonomic handles, bar ends or multi-position handlebars should be used.

6.5.7.2 Adjusting ergonomic handles

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

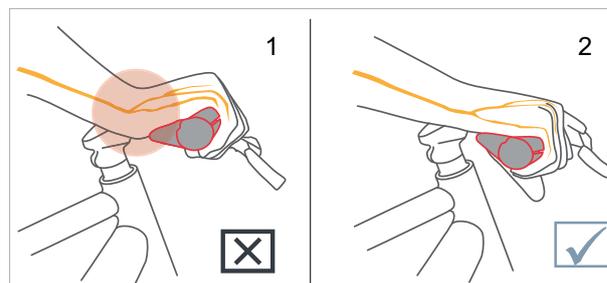


Figure 142: Incorrect (1) and correct (2) position of the handle



- 1 Undo handle clamping screw.
 - 2 Turn handle into the right position.
 - 3 Fasten handle clamping screw with the torque value indicated there.
- ⇒ The handles are firmly fastened.
- ⇒ The pull-off force of the handles is at least 100 N in the roadster, city and trekking positions, and at least 200 N in the sporty position.

6.5.7.3 Check handlebars

- ▶ Check handlebars after adjusting the handles (see Section 7.5.7).

6.5.8 Tyres

6.5.8.1 Replacing tyres

Not included in price



Different tyres need to be used when the area of use is changed, more weight or greater puncture protection is added, and greater acceleration or more dynamic cornering is used.

Tyres may only be replaced after approval by the vehicle or parts manufacturer.

Tyres may be replaced if

- They are approved for use on e-bikes
- They comply with ETRTO dimensions
- They have the same load capacity as a minimum
- They have a comparable level of puncture protection as a minimum

6.5.8.2 Adjust tyre pressure

The following applies to tyres at all times:

- Always comply with the limits for minimum and maximum pressure indicated on the tyre and rim.

The maximum pressure is indicated on the rim and the side of the tyre. Contact the manufacturer if you are unsure. If the pressure indicated on the rim is lower than that on the tyre, the maximum pressure on the rim must be observed.

The minimum pressure imprinted on a SCHWALBE tyre only applies to butyl tube applications. Less pressure can be applied than these values for tubeless applications or with Aerothan tubes.

The correct tyre pressure largely depends on the weight load on the tyres. This load is determined by the pedelec's tare weight, the rider's body weight and the luggage load.

Unlike cars, the weight of the vehicle has little impact on the total weight. Moreover, the personal preferences for low rolling resistance or a high degree of suspension comfort vary a great deal.

Riding off-road

The tyres form the only connection between the pedelec and the ground. It depends disproportionately on the tyres whether the pedelec's and rider's performance capabilities can be fully exploited. The air pressure in tyres must always be determined individually to ensure tyres are able to perform to their full potential.

The following applies when riding off-road:

High air pressure	Low air pressure
+ Stability	+ Greater grip
+ Puncture protection	+ Better rolling behaviour
- Less grip	+ Comfort
- Reduced comfort	- Reduced stability
- Greater rolling resistance on rough terrain	- Less puncture protection

Many pedelecs have significantly too much or too little air in their tyres and neither the tyre's or the pedelec's performance capabilities can be fully exploited.

SCHWALBE provides an air pressure calculator online to ensure you can determine the optimal air pressure for off-road bikes:

<https://www.schwalbe.com/en/pressureprof/>

Riding on public roads

The following applies to off-road bike whose tyres have been optimised for road use: the higher the tyre pressure, the lower the rolling resistance in the tyre. The risk of breakdown is also lower when the pressure is high. A permanently excessively low tyre pressure often leads to premature wear in the tyre. Cracking in the side wall is a typical consequence of very low tyre pressure. Abrasion is also unnecessarily high.

On the other hand, a tyre can absorb road impacts more effectively at a low pressure. This characteristic can usually be disregarded due to the suspension systems in most bikes.

► As a general rule, wide tyres are operated at a lower tyre pressure. They provide the option of exploiting the advantages of the lower tyre pressure without the serious disadvantages it causes with regard to wear, rolling resistance and breakdown protection.

1 Pump the tyre to the recommend tyre pressure.

Tyre width	Tyre pressure in bar for body weight		
	approx. 60 kg	approx. 80 kg	approx. 110 kg
25 mm	6.0	7.0	8.0
28 mm	5.5	6.5	7.5
32 mm	4.5	5.5	6.5
37 mm	4.0	5.0	6.0
40 mm	3.5	4.5	6.0
47 mm	3.0	4.0	5.0
50 mm	2.5	4.0	5.0
55 mm	2.0	3.0	4.0
60 mm	2.0	3.0	4.0

Table 46: SCHWALBE recommend tyre pressure

2 Perform a visual check on tyres.



Figure 144: Far too little tyre pressure



Figure 143: Correct tyre pressure. The tyre is barely deformed under the load of the body weight

6.5.9 Brake

The handbrake grip distance can be adjusted to ensure that it can be reached more easily. The pressure point can also be adjusted to the pedelec rider's preferences.

6.5.9.1 Replacing brakes

Not included in price



The braking system components may only be replaced with original components.

In the case of disc brake linings, the lining compound may be adapted to the surface and the rider's experience.

6.5.9.2 Retracting the brake linings

Disc brakes require wearing-in time. The braking force increases over time. The braking force is increased during break-in time. This is also the case when the brake pads or brake discs are replaced.

- 1 Accelerate pedelec to 25 km/h.
 - 2 Brake pedelec until it comes to a halt.
 - 3 Repeat process 30 to 50 times.
- ⇒ The disc brake is retracted and provides optimal braking power.

6.5.9.3 Change handbrake position

Having the handbrake in the correct position prevents the rider from stretching their wrist too far. Moreover, the brake can also be operated without any discomfort and without changing the handle position or releasing the handle.

- ✓ Apply handbrake with the third finger phalanx in bursts to brake gently.
 - ✓ The setting for the middle finger is used for pedelec riders who brake with their middle finger or with two fingers.
- 1 Position your hand on the handle in such a way that the outer heel of the hand is flush with the end of the handlebar.
 - 2 Extend the index finger (about 15°).

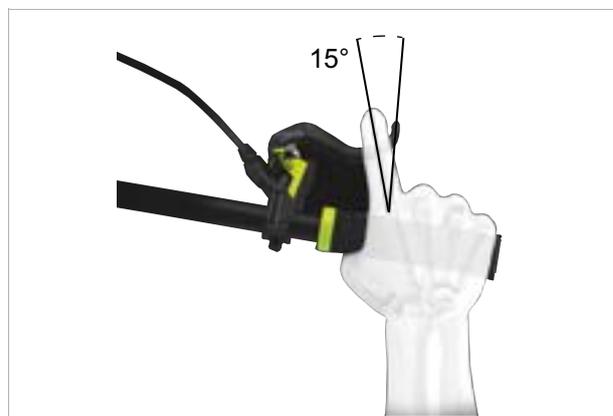


Figure 145: Handbrake position

- 3 Push handbrake outwards until the third finger phalanx sits in the recessed grip.

6.5.9.4 Change handbrake inclination angle

The nerves that pass through the carpal tunnel are connected to the thumb and the index and middle fingers. An excessively steep or excessively flat brake angle will cause the wrist to bend, thus narrowing the carpal tunnel. This can cause numbness and tingling in the thumb and index and middle fingers.

- 1 Calculate the difference between the height of the handlebars and the saddle height to determine the saddle-handlebar height difference.

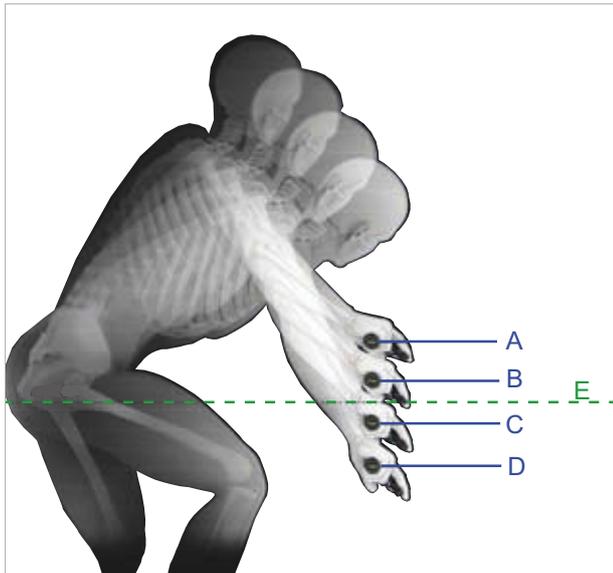


Figure 146: Example of 4 different handlebar heights (A, B, C and D) and the saddle height (E)

Calculation	Saddle-handlebar height difference [mm]
A – E	>10
B – E	0... +10
C – E	0... -10
D – E	< -10

Table 47: Examples of saddle-handlebar height difference

Adjust the angle of the handbrake so that it forms a natural extension of the forearm.

- 2 Set the brake lever angle as indicated in the table.

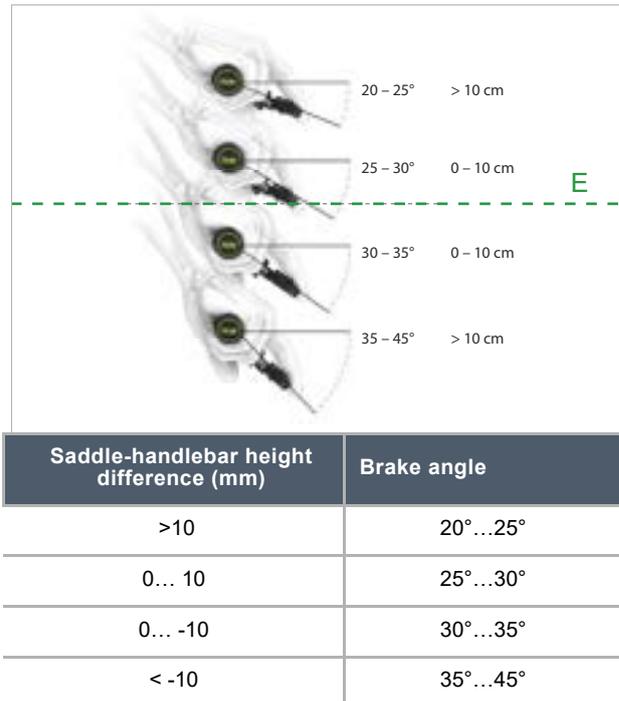


Figure 147: Brake angle

6.5.9.5 Determining the grip distance

- 1 Measure hand size using the grip distance gauge.
- 2 Adjust the grip distance at the pressure point based on the hand size.



Figure 148: Handbrake positioning

Hand size	Grip distance (cm)
S	2
M	3
L	4

6.5.9.6 Adjusting the grip distance on a SHIMANO handbrake

Only applies to pedelecs with handbrakes:

BL-M4100
BL-M7100
BL-M8100
BL-MT200
BL-MT201
BL-MT400
BL-MT401
BL-MT402
BL-T6000
GRX ST-RX600
M7100
M8100
RS785

The handbrake position can be adjusted to the pedelec riders' requirements.

► Contact specialist dealer.

6.5.9.7 Adjusting the grip distance on a SHIMANO ST-EF41 handbrake

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

The handbrake position can be adjusted to the rider's requirements. Such adjustment does not affect the pressure point or the position of the brake linings.

- ▶ Turn setting screw anti-clockwise towards minus (-).
 - ⇒ The handbrake will move closer to the handlebar grip.
- ▶ Turn setting screw clockwise towards plus (+).
 - ⇒ The handbrake will move away from the handlebar grip.



Figure 149: Setting screw position (1)



6.5.9.8 Setting the grip distance on a TEKTRON handbrake

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

Notice

If the setting screw is fully removed, components inside the handbrake will also be permanently twisted off as well. The handbrake will be permanently damaged.

- ▶ Never completely remove setting screws.

The handbrake position can be adjusted to the rider's requirements.

- ▶ Undo 2 mm setting screw anti-clockwise.
 - ⇒ The handbrake will move closer to the handlebar grip.
- ▶ Turn 2 mm setting screw clockwise.
 - ⇒ The handbrake will move away from the handlebar grip.
 - ⇒ This adjustment affects the position of the brake linings.
- ▶ Re-adjust the brake linings after adjustment.

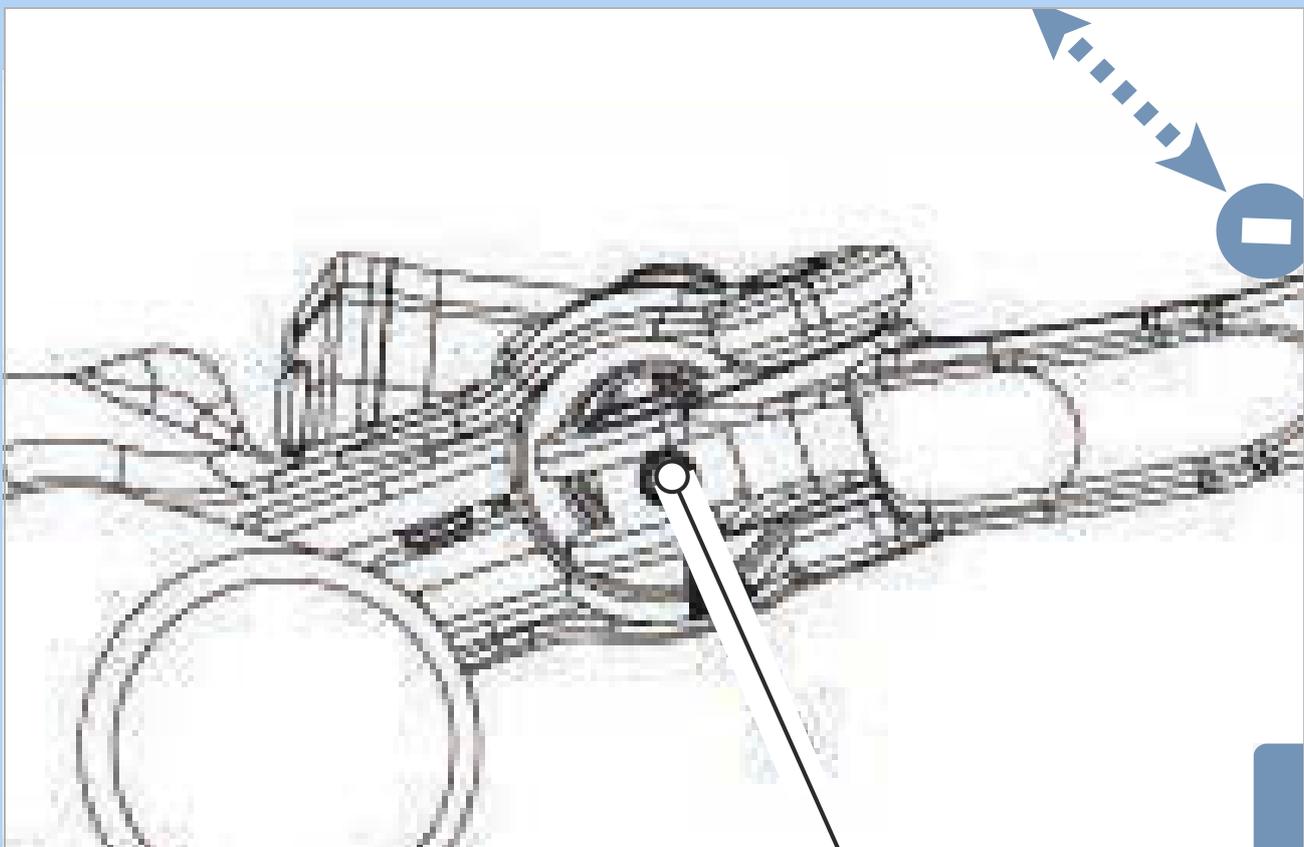


Figure 150: Setting screw position (1)

6.5.10 Gear shift

Adjust the position of the gear shift to the pedelec riders' needs.

- 1 Undo attachment screw.
- 2 Place control panel or shifter into the position where the pedelec rider can use the control panel or the shifter with their thumb and/or index finger. The shifter must never block the handbrake.
- 3 Tighten attachment screw.



6.5.10.1 Replacing the gear shift

Not included in price

All gear shift components (rear derailleur, shifter, twist grip, shift cables and sleeves) may be replaced provided that:

- They are approved for use on e-bikes
- All gear shift components are suitable for the number of gears
- All gear shift components are compatible with one another

It is permitted to change from an electronic gear shift variant to a mechanical one.

It is prohibited to change from a mechanical gear shift variant to an electronic one.

6.5.10.2 Adjusting the SHIMANO shifter

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

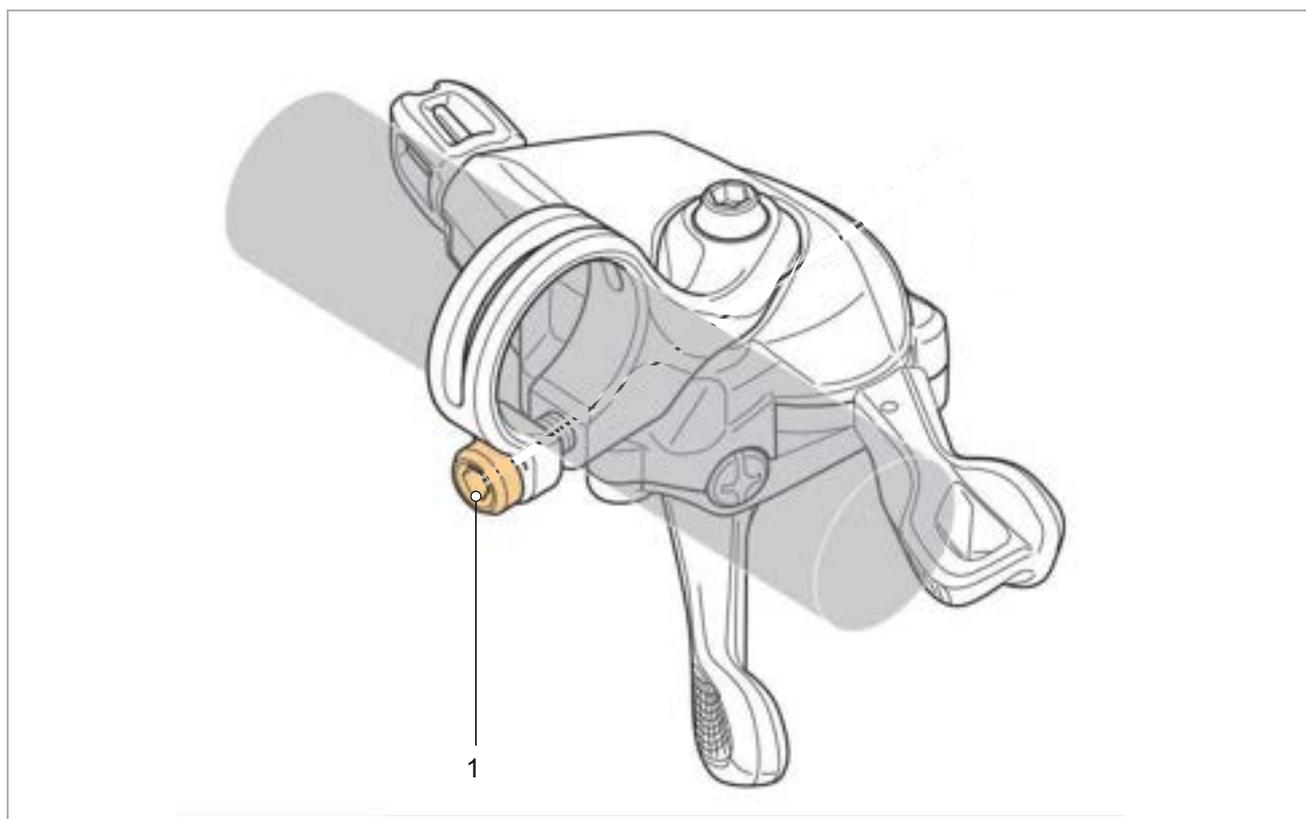


Figure 151: Position of attachment screw in SHIMANO shifter (1)

6.5.10.3 Adjusting the SRAM AXS Controller shifter battery

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

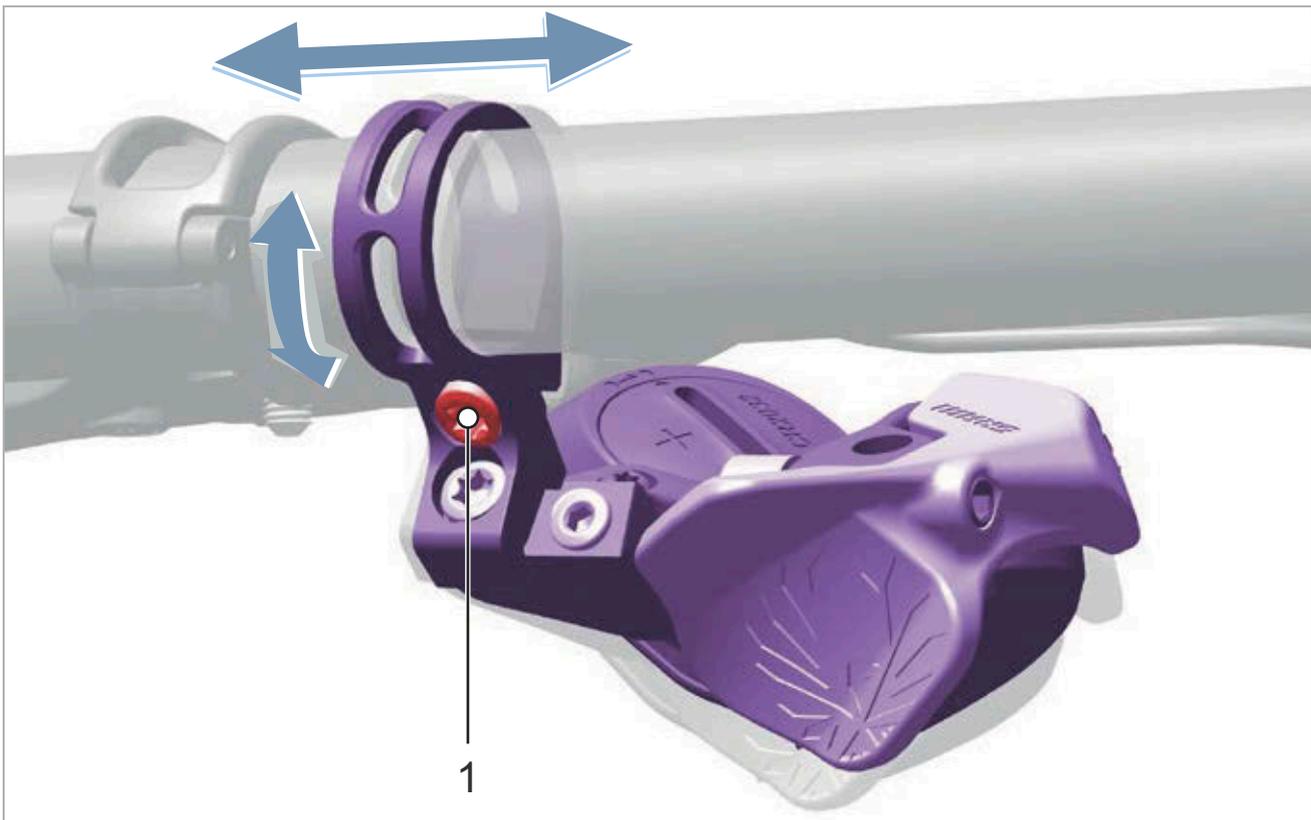


Figure 152: Position of collar attachment screw (1)

- 1 Undo collar attachment screw (1) with a Torx® T25.
- 2 Place shifter into the position where the pedelec rider can use the shifter with their thumb and/or index finger. The shifter must never block the handbrake.
- 3 Tighten the attachment screw with a maximum torque of 2 Nm.

6.5.10.4 Adjusting the SRAM AXS chain gap

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

Adjusting rear derailleur with chain gap gauge

- ✓ The rider sits on the pedelec in the case of full-suspension pedelecs.
- ✓ In the case of oval Eagle X-SYNC 2 chainrings, the crank arm is placed at the 4 o'clock position.

- 1 Switch the chain to the second largest sprocket.

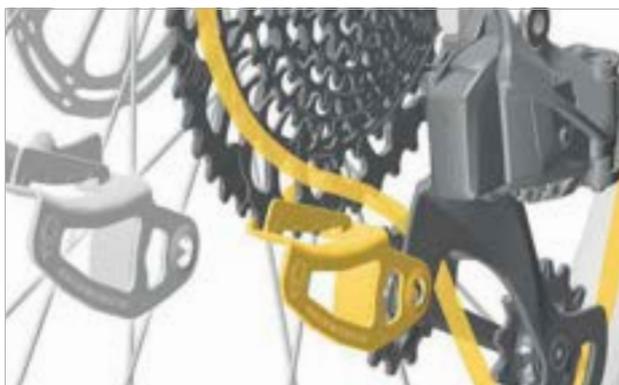


Figure 153: Chain is positioned on the second largest sprocket

- 2 Place the **chain gap gauge** on the largest sprocket in the cassette so that the largest sprocket's teeth touch the surface of the **chain gap gauge**.



Figure 154: Window opening (1) with teeth in the chain gap gauge (2)

- 3 Turn **chain gap gauge** and cassette until the fin on the **chain gap gauge** rear touches the upper pulley.

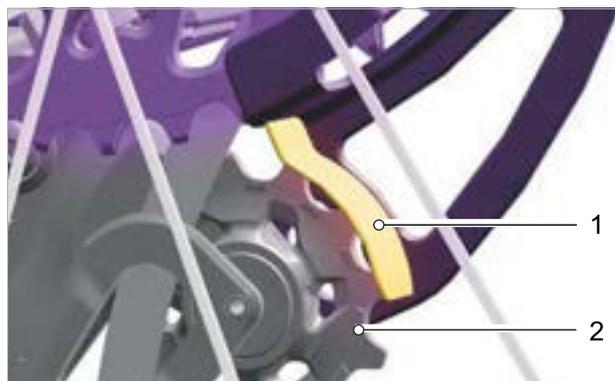


Figure 155: The fin (1) touches the upper pulley (2)

- 4 Turn the **setting bolt (rear derailleur)** until the middle of the **upper pulley** bolt and the tip of the needle on the **chain gap gauge** are aligned with one another. While turning the bolt, ensure that the cassette's longest teeth remain in contact with the **chain gap gauge** surface and the **upper pulley** remains in contact with the fin.

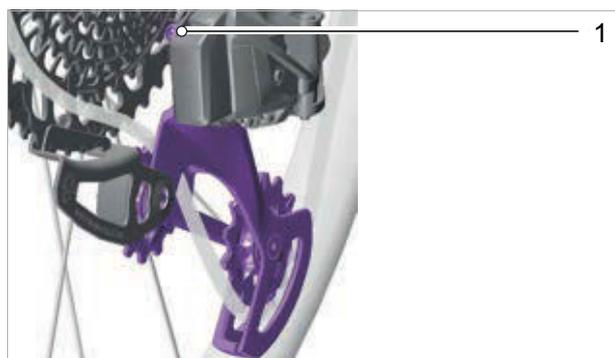


Figure 156: Position of the setting bolt (rear derailleur) (1)



Figure 157: Tip of the needle

- 5 Remove the **chain gap gauge**.

Adjusting rear derailleur without chain gap gauge

- ✓ The rider sits on the pedelec in the case of full-suspension pedelecs.
 - ✓ In the case of oval Eagle X-SYNC 2 chainrings, the crank arm is placed at the 4 o'clock position.
- 1 Switch the chain to the second largest sprocket.
 - 2 Turn the **setting bolt (rear derailleur)** until the gap between the **upper pulley** and the longest teeth in the largest sprocket is 3 mm.

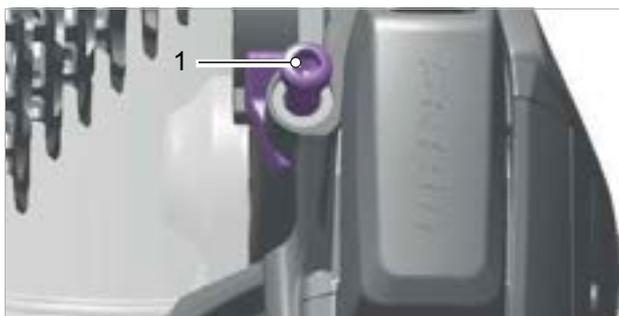


Figure 158: Position of the setting bolt (rear derailleur) (1)



Figure 159: 3 mm gap between pulley and teeth

6.5.10.5 Adjusting the SRAM AXS rear derailleur

- 1 Switch the chain to the second largest sprocket.
- 2 Press down the AXS button on the controller and hold.
 - ⇒ The rear derailleur may not make any visible movement. Ensure that the rear derailleur LED flashes to confirm that the rear derailleur has carried out the command.
- 3 Align the upper pulley with the centre of the second largest sprocket. Use the rocker switch to adjust.
 - ▶ Press the rocker switch downwards to adjust the rear derailleur inwards.



Figure 160: Pressing the rocker switch downwards

- ▶ Press the rocker switch upwards to adjust the rear derailleur outwards.

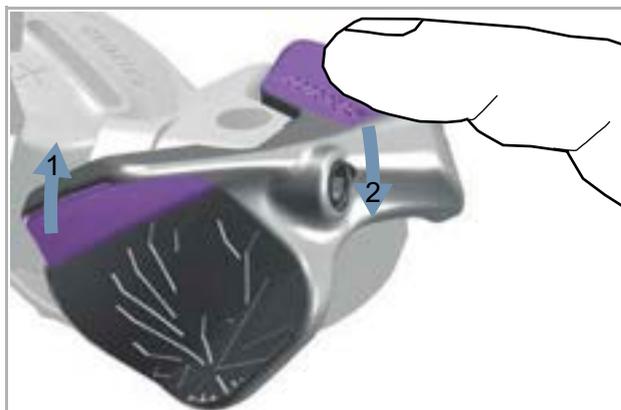


Figure 161: Press rocker switch upwards on the rocker switch (1) or on the front part of the rocker switch (2)

⇒ The upper pulley is now aligned with the centre of the second largest sprocket.

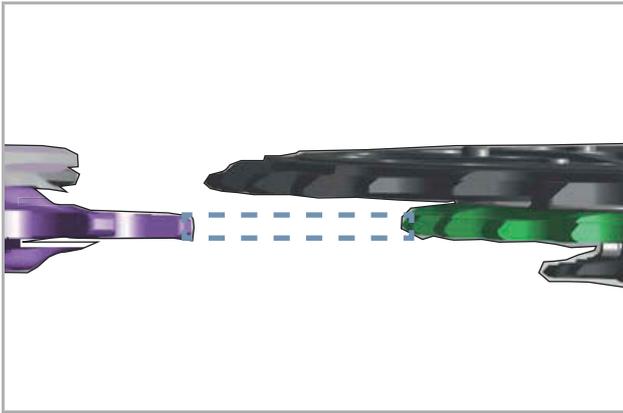


Figure 162: Correct alignment between pulley and second largest sprocket

6.5.10.6 Adjusting the locking screws

- 1 Switch the chain to the largest sprocket.
- 2 Use a 3 mm hex bit to position the lower locking screw in such a way that the lower locking screw touches the limit stop on the outer parallelogram body slightly.

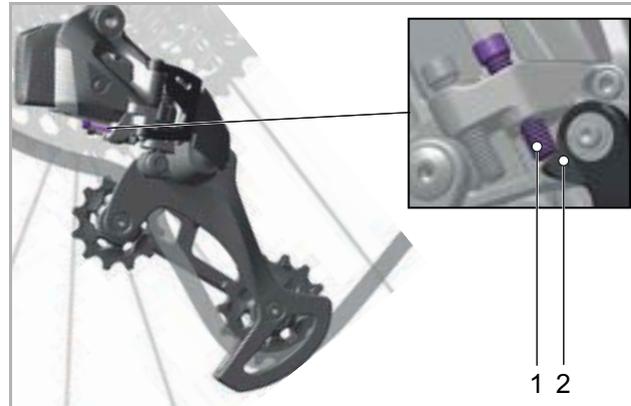


Figure 163: Position of the lower locking screw and the outer parallelogram body

- 3 Turn the lower locking screw back a quarter turn.
- 4 Switch the chain to the smallest sprocket.
- 5 Use a 3 mm hex bit to position the upper locking screw in such a way that the upper locking screw touches the limit stop on the outer parallelogram body slightly.

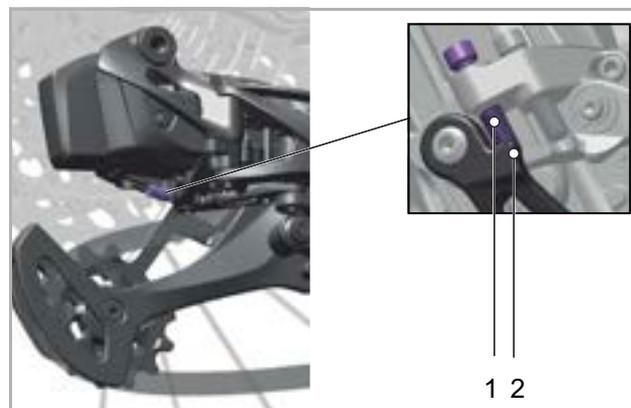


Figure 164: Position of the upper locking screw and the inner parallelogram body

- 6 Turn the upper locking screw back a quarter turn.

6.5.10.7 Performing fine adjustment

- 1 Press down the AXS button on the controller and hold.
- ▶ Press the rocker switch downwards briefly.
- ⇒ The rear derailleur is shifted inwards by 0.2 mm each time you press.



Figure 165: Pressing the rocker switch downwards

- ▶ Press the rocker switch upwards briefly.
- ⇒ The rear derailleur is shifted outwards by 0.2 mm each time you press.

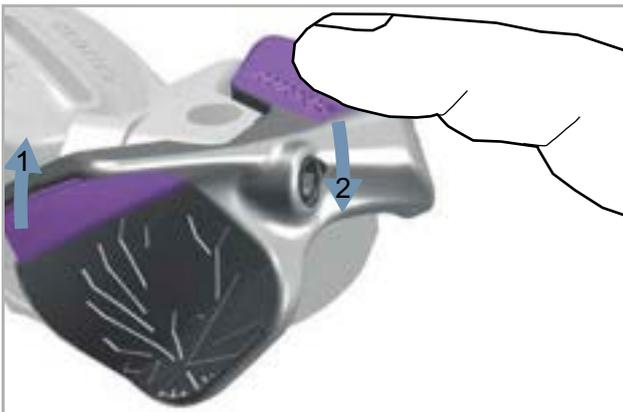


Figure 166: Press rocker switch upwards on the rocker switch (1) or on the front part of the rocker switch (2)

- ⇒ The rear derailleur switching power is optimised.
- ⇒ Undesirable grinding sounds are eliminated.

6.5.11 Suspension and damping

Suspension and damping can be adjusted to the rider's weight in up to six increments, depending on the suspension system.

► Follow the correct order for adjustment.

Sequence	Adjustment	Section	For pedelecs with components only	
			Suspension fork	Rear frame damper
1	Adjusting the suspension fork sag	6.5.12	x	
2	Adjusting the rear frame damper sag	6.5.13		x
3	Adjusting the suspension fork rebound damper	6.5.14	x	
4	Adjusting the rear frame damper rebound damper	6.5.15		x
5	Before each ride:			
	Adjust the rear frame damper compression damper	6.16.3		x
6	While riding:			
	Adjusting the suspension fork	6.17	x	

Table 48: Correct order for suspension and damping adjustment

6.5.12 Adjusting the suspension fork sag



Crash caused by incorrectly set suspension

If the suspension is set incorrectly, the suspension fork may become damaged, meaning problems may occur when steering. This will cause a crash with injuries.

- Never ride without air in air suspension forks.
- Never use the pedelec without adjusting the suspension fork to the body weight.

Adjustments on the chassis change ride performance significantly. The rider needs to get used to the pedelec and break it in to prevent accidents.

The sag depends on the position and body weight and should be set based on preferences and on how the pedelec is used.

Greater sag

A greater sag increases sensitivity to bumps, thus producing greater suspension motion. A greater sensitivity to bumps ensures more comfortable ride performance and is used on pedelecs with longer deflection.

Decreased sag

A decreased sag reduces sensitivity to bumps, thus producing less suspension motion. A lower sensitivity to bumps ensures a firmer, more efficient ride performance and is generally used on pedelecs with shorter deflections. The adjustment shown here represents a default setting. The default settings should change, adapted to suit the surface and preferences.

It is advisable to make a note of the default settings. These can then be used as a starting point for subsequent optimised settings and as a safeguard against unintentional changes.

6.5.12.1 Adjusting the RockShox steel suspension fork sag

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

1 Turn the **sag setting wheel** anti-clockwise until it stops.

⇒ The softest spring pre-tensioning is set.



Figure 167: Turning the sag setting wheel in (1) and out (2)

- 2 Put on normal cycling clothing. Ask someone to hold the pedelec.
- 3 Stand on the pedals. Allow the damper to deflect three times. Sit or stand on the pedelec in a normal riding position.
- 4 Ask your helper to push the O-ring downwards until it reaches the top of the dust wiper seal.



Figure 168: Moving the suspension fork O-ring

- 5 Get off the pedelec without it deflecting.
- 6 Note distance between dust wiper and the O-ring. This distance is the sag.

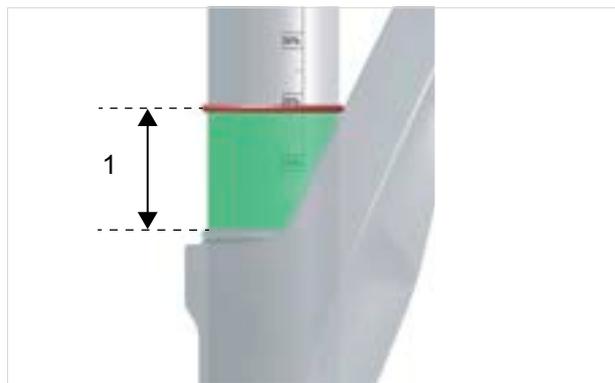


Figure 169: Sag (1)

Setting	Sag
Prohibited	>30%
High sensitivity	20... 30%
Low sensitivity	10... 20%
Prohibited	<10%

Table 49: Recommended sag

- 7 If the desired sag is not achieved, you need to undo the sag setting wheel adjustment ring little by little. Repeat step 3 to 8 after each turn until the right sag is set.
- 8 The coil spring must be replaced if the desired sag cannot be achieved by twisting the preload adjustment ring. Contact specialist dealer.

6.5.12.2 Adjusting the sag for SR SUNTOUR air suspension fork

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- 1 Turn the **air valve cap** (see Section 3.4.3.1) anti-clockwise away from the **air valve (suspension fork)**.
- 2 Attach the high-pressure damper pump to the **air valve (fork)**.
- 3 Pump air suspension to the required pressure level. Stop at the levels specified in the SR SUNTOUR pressure table for the air suspension fork. Never exceed the recommended maximum filling pressure.

Recommended air pressure [psi]						
Body weight [kg]	RUX38/Durolux38	Durolux36/Auron35/Mobie35	Axon34-werx/elite	Aion35/Zeron 45 Mobie34-air/Mobie45 air	Axon34/Raidon 34/XCR34	Axon32/Epixon32/Raidon32/XCR32-air
< 55	< 40	35... 50	40... 55	35... 50	40... 55	40... 55
55... 65	40... 50	50... 60	55... 65	50... 60	55... 65	55... 65
65... 75	50... 60	60... 70	65... 75	60... 70	65... 75	65... 75
75... 85	60... 70	70... 85	75... 85	70... 85	75... 85	75... 85
85... 95	70... 85	85... 105	85... 100	85... 105	85... 100	85... 100
>95	+ 85	+105	+100	+105	+100	+100
Filling pressure set in the factory	70	90	95	90	95	110
Maximum pressure	105	120	145	120	145	145
Suspension operative up to body weight [kg]	118	128	138	109	138	138

Recommended air pressure [psi]						
Body weight [kg]	XCR 24" air	XCM-Jr.	Mobie25 air	GVX32	NRX-air	NCX-air
< 55	40... 55	40... 55	40... 55	40... 55	40... 55	40... 55
55... 65	...	...	55... 65	55... 65	55... 65	55... 65
65... 75	...	...	65... 75	65... 75	65... 75	65... 75
75... 85	...	...	75... 85	75... 85	75... 85	75... 85
85... 95	...	...	85... 100	85... 100	85... 100	85... 100
>95	...	...	+100	+100	+100	+100
Filling pressure set in the factory	50	50	100	110	85	80
Maximum pressure	100	100	130	120	120	120
Maximum body weight [kg]	100	100	124	114	114	114

Table 50: SR SUNTOUR filling pressure table for the air fork

- 4 Detach high-pressure damper pump.
- 5 Measure the distance between the fork crown and the dust seal. This distance is the total deflection for the suspension fork.
- 6 Push a cable tie attached temporarily downwards against the dust seal.
- 7 Put on normal pedelec clothing (including baggage).
- 8 Sit on the pedelec in your usual riding position and support yourself against an object, such as a wall or tree.
- 9 Get off the pedelec without it deflecting.
- 10 Measure distance between the dust seal and the cable tie.
 - ⇒ This measurement is the sag. The recommended value is between 15% (hard) and 30% (soft) of the total suspension fork deflection.
- 11 Increase or reduce the filling pressure.
 - ⇒ The required sag is attained.
- 12 Tighten the **air valve cap** onto the **air valve (suspension fork)** in a clockwise direction.
- 13 If you are unable to achieve the required sag, the suspension fork will need to be adjusted internally. Contact specialist dealer.



Adjusting preload internally

- ▶ Only your specialist dealer may make an internal adjustment to the preload.

The air volume spacers can be replaced on some fork models. This changes the value for the centre stroke and the bottom-out (bounce) resistance.

- ▶ If the sag is set correctly and the deflection is reached too easily, install one or more spacers. This will increase the impact resistance.
- ▶ If the sag is set correctly and the full deflection range is not used, remove one or more spacers. Resistance to impact is reduced.

14 Check the sag.

Installation procedures and optimisation options as in the following table may be recommended:

		RUX38		Durolux36		Durolux38		Auron35		Mobie35		Axon34-werx		
Plastic volume spacer		8.6cc		8.2cc		7.5cc		...		...		...
Rubber volume spacer		...		7.5cc-15 mm		7.5cc-15 mm		5cc-10 mm		5cc-10 mm		5cc-10 mm		
		FR	mS	FR	mS	FR	mS	FR	mS	FR	mS	FR	mS	
Plastic volume spacer		5	5	3	3	3	3	...	...	...	...	...	...
Rubber spacer	Deflection [mm]	200	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
		180	...	...	2	6	1	6	...	...	...	...	...
		170	...	...	3	6	2	6	...	...	...	...	...
		160	...	...	4	6	3	6	7	10	7	11	...
		150	...	...	...	...	4	6	8	10	8	11	...
		140	...	...	...	...	...	...	9	10	9	11	...
		130	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	10	11	...
		120	11	11	3	8
		110	3	8
100	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	3	8	

FR = Factory reset

mS = maximum number of spacers

	Aion35		Zeron35		Axon32		Mobie34-air		Mobie45-air		GVX	
Rubber volume space	5cc		5cc		4.3cc		5cc		5cc		4.3cc	
Deflection [mm]	FR	mS	FR	mS	FR	mS	FR	mS	FR	mS	FR	mS
160	3	6	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
150	3	6	3	6	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
140	3	6	3	6	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
130	3	6	3	6	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
120	3	6	...	...	2	4	...	...	...	...	...	...
100	...	...	...	...	2	4	2	5	2	5	...	...
80	...	...	...	...	...	...	2	5	2	5	...	...
60	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	2	5	4	4
50	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	4	4
40	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	4	4

FR = Factory reset

mS = maximum number of spacers

6.5.13 Adjusting the rear frame damper sag

CAUTION

Crash caused by broken rear frame damper

If the rear frame damper's maximum air pressure is exceeded, this can cause the rear frame damper to break. This can result in loss of control and a crash with cut injuries or even death.

- ▶ Never exceed the indicated maximum air pressure when adjusting the sag.

Adjustments on the chassis change ride performance significantly. The rider needs to get used to the pedelec and break it in to prevent accidents.

The adjustment shown here represents a default setting. The rider should change the default setting to suit the surface and their preferences.

It is advisable to make a note of the default settings. These can then be used as a starting point for subsequent optimised settings and as a safeguard against unintentional changes.

Negative deflection (sag)

The sag is the percentage of total spring deflection that is compressed by the rider's body weight, including equipment (such as a backpack), their seating position and frame geometry. Sag is not caused by riding.

Greater sag

A greater sag increases sensitivity to bumps, thus producing greater suspension motion. A greater sensitivity to bumps ensures more comfortable ride performance and is used on pedelecs with a longer deflection.

Decreased sag

A decreased sag reduces sensitivity to bumps, thus producing less suspension motion. A lower sensitivity to bumps ensures a firmer, more efficient ride performance and is generally used on pedelecs with a shorter deflection.

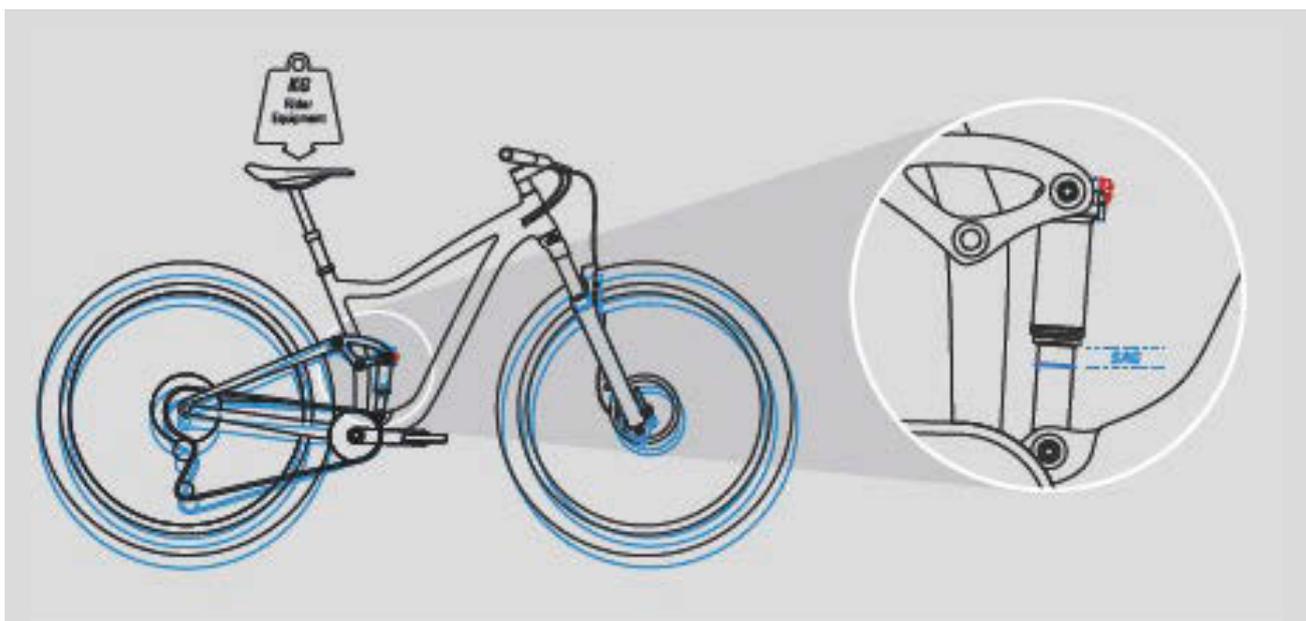


Figure 170: SAG rear frame damper

When optimally adjusted, the rear frame damper deflects quickly and unhindered when the bike hits bumps and absorbs a bump. The traction is maintained.

6.5.13.1 Adjusting the RockShox rear frame damper sag

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- ✓ Adjusting the suspension fork sag (see Section 6.5.12).
- ✓ When adjusting the sag, ensure that all dampers are in the open position, i.e. turned anti-clockwise until they stop.

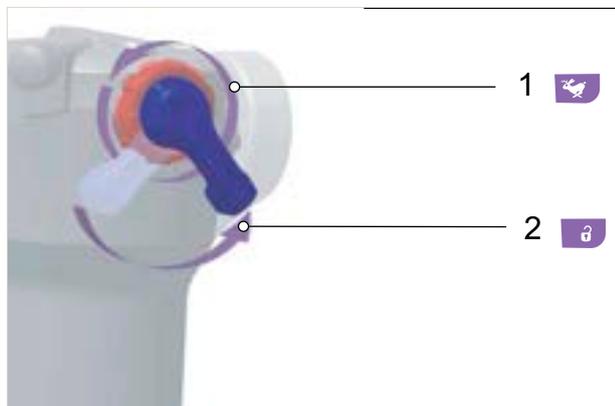


Figure 171: Opening the rebound damper (1) and compression adjuster (2)

- 1 Release air completely from rear frame damper.
- 2 Pressurise the air spring chamber to 100 PSI (6.9 bar) with a high-pressure damper pump.
- 3 Detach high-pressure damper pump.
- 4 Fully deflect rear frame damper five times to compensate the positive and negative air suspension.
- 5 Use a high-pressure damper pump to fill the rear frame damper to the pressure corresponding to the total weight of the person riding, including clothing and baggage.

Notice

If the air pressure in the rear frame damper is exceeded or undershot, the damper can be permanently damaged. The details are on the rear frame damper.

Weight		Air pressure	
Kilogram	Pound (lbs)	Pound per square inch	bar
55	121	121	8.3
60	132	132	9.1
65	143	143	9.9
70	154	154	10.6
75	165	165	11.4
80	176	176	12.1
85	187	187	12.9
90	198	198	13.7
95	209	209	14.4
100	220	220	15.7
110	242	242	16.7

Table 51: Filling pressure table for ROCKSHOX rear frame dampers

- 6 Deflect rear frame damper to compensate the air pressure.
- 7 Put on normal cycling clothing (including baggage).
- 8 Ask someone to hold the pedelec. Stand on the pedals.
- 9 Deflect rear frame damper fully gently two or three times.
- 10 Ask your helper to push the **O-ring** against the wiper seal.



Figure 172: Moving the O-ring on the rear frame damper

11 Read the sag value on the scale.

The optimum sag percentage is 25%. The sag level may be adjusted by $\pm 5\%$, depending on the rider's preferences (20% to 30%).

12 The air pressure must be adjusted if the sag level is not reached.

- ▶ Increase the air pressure to reduce the sag.
- ▶ Decrease the air pressure to increase the sag.

6.5.13.2 Adjusting the SR Suntour rear frame damper sag

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

Every rear frame damper has a specific delivery air pressure ex works. These levels are starting points. These settings can be changed based on riding skills, trail conditions, frame design and personal preferences.

After setting up the rear frame damper, check the sag to ensure that the recommended settings are observed.

Recommended air pressure [psi]										
	Vorocoil		Triair2		Triair		EDGE-comp	EDGE-Plus	EDGE	RAIDON
	Main body	Air reservoir	Main body	Air reservoir	Main body	Air reservoir	Main body	Main body	Main body	Main body
Pressure Factory reset	...	200	180	180	180	200	110	110	110	110
Maximum pressure	...	250	300	240	300	240	300	300	300	300

Table 52: Suntour rear frame damper filling pressure table

- ✓ Adjusting the suspension fork sag (see Section 6.5.12).
 - ✓ The **compression lever** is set to OPEN.
- 1 Remove **air valve cap** from the **air valve (rear frame damper)**.
 - 2 Attach a high-pressure damper pump to the **air valve (rear frame damper)**.
 - 3 Pump the rear frame damper to the required pressure. Never exceed the recommended maximum air pressure from the Suntour rear frame damper filling pressure table (see Table 52).

Notice

- ▶ If the air pressure in the rear frame damper is exceeded or undershot, the damper can be permanently damaged.

- 4 Remove high-pressure damper pump from the **air valve (rear frame damper)**.

- 5 Apply force on the saddle to compress the rear frame damper several times by at least 50% of the full deflection.
 - ⇒ This equalises the air pressure between positive and negative air chambers.
- 6 Measure the gap between the **air chamber seal** and the end of the rear frame damper. This gap is the **total deflection (rear frame damper)**.

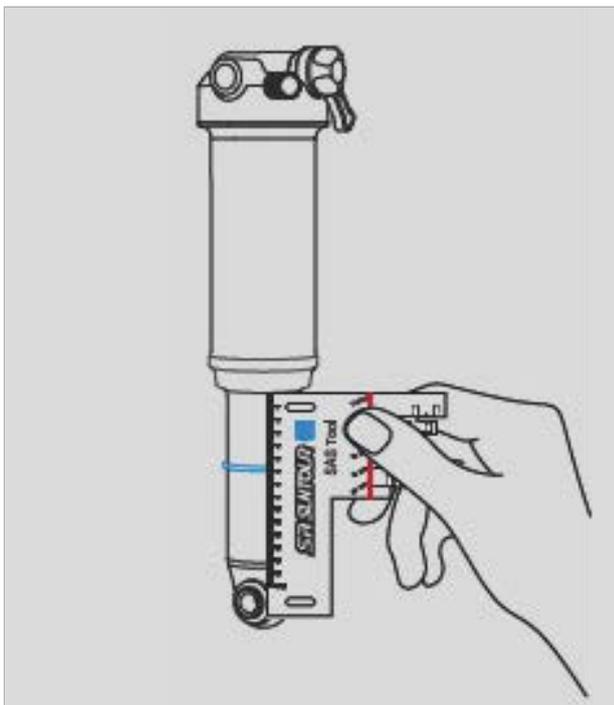


Figure 173: Measuring the total deflection (rear frame damper)

- 7 Attach cable tie if there is no **O-ring** on the rear frame damper.
 - 8 Put on your normal cycling clothing, including baggage.
 - 9 Ask someone to hold the pedelec. Sit on the pedelec in your usual riding position and support yourself against an object, such as a wall or tree.
 - 10 Apply force on the saddle to fully deflect the rear frame damper gently two or three times.
 - 11 The helper pushes the **O-ring** or cable tie downwards against the **air chamber seal**.
 - 12 Get off the pedelec carefully, ensuring that the rear frame damper does not deflect.
 - 13 Measure the distance between the **air chamber seal** and the **O-ring**.
- ⇒ This measurement is the sag. The recommended value is between hard (lowest value) and soft (highest value).

Shock absorber deflection [mm]	Sag [%]	Distance [mm]
75	25... 35	18.75... 26.25
70		17.50... 24.50
65		16.25... 22.75
60		15.00... 21.00
55	25... 30	13.75... 16.50
50	20... 25	10.00... 12.50
45		9.00... 11.25
40		8.00... 10.00
35		7.00... 8.75
30		6.00... 7.50

Table 53: Recommended sag for the rear frame damper

- 14 The air pressure must be adjusted if the required sag level is not reached.
 - ▶ Increase the air pressure to reduce the sag.
 - ▶ Decrease the air pressure to increase the sag.
- 15 If the sag is correct, place the **cap** on the **air valve (rear frame damper)**.
- 16 If you are unable to achieve the required sag, the suspension fork will need to be adjusted internally. Contact specialist dealer.



Adjusting preload internally

- 1 Release all the air from the main reservoir.
- 2 Remove the **O-ring** from beneath the air chamber.
- 3 Rotate the high-pressure cuff (high volume) and press downwards.
- 4 Add or remove the required quantity of volume spacers.
 - ▶ Add air volume spacer.
 - ⇒ Adding air volume spacers creates a more progressive sensation when riding. A more progressive sensation prevents rough bottoming-out and stops the damper from remaining low in the deflection range.
 - ▶ Remove air volume spacer.
 - ⇒ Removing air volume spacers creates a stronger, linear sensation when riding. It helps to remove the air volume spacers if the full deflection cannot be achieved or the rear frame damper becomes very hard at the end of the travel.
- 5 Push high-pressure cuff upwards and tighten.
 - ⇒ The air reservoir is air-tight.
- 6 Attach **O-ring**.

6.5.14 Adjusting the suspension fork rebound damper

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

Rebound damping is adjusted to the rider's body weight, spring stiffness, deflection, the terrain and the pedelec rider's preferences.

If the air pressure or spring stiffness increases, the extension and rebound speeds also increase. Rebound damping needs to be increased to achieve an optimal setting if the air pressure or spring stiffness is increased.

6.5.14.1 Adjusting the ROCKSHOX suspension fork rebound damper

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

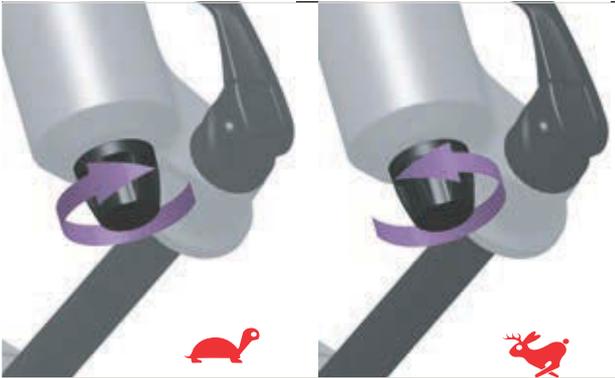


Figure 174: Adjusting the ROCKSHOX rebound damping

- ✓ Adjusting the suspension fork sag (see Section 6.5.12).
- ▶ Turn the rebound adjuster (suspension fork) clockwise towards the tortoise symbol.
 - ⇒ The rebound speed is decreased (slower return).
- ▶ Turn the rebound adjuster (suspension fork) anti-clockwise towards the hare symbol.
 - ⇒ The rebound speed is increased (faster return).

6.5.14.2 Adjusting the SR Suntour rebound damper suspension fork

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment



Figure 175: Example of SR SUNTOUR rebound adjuster (suspension fork) (1)

- ✓ Adjusting the suspension fork sag (see Section 6.5.12).
- 1** Turn the rebound adjuster (suspension fork) clockwise to the closed position until it stops.
- 2** Turn **rebound adjuster (suspension fork)** gently anti-clockwise.
- ⇒ Adjust the rebound damper in such a way that the suspension fork rebounds quickly but without bottoming out upward. Bottoming out refers to occasions when the suspension fork rebounds too quickly and stops moving abruptly once it has reached the full rebound distance. You can hear and feel a slight impact when this happens.

6.5.15 Adjusting the rear frame damper rebound damper

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

Adjust the rebound damper so that the rear frame damper rebounds quickly but without bottoming out upwards. Bottoming out refers to occasions when the rear frame damper rebounds too quickly and stops moving abruptly once it has reached the full rebound distance. You can hear and feel a slight impact when this happens.

Adjusting high-speed and low-speed rebound dampers on the rear frame damper

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

Adjustment of the high-speed rebound (HSR) is advantageous for enabling the rear frame damper to quickly recover from heavier impacts and impacts on right-angled obstacles in order to absorb successive impacts.

Adjustment of the low-speed rebound (LSR) is advantageous for enabling control of the suspension behaviour of the damper when brake pitching, during technically demanding climbs and when riding at an angle when additional traction is required.

6.5.15.1 Adjusting the ROCKSHOX rear frame damper rebound damper

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

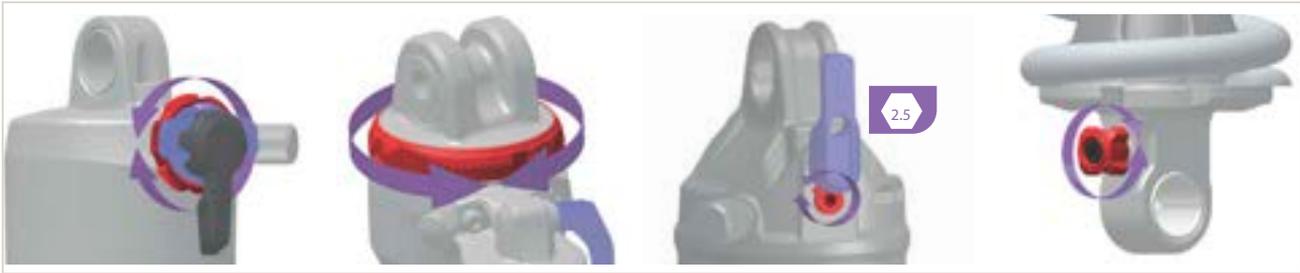


Figure 176: The position and shape of the rebound adjuster (rear frame damper) depends on the model. Rebound adjusters are always red

- ✓ Adjusting the rear frame damper sag (see Section 6.5.13).
- ▶ Turn **rebound adjuster (rear frame damper)** clockwise.
 - ⇒ The rebound damping is increased.
- ▶ Turn **rebound adjuster (rear frame damper)** anti-clockwise.
 - ⇒ The rebound damping is reduced.

6.5.15.2 Adjusting the SR Suntour rear frame damper rebound damper

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

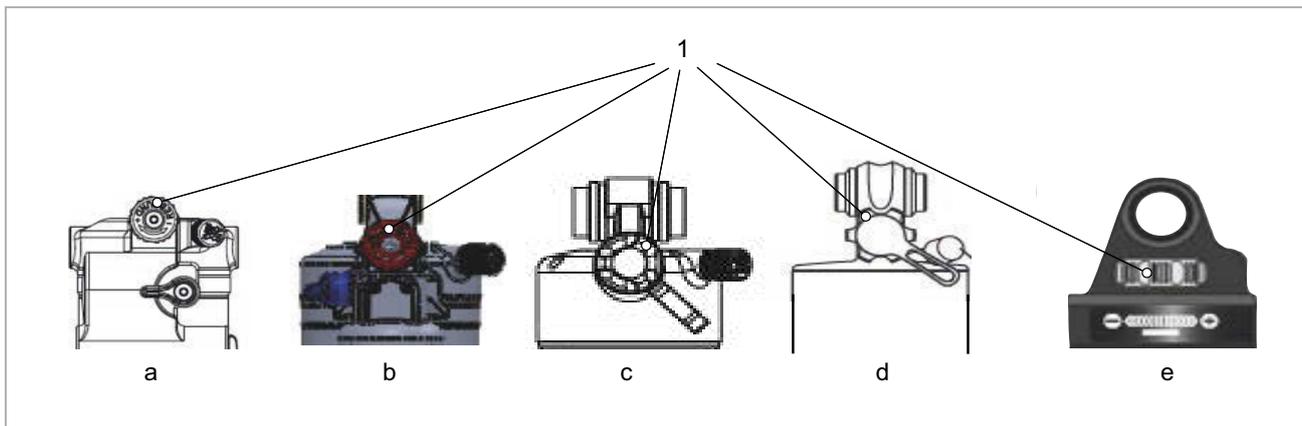


Figure 177: Position of SR Suntour rebound adjuster (rear frame damper) on rear frame damper Triair2 (a), Triair (b), EDGE-comp (c), EDGE (d) and RAIDON (e)

- ✓ Adjusting the rear frame damper sag (see Section 6.5.13)
- ▶ Turn **rebound adjuster (rear frame damper)** clockwise.
 - ⇒ The rebound movement is slower; rebound damping is increased.
- ▶ Turn **rebound adjuster (rear frame damper)** anti-clockwise.
 - ⇒ The rebound movement is faster; rebound damping is less forceful.

6.5.16 Riding light

6.5.16.1 Replacing the headlight

Not included in price



Headlights may only be replaced after approval by the manufacturer or system provider.

6.5.16.2 Replacing the rear light and (spoke) reflector

Not included in price



The rear light and (spoke) reflector may be replaced without special approval provided they comply with the laws of the country where the pedelec will be ridden.

6.5.16.3 Setting the riding light

Example 1

If the headlight is positioned too high, oncoming traffic will be dazzled. This can cause a serious accident with fatalities.

Example 2

Positioning the headlight correctly can ensure that oncoming traffic is not dazzled and no-one is put at risk.

Example 3

If the headlight is positioned too low, the space ahead is not illuminated to an optimum extent and the rider's vision is reduced in the dark.

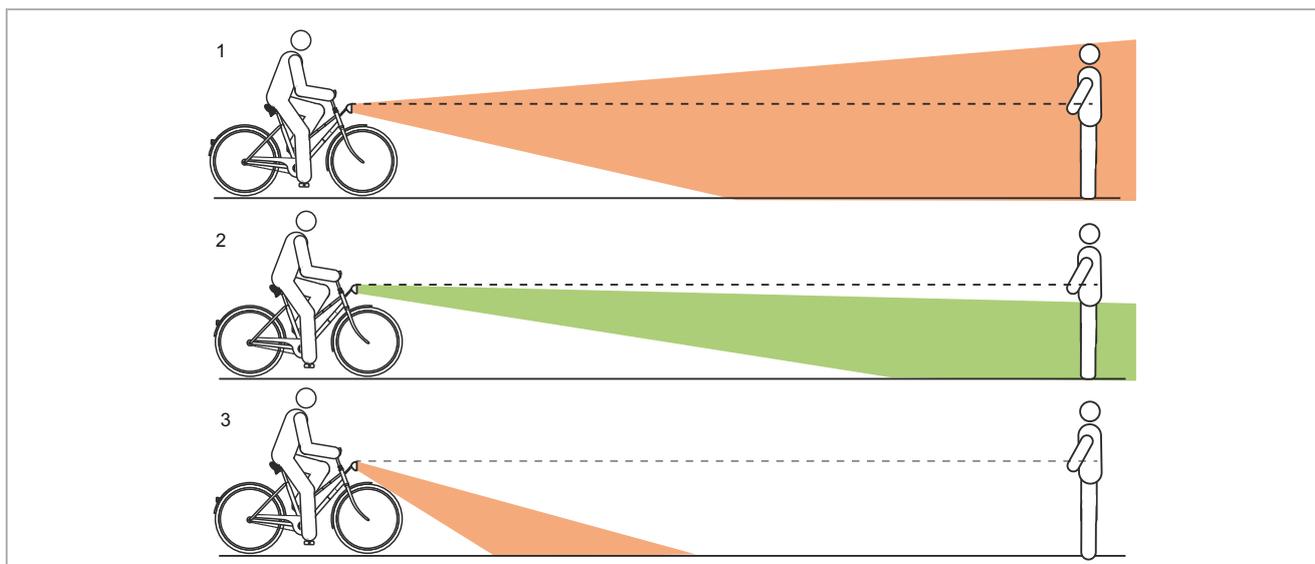


Figure 178: Light positioned too high (1), correctly (2) and too low (3)

6.5.16.4 Adjusting the headlight

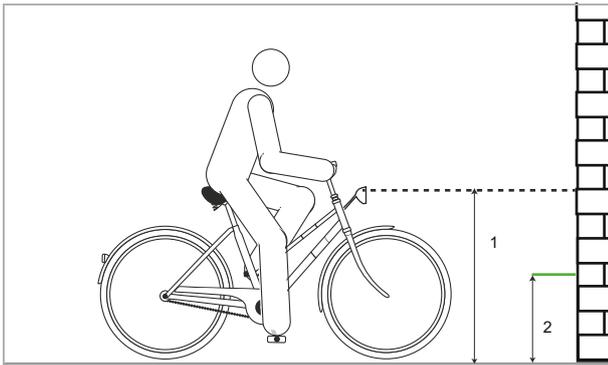


Figure 179: Measuring on the wall

- 1 Position the pedelec so that its front is facing a wall.
- 2 Mark the height of the headlight (1) on the wall with chalk.
- 3 Mark half the height of the headlight (2) on the wall with chalk.

- 4 Place pedelec 5 m in front of the wall.
- 5 Stand the pedelec up straight.

- 6 Hold the handlebars straight with both hands. Do not use the kickstand.
- 7 Switch on riding light.

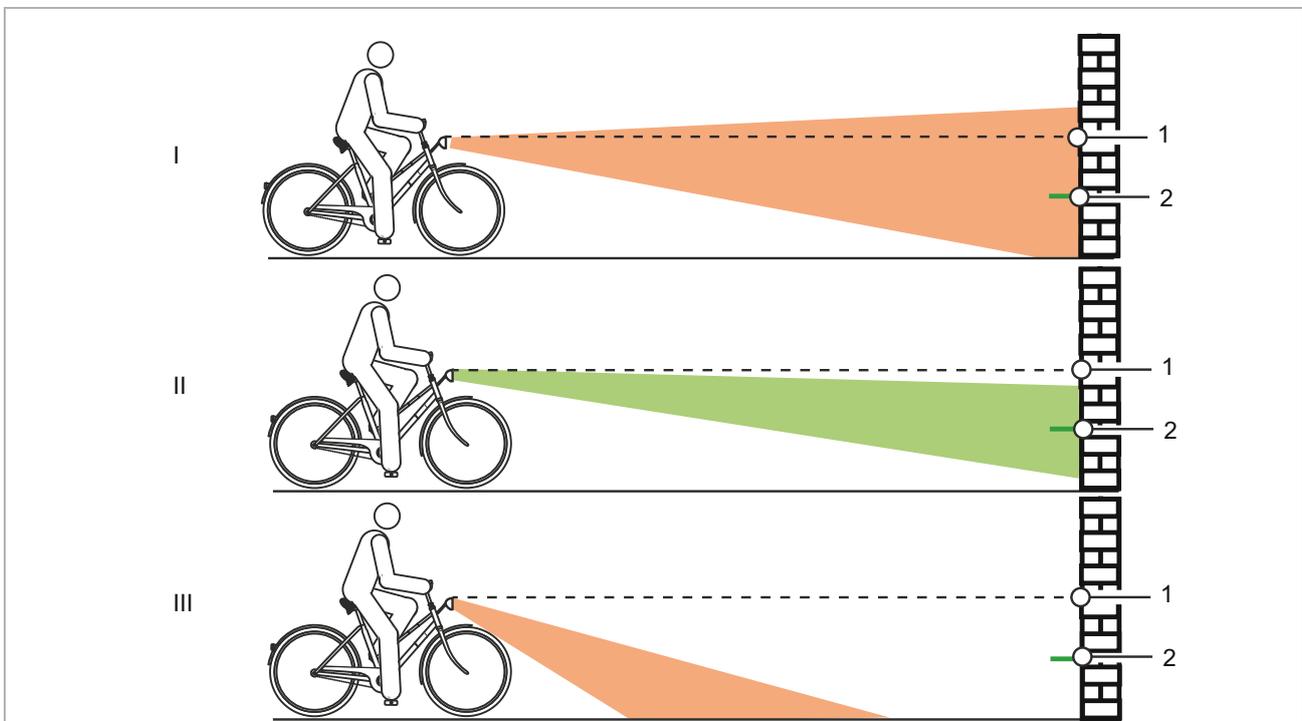


Figure 180: Light positioned too high (1), correctly (2) and too low (3)

- 8 Check the position of the light beam.
 - ▶ (I) if the upper edge of the light beam is above the headlight height mark (1), the riding light will dazzle. The headlight must be positioned lower.
 - ▶ (II) If the mid-point of the light beam is on or slightly below the mark showing half the height of the headlight (2), the lighting is optimally positioned.
 - ▶ (III) If the light beam is in front of the wall, move the headlight up.

6.5.17 Control panel

A smartphone with the BOSCH eBike Flow app installed is required to use all drive system functions.

6.5.17.1 Installing the Bosch eBike Flow app on the smartphone

- ✓ Minimum requirements for smartphones (see Section 3.1.5.2).

Smartphone type	
iPhone	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Download eBike Flow app from App Store for free
Android smartphone	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Download eBike Flow app from the Google Play Store for free

- 1 Scan the following code with your smartphone.



- ⇒ The BOSCH eBike Flow app will start to download in the smartphone.
- 2 Download the Bosch eBike Flow app onto the smartphone.
- ⇒ The BOSCH eBike Flow app can be used.

6.5.17.2 Pairing the System Controller control panel with a smartphone

- ✓ Installing the Bosch eBike Flow app on the smartphone (see Section 6.5.17.1).
 - ✓ Switching on the electric drive system (see Section 6.13.1).
 - ✓ The pedelec is stationary.
- 1 Start the BOSCH eBike Flow app.
 - 2 Select the **<My eBike>** tab in the BOSCH eBike Flow app.
 - 3 Select the **<Add new eBike device>** tab in the app.
 - 4 Press the On-Off button on the System Controller for longer than 3 seconds.
 - ⇒ The upper bar on the battery level indicator (control unit) will flash blue.
 - ⇒ The on-board computer will switch the Bluetooth® Low Energy connection on and change to pairing mode.
 - 5 Release the On-Off button on the pedelec.
 - 6 Confirm the connection prompt in the BOSCH eBike Flow app.
 - 7 Follow the instructions on the smartphone display.
 - ⇒ The on-board computer is now connected to the smartphone.
 - ⇒ The user data will be synchronised once the pairing process is complete.

6.5.17.3 Recording activities

- ✓ Pairing the System Controller control panel with a smartphone (see Section 6.5.17.2).
- 1 Agree to the storage of location data in the BOSCH eBike Flow app.
 - ⇒ The pedelec's locations will now be recorded in the BOSCH eBike Flow app.
 - 2 Agree to the capture and storage of location data in the BOSCH eBike Flow app.
 - ⇒ All the pedelec's activities will be stored and displayed on the platform and in the BOSCH eBike Flow app.

6.5.17.4 Adjusting the level of assistance

► Configure the level of assistance in the **<Settings>** menu option in the BOSCH eBike Flow app. Follow the instructions on the smartphone screen to do so.

⇒ The changed mode retains the position, name and colour on all on-board computers and operating elements.

You will find more information in the BOSCH eBike Flow app operating instructions.

6.5.17.5 Setting up the eBike Lock function

✓ Pairing the System Controller control panel with a smartphone (see Section 6.5.17.2).

✓ A user account has been added.

✓ No update is being installed on the pedelec.

✓ The pedelec is linked to the smartphone via Bluetooth®.

✓ The pedelec is stationary.

✓ The smartphone is connected to the Internet.

✓ The battery is sufficiently charged.

✓ The charging cable is not connected.

► Configure the eBike Lock function in the **<Settings>** menu option in the BOSCH eBike Flow app. Follow the instructions on the smartphone screen to do so.

⇒ The eBike Lock function is set up.

6.5.17.6 Deactivating the eBike Lock function

Always deactivate the eBike Lock function in the following cases:

- If a third party is being given temporary or permanent access to the pedelec
- The pedelec is taken in for servicing
- If the pedelec is being sold. The smartphone is in close proximity.

✓ Bluetooth® is enabled on the smartphone.

✓ The Bosch eBike Flow app is active in the background. The BOSCH eBike Flow app cannot be opened.

► Deactivate the eBike Lock function in the **<Settings>** menu option in the BOSCH eBike Flow app. Follow the instructions on the smartphone screen to do so.

⇒ The eBike Lock function is deactivated.

If the key is not verified on the smartphone immediately, the battery level indicator (control panel) and the level of assistance indicator (control panel) on the pedelec will flash white to indicate a search is being performed for the key.

If the key is found, the battery level indicator (control panel) will flash white. The last configured level of assistance will be displayed. If the key cannot be found on the smartphone, the pedelec drive system switches off. The indicators on the control panel go off.

As the smartphone is only used as a contactless key to switch on the pedelec, the battery and control panel can still be used on another, unblocked pedelec.

6.5.17.7 Update software

Software updates must be launched manually in the BOSCH eBike Flow app. The BOSCH eBike Flow app manages the software updates.

1 Open **Settings > My eBike > eBike update > Search for eBike update** in the BOSCH eBike Flow app.

⇒ Any available software updates will be indicated on the home screen in the BOSCH eBike Flow app.

2 Confirm download.

⇒ The new software is downloaded to the smartphone.

⇒ The smartphone then automatically transfers the files to the pedelec via Bluetooth. The process takes about 20-30 minutes. The pedelec can be used as normal during this time.

⇒ The battery level indicator (control panel) will flash green during updates to show how the update is progressing.
Read the software update card on the home screen in BOSCH eBike Flow app for more details and current progress.

⇒ When the transfer is complete, the **<Install now>** button will be displayed in the BOSCH eBike Flow app.

3 Click on the **<Install now>** button in the BOSCH eBike Flow app to confirm. The pedelec must be stationary during installation. You must not remove any components, such as the battery, from the electric system.

⇒ During installation, the pedelec will restart at least once and the connection with the BOSCH eBike Flow app will be lost as a result. Once connection is established, current progress will be displayed on the software update card on the home screen.

⇒ Installation is complete when the LEDs stop flashing.

6.5.17.8 Deleting the Bosch eBike Flow app from the smartphone

Delete the BOSCH eBike Flow app if you sell the pedelec.

6.5.18 SRAM AXS app

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

A smartphone with the SRAM AXS app installed is required to use all SRAM AXS switch system functions. The pedelec is connected to the app via a Bluetooth® connection.

The SRAM AXS app can be used to do the following tasks:

- Create a SRAM account
- Connect AXS components via Bluetooth
- Create and customise multiple bike profiles
- Monitor the pedelec's performance and operational availability
- Adapt the behaviour of AXS components to a specific riding style
- Assign user-defined actions to AXS components.

All AXS components must be coupled within the system if you wish to adapt them in the SRAM AXS app.

6.5.18.1 Downloading the SRAM AXS app

Smartphone type		
iPhone		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Download the SRAM AXS app from the App Store for free.
Android smartphone		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Download the SRAM AXS app from the Google Play Store for free.

6.5.18.2 Updating SRAM AXS and AXS component firmware

Notice

The rear derailleur may be damaged if the pedelec switches off during a firmware update on derailleurs with an extension cable.

- ▶ The motor must be switched on when updating the firmware.

Check regularly that the latest version of the SRAM AXS app and component firmware is installed to ensure optimum system performance and compatibility. Firmware updates are installed via the app.

6.5.18.3 Activating multiple shift function

The multiple shift function is disabled by default on SRAM Eagle AXS systems. The multiple shift function on the SRAM AXS controller must be deactivated when using Eagle chains, cassettes and AXS rear dérailleurs on pedelecs to protect the components from damage.

- ▶ Navigate to the system's drive settings in the SRAM AXS app.
 - ▶ Follow the instructions on the display.
- ⇒ The multiple shift function is activated.

6.6 Accessories

Not included in price

6.6.1 Child seat



Child seats may only be used with the vehicle manufacturer's approval and only if they are approved for use on e-bikes.

WARNING

Crash caused by incorrect child seat

Pannier racks with a maximum load capacity under 27 kg and the down tube are unsuitable for mounting child seats and may break. Such an incorrect position may cause a crash with serious injuries for the pedelec rider or child.

- ▶ Never attach a child seat to the saddle, handlebars or down tube.

CAUTION

Crash caused by improper handling

When using child seats, the pedelec's handling characteristics and stability change considerably. This can cause a loss of control, a crash and injuries.

- ▶ You should practice how to use the child seat safely before using the pedelec in public spaces.

Risk of crushing due to exposed springs

The child may crush his/her fingers on exposed springs or open mechanical parts of the saddle or the seat post.

- ▶ Never install saddles with exposed springs if a child seat is being used.
- ▶ Never install suspension seat posts with open mechanical parts or exposed springs if a child seat is being used.

Notice

- ▶ Observe the legal regulations on the use of child seats.
- ▶ Observe the operating and safety instructions for the child seat system.
- ▶ Never exceed the maximum permitted total weight.

The specialist dealer will advise you on which child seat system is suitable for the child and the pedelec.

The specialist dealer must install the child seat the first time to ensure that it is safely fitted.

When installing a child seat, it must be ensured that:

- the seat and the seat fastening are suitable for the pedelec
- all components are installed and securely fastened
- shift cables, brake cables, hydraulic and electrical cables are adjusted as necessary
- the pedelec rider has optimum freedom of movement
- the maximum permitted total weight of the pedelec is observed.

The specialist dealer will provide instruction on how to handle the pedelec and the child seat.

6.6.2 Trailer



Trailers may only be used with the vehicle manufacturer's approval and only if they are approved for use on e-bikes.



CAUTION

Crash caused by brake failure

The braking distance may be longer if the trailer is carrying excessive load. The long braking distance can cause a crash or an accident and injuries.

- ▶ Never exceed the specified trailer load.

Notice

- ▶ The *operating* and safety instructions for the trailer system must be observed.
- ▶ Observe the statutory regulations on the use of bicycle trailers.
- ▶ Only use type-approved coupling systems.

A pedelec which is approved for towing a trailer will bear an appropriate adhesive label. You may only use trailers with a tongue load and weight which do not exceed the permitted values.

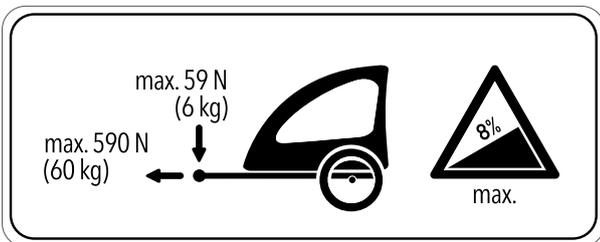


Figure 181: Trailer sign

The specialist dealer will advise you on which trailer system is suitable for the pedelec. The specialist dealer must install the trailer the first time to ensure that it is fitted safely.

6.6.3 Pannier rack



Front and rear pannier racks are only permitted with the vehicle manufacturer's approval and only if they are approved for use on e-bikes.

The specialist dealer will advise on choosing a suitable pannier rack.

The specialist dealer must install the pannier rack the first time to ensure that it is safely fitted.

When installing a pannier rack, the specialist dealer makes sure that the fastening mechanism is suitable for the pedelec and that all components are installed and firmly fastened. They will also ensure that shift cables, brake cables, hydraulic lines and electrical cables are adjusted as necessary, the person riding has optimum freedom of movement and the pedelec's maximum permitted total weight is not exceeded.

The specialist dealer will provide instruction on how to handle the pedelec and the pannier rack.

6.6.4 Front baskets



Take care with front baskets because their load distribution is not fixed. They are only permitted with the vehicle manufacturer's approval and only if they are approved for use on e-bikes.

6.6.5 Panniers and cargo boxes



Panniers and cargo boxes are permitted for existing pannier racks if they are approved for use on e-bikes.

- ▶ Pay attention when loading the pannier rack and ensure correct load distribution.
- ▶ The maximum permitted total weight must not be exceeded during use.
- ▶ Use a paint protection film when attaching panniers. This will reduce abrasion on paint and wear on components.

The following panniers and cargo boxes are recommended:

Description	Article number
Protective cover for electrical components	080-41000 ff
Panniers, system component	080-40946
Rear wheel basket, system component	051-20603
Bicycle box, system component*	080-40947

Table 54: Recommended panniers and cargo boxes

6.6.6 Bar ends



Bar ends are not permitted on pedelecs which are ridden exclusively off road as they are an accident hazard.

Handlebar ends are permitted on pedelecs used exclusively on public roads provided they are professionally fitted to face the front at a specialist shop and only if they are approved for use on e-bikes. They must not seriously alter load distribution.

6.6.7 Kickstands



Kickstands are permitted if they are able to bear the weight of the pedelec.

We recommend a parking stand into which either the front wheel or rear wheel can be inserted securely for pedelecs which do not have a kickstand.

6.6.8 Additional battery headlight



Fitting additional battery headlights is permitted provided they comply with the laws of the country where the pedelec will be ridden and if they are approved for use on e-bikes.

6.6.9 Smartphone holder

A holder is fitted to the stem for the SP Connect smartphone case.

- ✓ Observe the operating instructions for the smartphone and the SP Connect smartphone case.
- ✓ Use on tarmacked roads only.
- ✓ Protect smartphone against theft.
- ▶ To attach: insert the SP Connect smartphone case into the holder and turn 90° to the right.
- ▶ To release: turn the SP Connect smartphone case 90° to the left and remove.

6.6.10 Suspension fork coil spring

If the desired suspension fork sag cannot be achieved after adjustment, the coil spring assembly must be replaced with a softer or harder spring.

- ▶ Fit a softer coil spring assembly group to increase the sag.
- ▶ Fit a harder coil spring assembly group to decrease the sag.

6.7 Personal protective equipment and accessories for road safety

6.7.1 Riding in bike parks and off-road

Special protective equipment is mandatory when you ride in bike parks. You must wear a full-face helmet and complete protective equipment (full-face helmet, safety jacket and knee or shin pads).

- ▶ Before going to a bike park, make sure you are familiar with all specifications on the required protective clothing and observe them.

When you ride off road, the type of personal protective equipment depends on the route and the weather conditions. The clothing specified in Section 2.5 should be regarded as a minimum requirement.

6.7.2 Riding on public roads

The supplied mountain bike is not suitable for use on public roads. Before you use the pedelec on public roads, the pedelec must be adapted in accordance with the applicable laws. Likewise, off-road tyres must be exchanged for road tyres. The following requirements must be met for riding a pedelec safely on public roads.

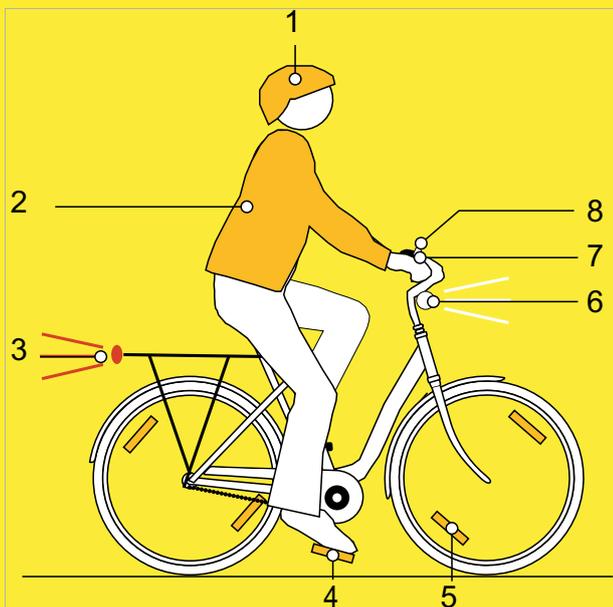


Figure 182: Road safety

- 1 The helmet must have a reflective strip or a light in a clearly visible colour.
- 2 **Cycle clothing** is essential at all times of year. Clothing should be retroreflective or as light as possible. Fluorescent materials are also suitable. High-visibility jackets and straps on your upper body ensure even greater safety. Never wear a skirt. Always wear trousers which reach down to your ankles instead.
- 3 The **large red reflector** with a "Z" registration mark and the **red rear light** must be clean. The rear light is attached high enough so that cars can see it (minimum height 25 cm). The rear light must work.
- 4 The two **reflectors on the two non-slip pedals** must be clean.
- 5 The **yellow spoke reflectors** on both wheel or the **white, fluorescent surface** on both wheels must be clean.
- 6 The **white front light** must work and must be positioned so that it does not dazzle other road users. The white front light and the **white reflector** must be clean at all times.
- 7 The **two separate brakes** on the pedelec must work at all times.
- 8 The **clear sounding bell** must be fitted and must work.

6.8 Before each ride

- ▶ Check pedelec before each ride; see Section [7.1](#).

Checklist before each ride		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check everything is sufficiently clean.	See Section 7.2
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check guards.	See Section 7.1.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check battery to ensure it is firmly in place.	See Section 6.17.2
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check lights.	See Section 7.1.13
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check brake.	See Section 7.1.14
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check suspension seat post.	See Section 7.1.9
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check pannier rack.	See Section 7.1.5
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check bell.	See Section 7.1.10
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check handles.	See Section 7.1.11
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check rear frame damper.	See Section 7.1.4
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check frame.	See Section 7.1.2
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check wheel concentricity.	See Section 7.1.7
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check quick releases.	See Section 7.1.8
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check mudguards.	See Section 7.1.6
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check USB cover.	See Section 7.1.12

- ▶ Be alert to any unusual noises, vibrations or odours while riding. Be alert to any unusual operating sensations when braking, pedalling or steering. This indicates material fatigue.
- ⇒ Take pedelec out of service if there are any deviations from the “Before each ride” checklist or any unusual behaviour. Contact specialist dealer.

6.8.1 Adjusting the rear frame damper

- Before each ride, adjust the suspension and/or damping to the terrain if you have a rear frame damper.

Terrain	Position
Suspension	
Setting off	Open
Uphill or tarmacked roads	Lock out
Energy saved while riding on roads and/or for maximum pedalling efficiency on flat or smooth terrain	Threshold
Damping	
Downhill rides and terrain	Soft
Tarmacked roads	Hard

6.8.1.1 Adjusting the rear frame damper suspension

The suspension setting on the rear frame damper is optional and can have up to three settings:

- Open
- Locked out
- Threshold (optional)

Lockout (optional)

The suspension system absorbs a great deal of motor and muscle power during rides uphill or on optimally tarmacked roads. This increases energy consumption and reduces propulsion. It thus makes sense to lock the suspension on tarmacked roads and when riding uphill.

Threshold (optional)

Threshold mode increases drive efficiency over level terrain.

The threshold setting can be used to improve pedalling efficiency over flat, hilly, level or slightly rugged terrain. In threshold mode, higher pedelec speeds lead to greater impact force when a pedelec hits a bump, causing the suspension fork to deflect, and the bump is absorbed.

6.8.1.2 Lock out the ROCKSHOX rear frame damper

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- ✓ Adjusting the rear frame damper rebound damper (see Section 6.5.15).
- ✓ The pedelec is stationary.

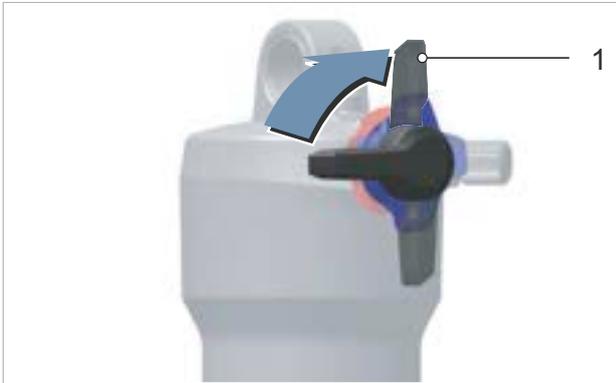


Figure 183: The compression adjuster's (black) closed position (1)

- ▶ Place locking lever (rear frame damper) into the closed position (1).
- ⇒ The rear frame damper is locked.

6.8.1.3 Opening the ROCKSHOX rear frame damper

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- ✓ Adjusting the rear frame damper rebound damper (see Section 6.5.15).
- ✓ The pedelec is stationary.

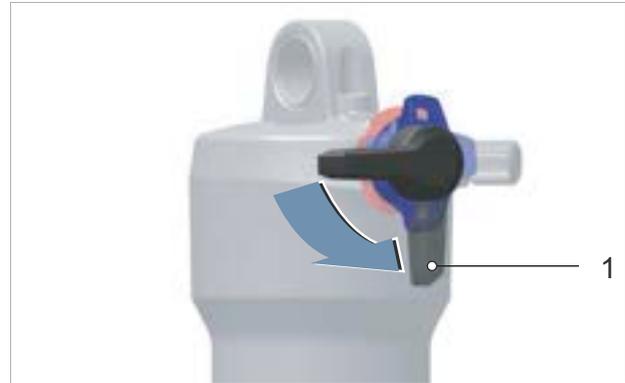


Figure 184: The compression adjuster's (black) open position (1)

- ▶ Place **locking lever (rear frame damper)** in the open position (1).
- ⇒ The rear frame damper is open.

6.8.1.4 Adjusting the ROCKSHOX rear frame damper threshold

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- ✓ The pedelec's sag is configured.
- ✓ The pedelec's rebound damping has been set.
- ✓ The pedelec is stationary.

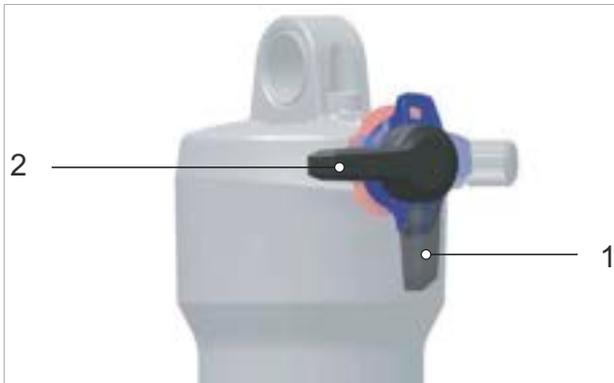


Figure 185: Open position (1) and position of the threshold (2) on the rear frame damper (black)

- ▶ Place **locking lever (rear frame damper)** in the threshold (2) position.

⇒ The threshold mode is enabled.

- ▶ To increase sensitivity to small bumps, turn **compression adjuster** anti-clockwise to decrease damping and hardness and increase the deflection speed.



Figure 186: Adjust the compression adjuster so that it is harder

6.8.2 Adjusting the rear frame damper compression damper

When optimally adjusted, the rear frame damper deflects quickly and unhindered when the bike hits bumps and absorbs a bump. Traction is retained (blue line).

The saddle rises slightly when absorbing a bump (green line).

The compression damper has two settings:

- Hard
- Soft



Figure 187: Optimum rear frame damper ride performance over bumps

Hard

A compression damper set to hard causes the rear frame damper to move higher in the deflection range. This makes it easier to improve efficiency and maintain momentum when pedalling or riding over uniformly hilly terrain and around bends.

Deflection feels somewhat harder on bumpy terrain.

Soft

Allows the damper to deflect quickly and easily. This makes it easier to maintain speed and momentum when riding over bumpy terrain.

Deflection feels somewhat less hard on bumpy terrain.

6.8.2.1 Adjusting the ROCKSHOX compression damper

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

The position and shape of the compression adjuster depends on the model. ROCKSHOX **compression adjusters (rear frame damper)** are always blue.

The ideal setting for the rebound damper has been achieved when the rebound movement of the rear wheel feels comparable to that of the front wheel.

- ✓ The pedelec's sag is configured.
- ✓ The pedelec's rebound damping has been set.

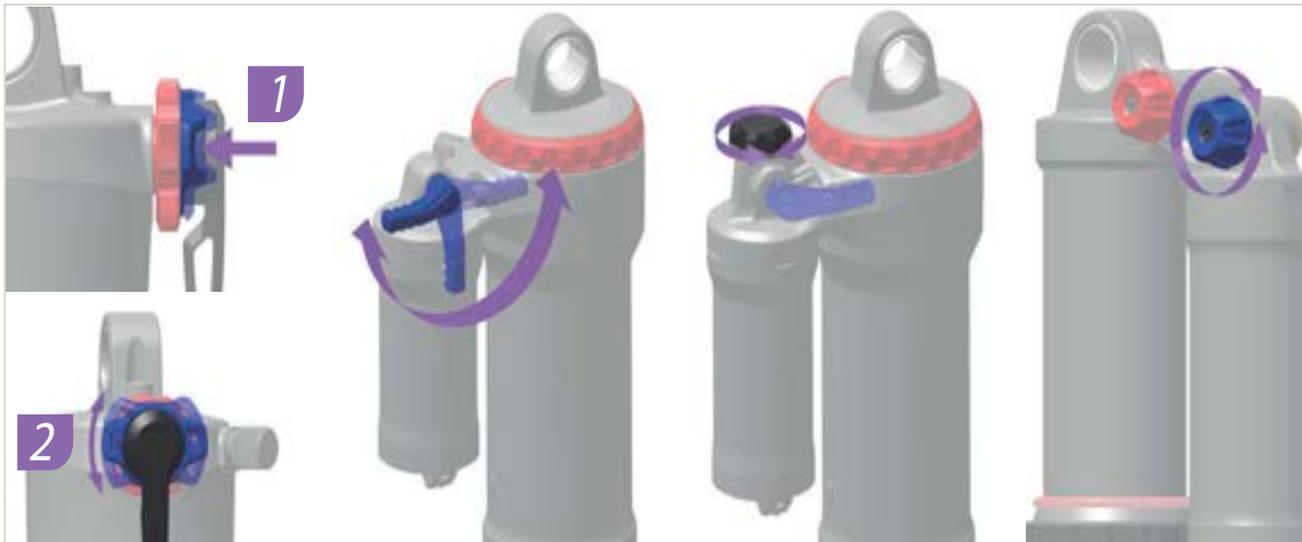


Figure 188: Position and shape of ROCKSHOX compression adjusters on different models

Setting to hard

- 1 Place **compression adjuster (rear frame damper)** in the middle position.
 - 2 Ride the pedelec over a small obstacle.
 - 3 Turn **compression adjuster (rear frame damper)** clockwise.
- ⇒ The damping and compression hardness is increased. The deflection stroke speed is reduced.

Setting to soft

- 1 Place **compression adjuster (rear frame damper)** in the middle position.
 - 2 Ride the pedelec over a small obstacle.
 - 3 Turn **compression adjuster (rear frame damper)** anti-clockwise.
- ⇒ The damping and compression hardness is reduced. The deflection stroke speed is increased.

6.8.2.2 Adjusting the SR SUNTOUR rear frame damper 2C compression damper

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment



Crash caused by damaged rear frame damper

The rear frame damper can be damaged if it is compressed under high stress load. This may lead to an accident with injuries.

- ▶ Never place the rear frame damper in the hard [FIRM] setting on rough terrain or when the suspension is under heavy load.

The SR SUNTUR EDGE plus 2CR rear frame dampers have a 2C compression damper with two settings: OPEN and FIRM.

Soft setting [OPEN]

The compression damping is reduced in the OPEN setting. The fluid flows easily through the

damper circuit. As a result, the rear frame damper responds with maximum sensitivity to the ground.

The OPEN setting is suitable for light riders or for dry, dusty terrain where maximum traction is required.

Hard setting [FIRM]

The FIRM setting does not lock out the rear frame damper. However, the FIRM setting provides significant resistance to weight and deflection caused by pedal movement.

The FIRM setting is ideal when pedalling in a standing position to reduce unwanted oscillation or when riding downhill where maximum assistance is required.

Terrain	Setting	
	OPEN	FIRM
Rough downhill riding	x	
Smooth downhill riding	x	
Technical uphill riding		x
Smooth ascent		x
Sandy downhill riding	x	
Sandy uphill riding		x
Muddy downhill riding	x	
Muddy uphill riding		x

- ▶ Set the **compression lever (rear frame damper)** to either the soft setting [OPEN] or the hard setting [FIRM].



Table 55: Compression lever (rear frame damper) (1) on the EDGE plus 2CR rear frame damper.

6.8.2.3 Adjusting the SR SUNTOUR rear frame damper low-speed compression damper

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

SR SUNTUR EDGE LOR8 rear frame dampers feature a low-speed damper with two settings: OPEN and FIRM. The rear frame damper can be continuously adjusted between the two settings.

Soft setting [OPEN]

In the OPEN setting, the rear frame damper responds rapidly and sensitively to the ground surface while offering the greatest possible traction.

The OPEN setting is suitable for terrain with many small, rapid bumps.

The OPEN setting is not suitable on terrain with large bumps and impacts against edges. The risk of a puncture is very high in such cases.

Hard setting [FIRM]

The rear frame damper moves more slowly during deflection in the FIRM setting. The hard setting is equivalent to a lockout of 80%.

The FIRM setting is suitable for terrain with large bumps and impacts against angular edges.

The FIRM setting is unsuitable on terrain with small, rapid bumps. The pedelec has poor traction in such cases. Moreover, the rear frame damper will also not use its full deflection.

Terrain	Setting		
	FIRM	Intermediate setting	OPEN
Many small, rapid bumps	x	x	
Large bumps and impacts against angular bumps		x	x

- Set the **compression lever (rear frame damper)** to the soft setting [OPEN], the hard setting [FIRM] or in continuously variable settings between the two.

EDGE LOR8



Table 56: Low-speed lever (rear frame damper) (1) on the EDGE LOR8 rear frame damper.

6.9 Using the saddle

- ▶ Do not wear studded jeans as these can damage the saddle covering.
- ▶ Wear dark clothes for your first few rides as new leather saddles can stain clothing.

Riders often experience pain in the sitting bones, especially beginners or at the start of the season, after a longer break. The periosteum around the sitting bones is irritated as it is unaccustomed to the chafing. To reduce chafing:

- ▶ Wear cycling shorts with shock-absorbing seat padding.
 - ▶ Use a chamois cream or ointment.
- ⇒ The sensation of pain is reduced after five to six rides, although it may increase again after two to three weeks of riding.

6.9.1 Using the leather saddle

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

Sunlight and UV light tarnish the colour and cause the leather to dry out and fade.

- ▶ Park pedelec in the shade.
- ▶ Always use a saddle cover.

Moisture may cause the leather to detach from material beneath and mould may form.

- ▶ If the leather saddle gets wet, dry saddle completely.
- ▶ Always use a saddle cover.

6.9.2 Adjust saddle height

6.9.2.1 Lowering the saddle

- 1 Press down the seat post remote control and hold. Apply a strong force to the saddle (with your hand or by sitting on it).

⇒ The saddle lowers.

- 2 Release the seat post remote control once you have reached the required saddle height.

6.9.2.2 Raising the saddle

- 1 Press down the seat post remote control and hold. Remove any pressure from the saddle.

⇒ The saddle rises.

- 2 Release the seat post remote control once you have reached the required saddle height.

6.10 Using the pedals

- ▶ The ball of the foot is placed on the pedal when riding and pedalling.

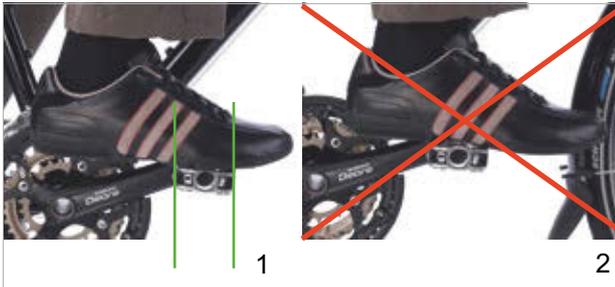


Figure 189: Correct (1) and incorrect (2) foot position on the pedal

6.11 Using the handlebars

- ▶ Wear heavily padded cycling gloves.
 - ⇒ This helps protect sensitive areas of your palms.
- ▶ Vary your grip position continuously while riding.
 - ⇒ This prevents overstraining and fatigue in your hands.

6.11.1 Using leather handles

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

Sweat and grease from the skin are two of the greatest enemies of leather. They penetrate the surface of leather and cause it to disintegrate more quickly, meaning the leather can soften and abrade.

- ▶ Wear gloves.

Sunlight and UV light damage the colour and can cause the leather to dry out and fade.

- ▶ Park pedelec in the shade.

Moisture may cause the leather to detach from material beneath and mould may form.

- ▶ If the leather handles get wet, dry handles completely.

6.12 Using the battery

- ✓ Switching off the electric drive system (see Section 6.13.2).

6.12.1 Using the integrated battery

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

6.12.1.1 Removing the integrated battery

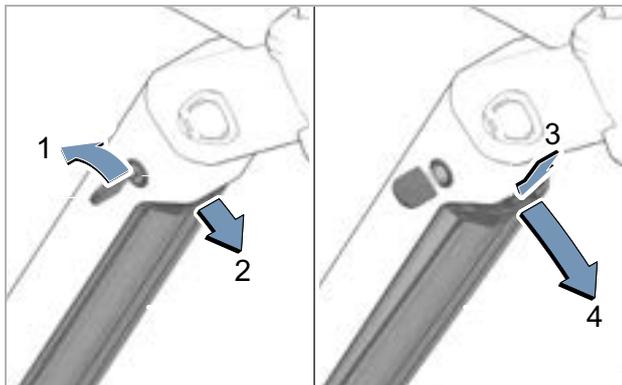


Figure 190: Removing the integrated battery

- 1 Open battery lock with battery key (1).
 - ⇒ The battery is released and falls into the retainer guard (2).
- 2 Hold the battery in your hand from below. Use the other hand to push on the retainer guard from above (3).
 - ⇒ The battery is released and falls into the hand (4).
- 3 Remove the battery from the frame.
- 4 Remove the battery key from the battery lock.

6.12.1.2 Inserting the integrated battery

- ✓ The key is inserted in the lock.
- ✓ The lock is unlocked.

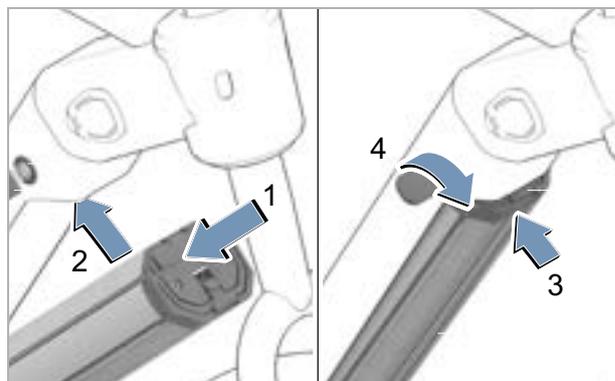


Figure 191: Inserting the integrated battery

- 1 Place the battery into the lower mount with the contacts facing the front (1).
- 2 Flip the battery upwards so that the battery is held by the retainer guard (2).
- 3 Keep the lock open with the key.
- 4 Push the battery upwards (3).
 - ⇒ The battery can be heard locking into place.
- 5 Check battery to ensure it is firmly in place on all sides.
- 6 Lock the battery with the battery key; otherwise, the battery may fall out of the mount when you open the see (4).
- 7 Remove the battery key from the battery lock.
- 8 Check the battery to ensure it is firmly in place before each ride.

6.12.2 Frame battery

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

6.12.2.1 Removing the frame battery

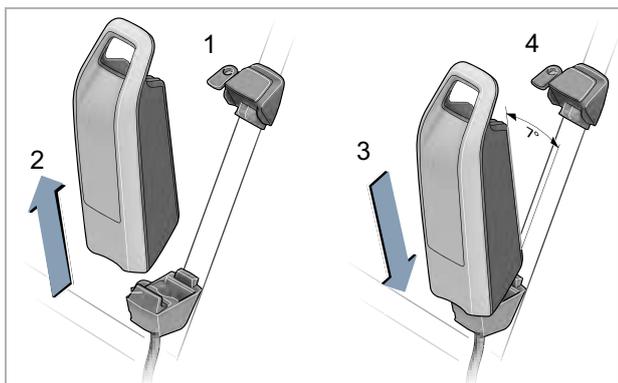


Figure 192: Removing and inserting the frame battery

- 1 Open battery lock with battery key (1).
- 2 Tip the battery out of the top section of the frame battery mount.
- 3 Pull from the frame battery mount (2).

6.12.2.2 Inserting the frame battery

- 1 Place the battery on the contacts in the lower section of the frame battery mount (3).
 - 2 Remove the battery key from the battery lock (4).
 - 3 Tip the battery into the top section of the frame battery mount until it will go no further.
- ⇒ There is an audible clicking noise.
- 4 Check the battery to make sure it is firmly in place.

6.12.3 Charging the battery

The battery can remain on the pedelec or can be removed for charging. Interrupting the charging process does not damage the battery. The battery is fitted with a temperature monitoring system which only allows charging within a temperature range between 0 °C and 40 °C.

- ✓ The ambient temperature during the charging process lies within the range between 0 °C to 40 °C.

- 1 Remove the cable connection cover if necessary.
- 2 Connect the mains plug of the charger to a normal domestic, grounded socket.

Connection data

230 V, 50 Hz

Notice

- ▶ Check that mains voltage! The power source voltage must match the voltage indicated on the charger nameplate. Chargers labelled 230 V may be operated at 220 V.

- 3 Connect the charging cable to the battery's charging port.

- ⇒ The charging process starts automatically.
- ⇒ The battery level indicator shows the battery level during charging. When the drive system is switched on, the *on-board computer* displays the charging process.

Notice

If an error occurs during the charging process, a system message is displayed.

- ▶ Remove the charger and battery from operation immediately and follow the instructions.

- ⇒ Charging is complete when the LEDs on the battery level indicator go out.
- 4 Once charging is complete, disconnect the battery from the charger.
 - 5 Disconnect the charger from the mains.

6.13 Using the electric drive system

6.13.1 Switching on the electric drive system



Crash caused by lack of readiness for braking

When it is switched on, the drive system can be activated by applying force to the pedals. There is a risk of a crash if the drive is activated unintentionally and the brake is not reached.

- ▶ Never switch on the electric drive system, or switch it off immediately, if the brake cannot be reached safely and reliably.

- ✓ A sufficiently charged battery has been inserted into the pedelec.
- ✓ The battery is firmly positioned and locked. The battery key has been removed.
- ✓ The speed sensor is connected correctly.
- ▶ Press the **On-Off button (control panel)** briefly (< 3 seconds).



Figure 193: Position of the On-Off button on the System Controller

- ⇒ After the start animation, the battery level is displayed on the battery level indicator (control panel) and the configured level of assistance is shown in colour on the System Controller level of assistance indicator.
- ⇒ The pedelec is ready to ride.

If the drive system is switched on, the drive is activated as soon as the pedals are moved with sufficient force (except if the selected level of

assistance of assistance is OFF). The motor power is based on the level of assistance of assistance selected on the control panel.

6.13.1.1 Activating the eBike Lock function (optional)

- ✓ The configured smartphone is switched on.
- ✓ The smartphone battery is charged sufficiently.
- ✓ The smartphone is directly next to the control panel.
- ⇒ The eBike Lock function is deactivated automatically.
- ⇒ The drive unit emits two acoustic signals.

6.13.2 Switching off the electric drive system

As soon as the rider stops pushing the pedals in normal mode or reaches a speed of 25 km/h, the drive system switches off the assistance system. The assistance system starts up again when you push the pedals and your speed is less than 25 km/h.

There is also the option of switching the drive system off manually on the control panel.

- ▶ Press the **On-Off button (control panel)** briefly (< 3 seconds).
- ⇒ The battery level indicator (control panel) and the System Controller level of assistance indicator turn off.
- ⇒ The electric drive system will switch off automatically ten minutes after the last command and no power has been required from the electric drive system.
- ⇒ The pedelec is switched off.

6.14 Using the control panels

Notice

- ▶ Never use the control panels as a handle. If the control panels are used to lift the pedelec, components can become irreparably damaged.

6.14.1 Setting the level of assistance

Mini Remote

- ▶ Press the **plus button** briefly (<1 second).
⇒ The assistance is increased.
- ▶ Press the **minus button** briefly (<1 second).
⇒ The assistance is reduced.

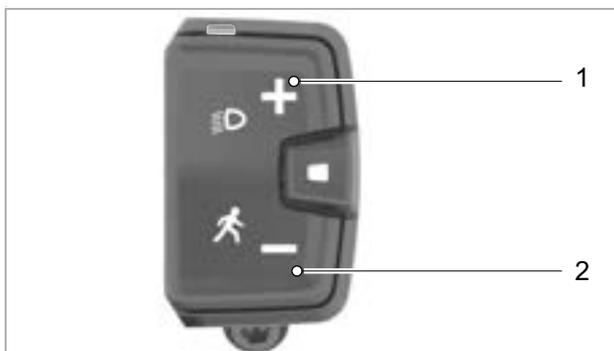


Figure 194: Position of the plus (1) and minus (2) buttons

System Controller

- ▶ Press the **mode button** briefly (<1 second).
⇒ The assistance is increased.
- ▶ Press the **mode button** longer than 1 second.
⇒ The assistance is reduced.



Figure 195: Position of the mode button

6.14.2 Using the push assist system

CAUTION

Injury from pedals or wheels

The pedals and the drive wheel turn when the push assist system is used. There is a risk of injury if the pedelec wheels are not in contact with the ground when the push assist system is used (e.g. when carrying the pedelec up stairs or when placing it on a bicycle rack).

- ▶ Only use the push assist mode when pushing the pedelec.
- ▶ You must steer the pedelec securely with both hands when using push assist.
- ▶ Allow for enough freedom of movement for the pedals.

- ✓ We recommend using first gear for cycling uphill to protect the drive.



Figure 196: Position of push assist button (1)

- 1 Press **Push assist button** for longer than 1 seconds. Hold down the button.
⇒ The battery level indicator (control panel) goes out and a white running light in the direction of travel indicates push assist is ready.
- 2 One of the following actions must be taken within the next 10 seconds:
 - ▶ Push pedelec forwards.
 - ▶ Make a weaving movement with the pedelec.

-
- ⇒ The push assist is activated. The continuous white bars change colour to ice blue.
 - ⇒ The motor starts to push.
 - 3** Release **push assist button** on the control panel to switch off push assist.
 - ⇒ The hill hold function is activated. The hill hold function prevents the pedelec from rolling backwards for about ten seconds without the rider needing to apply the brake. The 10 second countdown starts as soon as the minus button is released.
 - ⇒ The countdown is optionally shown on the display at hand.
 - ▶ **Press the push assist button within 10 seconds** to reactivate motor assistance.
 - ▶ If motor assistance deactivates within 10 seconds, the push assist function and the hill hold function turn off automatically.

Push assist will also switch off automatically if

- the rear wheel blocks
- speed bumps cannot be ridden over
- a part of the body is blocking the bicycle crank
- an obstacle turns the crank further
- the rider pedals
- the **plus button** or **On-Off button** is pressed.

6.15 Brake

WARNING

Crash caused by brake failure

Oil or lubricant on the brake disc in a disc brake or on the rim of a rim brake can cause the brake to fail completely. This may cause a crash with serious injuries.

- ▶ Never allow oil or lubricant to come into contact with the brake disc or brake linings or on the rim of a rim brake.
- ▶ If the brake linings have come into contact with oil or lubricant, contact specialist dealer to have the components cleaned or replaced.

If the brakes are applied continuously for a long time (e.g. while riding downhill for a long time), the fluid in the brake system may heat up. This may create a vapour bubble. This will cause air bubbles or water contained in the brake system to expand. This may suddenly make the lever travel wider. This may cause a crash with serious injuries.

- ▶ Release the brake regularly when riding downhill for a longer period of time.
- ▶ Use the front and rear wheel brakes alternately.

The motor drive force is shut off during the ride as soon as the rider no longer is no longer pedalling. The drive system does not switch off when braking.

- ▶ In order to achieve optimum braking results, do not pedal while braking.

6.15.1 Using the brake lever

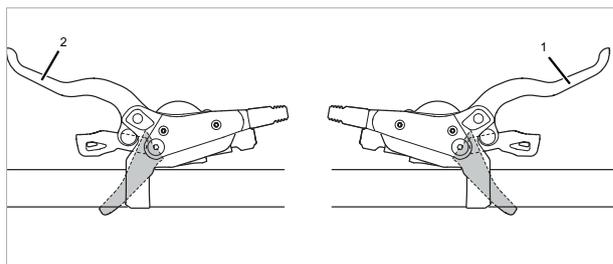


Figure 197: Front (2) and rear (1) brake lever – Shimano brake used as an example

- ▶ Push the left *brake lever* to apply the front wheel brake.
- ▶ Pull the right-hand brake lever to apply the rear wheel brake.

6.16 Gear shift

The selection of the appropriate gear is a prerequisite for a physically comfortable ride and making sure that the electric drive system functions properly. The ideal pedalling frequency is between 70 and 80 revolutions per minute.

- ▶ Stop pedalling briefly when changing gears. This makes it easier to switch gears and reduces wear on the drivetrain.

6.16.1 Using the derailleur gears

The speed and range can be increased while applying the same force if you select the right gear.

- ✓ Stop pedalling briefly when changing gears. This makes it easier to switch gears and reduces wear on the drivetrain. However, keep the crank moving while switching gears.

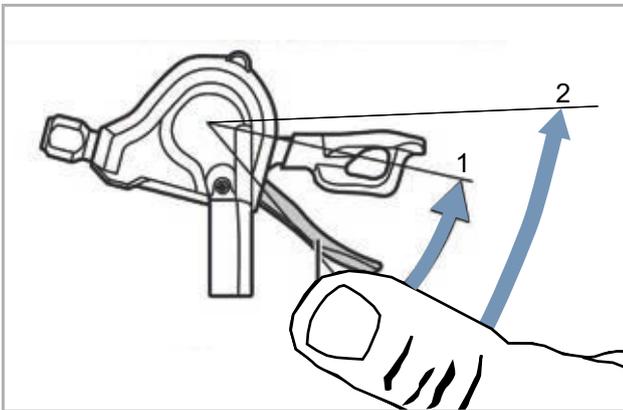


Figure 198: Switching gears with lever A, using gear shift SL-M315 as an example

Lever A switches up from the smallest sprocket to the largest sprocket.

- ▶ Place shifter A in position 1.
- ⇒ System shifts one sprocket higher.
- ▶ Place shifter A in position 2.
- ⇒ System shifts two pinions higher.

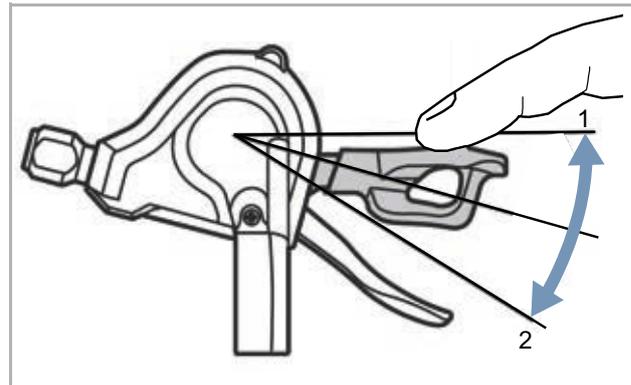


Figure 199: Switching gears with lever B, using gear shift SL-M315 as an example

Lever B switches down from the largest sprocket to the smallest sprocket. There are two ways to switch down a gear:

- ▶ Place shifter B in position 1.
- ⇒ System shifts one sprocket lower.
- ▶ Place shifter B in position 2.
- ⇒ System shifts one sprocket lower.

Switching gears

- ▶ Select the appropriate gear with the gear shift unit.
- ⇒ The gear shift switches gear.
- ⇒ The shifter returns to its original position.
- ▶ Clean and lubricate the rear derailleur if gear changes block.

6.16.2 Switching the SHIMANO Rapidfire derailleur gears

The speed and range can be increased while applying the same force if you select the right gear.

- ✓ Stop pedalling briefly when changing gears. This makes it easier to switch gears and reduces wear on the drivetrain. However, keep the crank moving while switching gears.

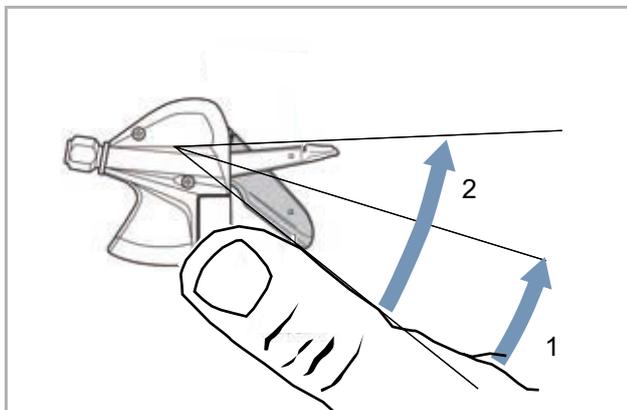


Figure 200: Switching gears with lever A, using gear shift SL-M315 as an example

Lever A switches from a smaller sprocket to a larger one. The number of pinions switched depends on the selected position of lever A.

- ▶ Place shifter A in position 1.
- ⇒ System shifts one sprocket higher.
- ▶ Place shifter A in position 2.
- ⇒ System shifts two pinions higher.

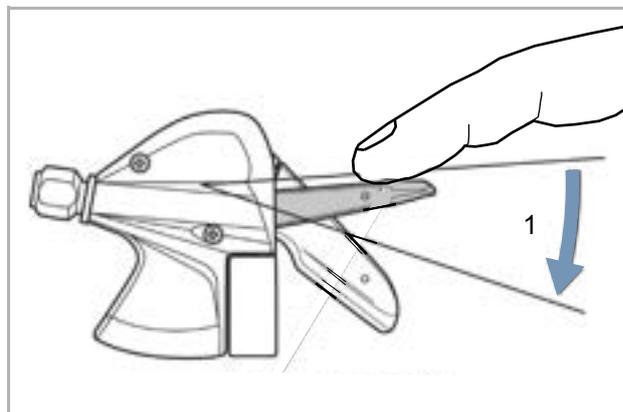


Figure 201: Switching gears with lever B, using gear shift SL-M315 as an example

Lever B switches from a larger sprocket to a smaller one.

- ▶ Place shifter B in position 1.
- ⇒ System shifts one sprocket lower.

Switching gears

- ▶ Select the appropriate gear with the gear shift unit.
- ⇒ The gear shift switches gear.
- ⇒ The shifter returns to its original position.
- ▶ Clean and lubricate the rear derailleur if gear changes block.

6.16.3 Switching SRAM AXS derailleur gears

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

The speed and range can be increased while applying the same force if you select the right gear.

- ✓ Stop pedalling briefly when changing gears. This makes it easier to switch gears and reduces wear on the drivetrain. However, keep the crank moving while switching gears.



Figure 202: Shifting up (1)

The **rocker switch** shifts from smaller to larger sprockets when pressed down. The number of sprockets which are switched depends on how long the **rocker switch** is pressed.

Change up

- ▶ Press the rocker switch (1) downwards.
- ⇒ System shifts one sprocket higher.
- ▶ Keep rocker switch pressed down.
- ⇒ The system shifts two sprockets higher.

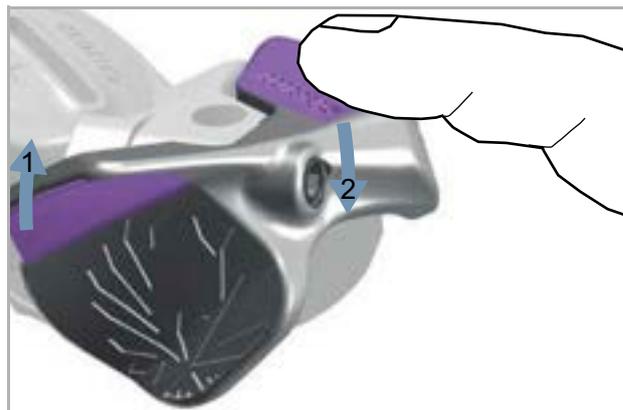


Figure 203: Shifting down on the rocker switch (1) or on the front part of the rocker switch (2)

The **rocker switch** shifts from larger to smaller sprockets when pressed upwards. The number of sprockets which are switched depends on how long the **rocker switch** is pressed.

Changing down

- ▶ Press the **rocker switch** (1) upwards or the **front part of the rocker switch** (2) downwards.
- ⇒ System shifts one sprocket lower.
- ▶ Hold the **rocker switch** (1) pressed upwards or the **front part of the rocker switch** (2) downwards.
- ⇒ The system shifts down several sprockets.

6.17 Adjusting the suspension fork

- Adjusting the suspension and damping on the suspension fork or on the remote control (suspension fork) while riding:

Use	Position
Suspension	
Downhill rides and uneven terrain	Open or OPEN
Flat, hilly, even or slightly bumpy terrain or uneven roads	Threshold or medium position
Uphill or tarmacked roads	Lock out or LOCK
Damping	
Bumpy terrain	Soft
Uniformly hilly terrain and around bends	Hard

6.17.1 Adjusting suspension fork suspension

Lock

Some suspension forks thus feature a lockout on the fork crown or a remote lockout on the handlebars.

A suspension system is designed to cushion and compensate for unevenness on a surface whether the user is riding on bumpy cycle paths, dirt roads or off road. A suspension system absorbs great deal of motor and muscle power during rides uphill or on optimally tarmacked roads. This increases energy consumption and reduces propulsion. It thus makes sense to lock the suspension on tarmacked roads and when riding uphill.

The lockout setting prevents the suspension fork from deflecting until there is a strong impact force. The suspension fork deflects when a very strong impact or downward movement occurs.

Threshold (optional)

Just like the lockout, the threshold mode prevents the suspension fork from deflecting. The suspension fork deflects when a medium or strong impact or downward force occurs.

6.17.1.1 Locking the SR SUNTOUR suspension fork

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

LORC-PCS LORC	LOR	LO	HLO	NLO
				

Table 57: Lockout on the fork crown on SR Suntour suspension forks

▶ Turn **lockout** (1) on the fork crown clockwise to LOCK.

⇒ The suspension fork is blocked.

▶ Turn **lockout** (1) on the fork crown anticlockwise to OPEN.

⇒ The suspension fork is open.

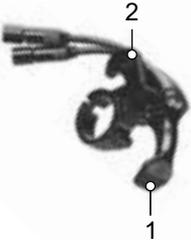
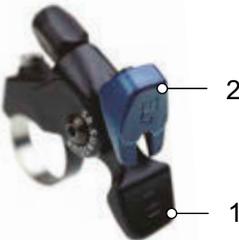
RL22-DUAL-L-2C-22	RL22-SINGLE-L-2C-22	RL22-SINGLE-U-2C-22 RL22-SINGLE-U-2C-32	SL9SC-RLO
			

Table 58: SR Suntour suspension fork lockout on the handlebars

▶ Press **locking lever** (1) on the handlebars.

⇒ The suspension fork is blocked.

▶ Press **release lever** (2) on the handlebars.

⇒ The suspension fork is open.

6.17.1.2 Locking the ROCKSHOX suspension fork out

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

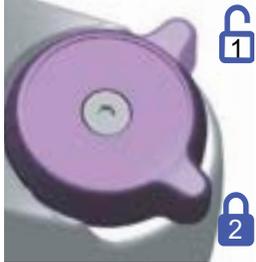
RLC	RL	RL	Race Day Damper	RLC R
				
RL/TK	RL/TK (Paragon)			
				

Table 59: Lockout on the fork crown on ROCKSHOX suspension forks

Opening the suspension

- ▶ Turn **lockout** on the fork crown anticlockwise to position 1 or
 - ▶ Press the **locking lever** on the handlebars.
- ⇒ The suspension fork is open.

Locking the suspension

- ▶ Turn **lockout** on the fork crown clockwise to position 2 or
 - ▶ Press the **unlocking lever** on the handlebars.
- ⇒ The suspension fork is blocked.
- ▶ Press **release lever** (2) on the handlebars.
- ⇒ The suspension fork is open.

6.17.1.3 Adjusting the ROCKSHOX suspension fork threshold

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

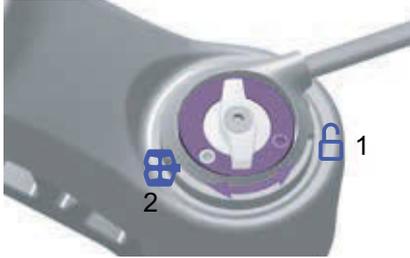
RCT3	RTCT R
	

Table 60: ROCKSHOX threshold (2) setting on the fork crown

Adjusting the threshold

► **Lockout** at Position 2 on the fork crown.

⇒ The threshold mode is enabled.

6.17.2 Adjusting suspension fork damping

The compression adjuster enables you to make quick adjustments to the suspension behaviour to suit changes in terrain. It is intended for adjustments made during the ride.

It is a good idea to use the compression damper on:

- Uneven surfaces during shifts in weight, crossings and cornering
- Uniform impacts caused by bumps and during braking

Hard

A compression damper set to hard causes the suspension fork to move higher in the deflection range. This makes it easier for the rider to improve efficiency and maintain momentum over uniformly hilly terrain and around bends.

Deflection feels somewhat harder on bumpy terrain.

Soft

A compression damper set to soft allows the suspension fork to deflect quickly and easily. This makes it easier to maintain speed and momentum when riding on bumpy terrain.

Deflection may feel somewhat less hard on more rugged terrain.



Figure 204: Compression damper set to hard and soft

6.17.2.1 Using ROCKSHOX high-speed compression damping

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

The high-speed damper is effective for:

- stronger impacts
- small, rapid impacts (e.g. stairs)
- landings after quick, successive jumps.

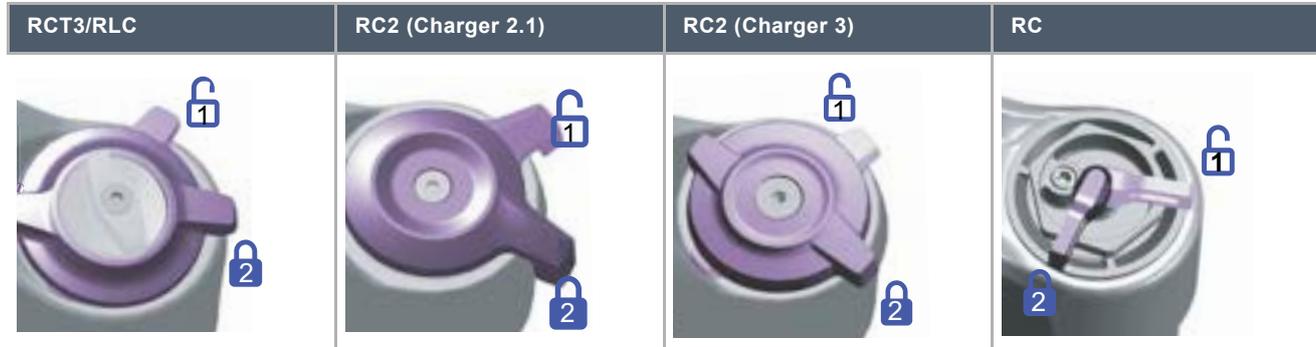


Table 61: High-speed lever (1) on the ROCKSHOX suspension fork crown

Setting the high-speed damper to hard

- ▶ Turn **high-speed lever (1)** on the crown clockwise gradually.
- ⇒ The high-speed compression damper is placed in a harder setting.

Setting the high-speed damper to soft

- ▶ Turn **high-speed lever (1)** on the crown anticlockwise gradually.
- ⇒ The high-speed compression damper is placed in a softer setting.

6.17.2.2 Using SR SUNTOUR high-speed compression damping

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

The high-speed damper is effective for:

- stronger impacts
- small, rapid impacts (e.g. stairs)
- landings after quick, successive jumps.

R2C2-PCS
R2C2
RC2
RC2-PCS



Table 62: High-speed lever (1) on the SR Suntour suspension fork on the crown

Setting the high-speed damper to hard

- ▶ Turn **high-speed lever (1)** on the crown clockwise gradually.
- ⇒ The high-speed compression damper is placed in a harder setting.

Setting the high-speed damper to soft

- ▶ Turn **high-speed lever (1)** on the crown anticlockwise gradually.
- ⇒ The high-speed compression damper is placed in a softer setting.

6.17.2.3 Using the SR SUNTOUR suspension fork low-speed compression damping

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

Low-speed movement in the suspension fork is caused, for example, by riding over bumps.

The settings on the low-speed damper control the suspension fork's suspension behaviour

- during staggered jumps
- during shifts in the rider's body weight
- when force is applied slowly.

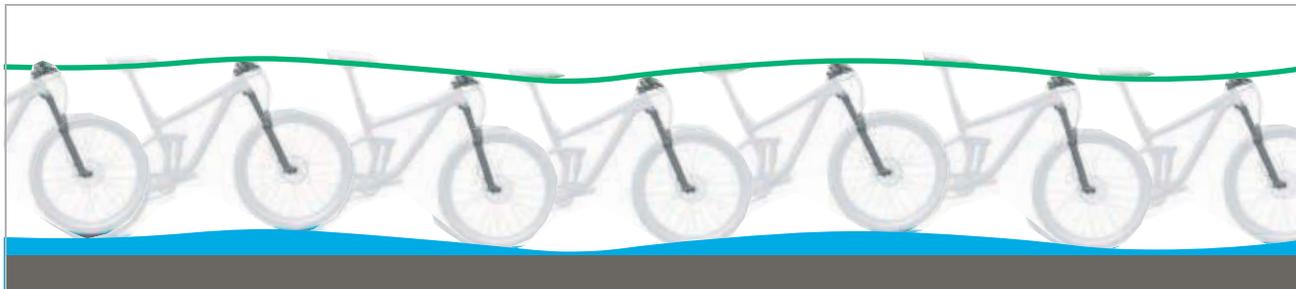


Figure 205: Low-speed movements

R2C2-PCS R2C2 RC2 RC2-PCS	RC-PCS RC	RLRC-PCS RLRC	LORC-PCS LORC

Table 63: Low-speed lever (1) on the SR SUNTOUR suspension fork on the fork crown

- ▶ Turn **low-speed lever (1)** on the fork crown gradually in a clockwise direction.
- ⇒ The low-speed compression damper is placed in a harder setting.

- ▶ Turn **low-speed lever (1)** on the fork crown gradually in an anticlockwise direction.
- ⇒ The low-speed compression damper is placed in a softer setting.

6.18 Parking the pedelec

Notice

Heat or direct sunlight can cause the *tyre pressure* to increase above the permitted maximum pressure. This can destroy the *tyres*.

- ▶ Never park the pedelec in the sun.
- ▶ On hot days, regularly check the *tyre pressure* and adjust it as necessary.

Moisture penetrating at low temperatures may impair individual functions due to the open structural design.

- ▶ Always keep the pedelec dry and free from frost.
- ▶ If the pedelec is to be used at temperatures below 3 °C, the specialist dealer must carry out an inspection and prepare it for winter use.

- 1 [Switching off the electric drive system](#) (see Section [6.13.2](#)).
- 2 Push the front wheel into a bike stand.
- 3 Clean the suspension fork and pedals (see Section [7.1](#).)
- 4 Protect the saddle with a saddle cover if you park the pedelec outside.
- 5 Secure the pedelec with a bicycle lock.
- 6 Remove the battery to protect against theft (see Section [6.17.1.1](#), Section [6.17.2.1](#) or Section [6.17.3.1](#)).
- 7 Check, clean and maintain pedelec based on the checklist.

Checklist after each ride

Cleaning		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Lights and reflectors	See Section 7.2.5
<input type="checkbox"/>	Brake	See Section 7.2.5
<input type="checkbox"/>	Suspension fork	See Section 7.2.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Suspension seat post	See Section 7.2.6
<input type="checkbox"/>	Rear frame damper	See Section 7.2.7
<input type="checkbox"/>	Pedal	See Section 7.2.4
Care		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Suspension fork	See Section 3

6.18.1 Screwing in the quickly adjustable stem

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

Screw in the quickly adjustable stem to save space when parking.

- 1 Open stem clamping lever.

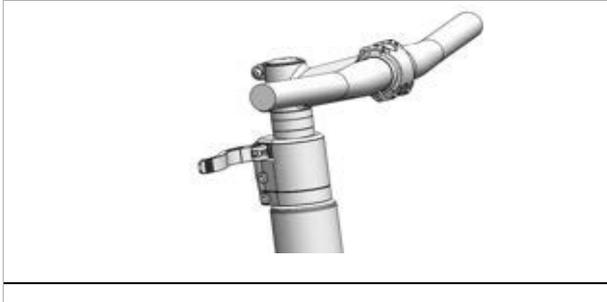


Figure 206: Example of All Up with open stem clamping lever

- 2 Pull handlebars into highest possible position.

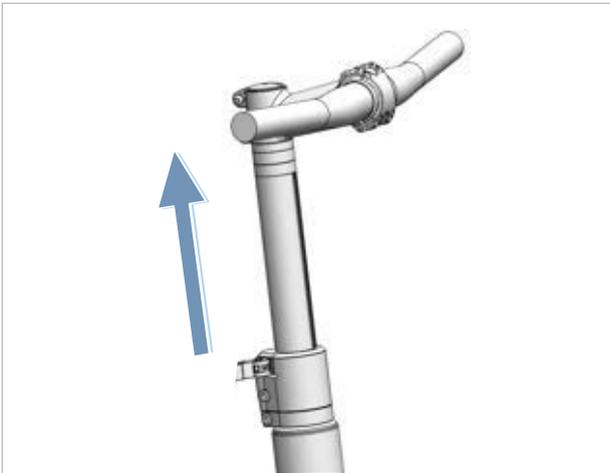


Figure 207: Example of All Up pulled into highest possible position

- 3 Turn handlebars 90° in a clockwise direction.

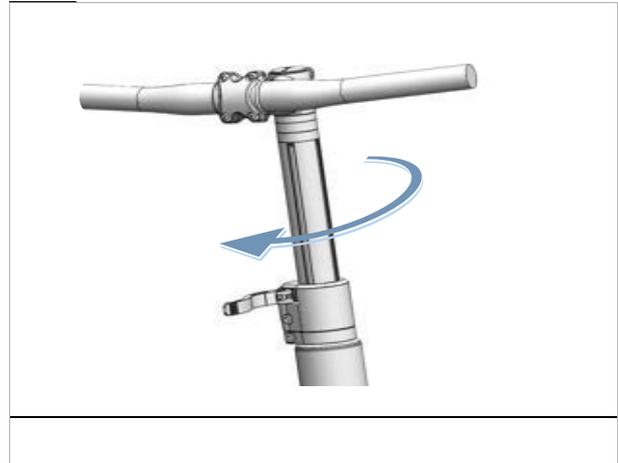


Figure 208: Example of All Up screwed in

- 4 Place handlebars at required height.
- 5 Close stem clamping lever.

6.18.2 Activating the eBike Lock function

- ⇒ The eBike Lock function is activated automatically by switching the electric drive system off.
- ⇒ The drive unit emits an audible beep.
- ⇒ The System Controller control panel flashes white and (optionally) displays a lock symbol on the screen whenever the eBike Lock function is active after switching on.

7 Cleaning, maintenance and inspection

- Clean, maintain and inspect pedelec as indicated on checklists.
Complying with these cleaning instructions can increase operational reliability, reduce wear on components, extend the service life of components and ensure safety.

Checklist: Before each ride		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check everything is sufficiently clean	See Section 7.2
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check guards	See Section 7.1.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check battery to ensure it is firmly in place	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check lights	See Section 7.1.13
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check brake	See Section 7.1.14
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check suspension seat post	See Section 7.1.9
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check pannier rack	See Section 7.1.5
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check bell	See Section 7.1.10
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check handles	See Section 7.1.11
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check rear frame damper	See Section 7.1.4
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check wheel concentricity	See Section 7.1.7
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check frame	See Section 7.1.2
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check quick releases	See Section 7.1.8
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check guards	See Section 7.1.6
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check USB cover	See Section 7.1.12
Checklist: After each ride		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean lights	See Section 7.2.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean reflectors	See Section 7.2.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean brake	See Section 7.2.5
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean suspension fork	See Section 7.2.2
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintain suspension fork	See Section 3
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean suspension seat post	See Section 7.2.6
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean rear frame damper	See Section 7.2.7
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean the pedals	See Section 7.2.4

Checklist: weekly tasks		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean chain	See Section 7.3.19
<input type="checkbox"/>	City, folding, cargo and children's bikes and bicycles for young adults	When dry: every 10 days In wet conditions: every 2–6 days
<input type="checkbox"/>	Trekking and racing bikes	When dry: every 140... 200 km In wet conditions: every 100 km
<input type="checkbox"/>	Mountain bikes	When dry: every 60... 100 km In wet conditions: after every ride
<input type="checkbox"/>	Belt (every 250–300 km)	See Section 7.3.18
<input type="checkbox"/>	Servicing the chain	See Section 7.4.16 and 7.4.16.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	City, folding, cargo and children's bikes and bicycles for young adults	When dry: every 10 days In wet conditions: every 2... 6 days
<input type="checkbox"/>	Trekking and racing bikes	When dry: every 140... 200 km In wet conditions: every 100 km
<input type="checkbox"/>	Mountain bikes	When dry: every 60... 100 km In wet conditions: maintain all the time
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintain all-round chain guard.	See Section 7.4.16.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check tyre pressure (at least once a week)	See Section 7.5.1.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check tyres (every 10 days)	See Section 7.5.1.2
<input type="checkbox"/>	Eightpins seat post Refill oil (every 20 hours)	See Section 7.4.19

Checklist: monthly tasks		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Cleaning the battery	See Section 7.3.2
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean on-board computer	See Section 7.3.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean on-board computer	See Section 7.3.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check disc brake linings (once a month or after braking 1,000 times)	See Section 3.3.6.3
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check rim brake brake linings (once a month or after braking 3000 times)	See Section 7.5.1.3
<input type="checkbox"/>	Checking the rim braking surface for wear	See Section 7.5.2.6
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean handbrake	See Section 7.3.16.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean brake disc	See Section 7.3.17
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check brake disc	See Section 7.5.2.4
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check brake Bowden cables	See Section 7.5.2.3
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean pannier rack	See Section 7.3.4
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean handles	See Section 7.3.7
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintain handles	See Section 7.4.8
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check handbrake	See Section 7.5.2.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check hydraulic system	See Section 7.5.2.2
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean cassette	See Section 7.3.15
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean chain and all-round chain guard	See Section 7.3.19.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean chain wheels	See Section 7.3.15
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean leather handles	See Section 7.3.7.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintain leather handles	See Section 7.4.8.2
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean the leather saddle	See Section 7.3.9.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintain leather saddle	See Section 7.4.11
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean handlebars	See Section 7.3.6

Checklist: monthly tasks		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Cleaning the motor	See Section 7.3.3
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean hub	See Section 7.3.12
<input type="checkbox"/>	Cleaning the frame	See Section 7.3.4
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean tyres	See Section 7.3.10
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check back-pedal brake	See Section 7.5.2.5
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean saddle	See Section 7.3.9
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean seat post	See Section 7.3.8
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintain seat post	See Section 7.4.9
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean shifter	See Section 7.3.14.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Cleaning gear shift	See Section 7.3.13
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean shift cables	See Section 7.3.13
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check disc brake	See Section 7.5.2.4
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean mudguard	See Section 7.3.4
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean kickstand	See Section 7.3.4
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean spokes and spoke nipples	See Section 7.3.11
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintain spoke nipples	See Section 7.4.13
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean rigid fork	See Section 7.3.4
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean transmission	See Section 7.3.13
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean front derailleur	See Section 7.3.15
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean stem	See Section 7.3.5

Checklist: Quarterly tasks		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check brake pressure point	See Section 7.5.2.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check rim brake (100 hours trip time or every 2,000 km)	See Section 7.5.2.6
<input type="checkbox"/>	Checking the spokes	See Section 7.5.1.3

Checklist: Tasks performed at least every six months (or every 1,000 km)	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check Bowden cables gear shift See Section 7.5.11.2
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintain handbrake See Section 7.4.18.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintain carbon seat post See Section 7.4.9.2
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check gear shift electric cables See Section 7.5.11.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintain suspension seat post See Section 7.4.9.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintain rims See Section 7.4.10
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check rims See Section 7.5.1.3
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check rim hooks See Section 7.5.1.3
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintain fork See Section 7.4.2
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check gear shift See Section 7.5.11
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintain pannier rack See Section 7.4.3
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check chain See Section 7.5.11
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check derailleur gears See Section 7.5.11
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check chain tension See Section 7.5.3.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check wheel See Section 7.5.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintain handlebars See Section 7.4.7
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check handlebars See Section 7.5.7
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check light See Section 7.5.5
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintain hub See Section 7.4.12
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check hub See Section 7.5.11.4
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check nipple holes See Section 7.5.1.4
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintain pedals See Section 7.4.15
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check pedal. See Section 7.5.9
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintain frame See Section 7.4.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check belt tension See Section 7.5.4.3
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check saddle See Section 7.5.8
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintain shifter See Section 7.4.14.2
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintain rear derailleur articulated shaft See Section 7.4.14.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintain rear derailleur jockey wheels See Section 7.4.14.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintain kickstand See Section 7.4.5
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check kickstand stability
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check steering headset See Section 8.5.6

Checklist: Tasks performed at least every six months (or every 1,000 km)	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Servicing the stem See Section 7.4.6
<input type="checkbox"/>	Checking the stem See Section 7.5.6

Checklist: Annual tasks (or every 2000 km)	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Adjust hub with cone bearing See Section 8.5.6
<input type="checkbox"/>	Check nipple well (every 1,000 hours or every 2,000 km) See Section 7.5.1.5

 **WARNING**
Crash caused by brake failure

Oil or lubricant on the brake disc in a disc brake or on the rim of a rim brake can cause the brake to fail completely. This may cause a crash with serious injuries.

- ▶ Never allow oil or lubricant to come into contact with the brake disc or brake linings or on the rim of a rim brake.
- ▶ If the brake linings have come into contact with oil or lubricant, contact specialist dealer to have the components cleaned or replaced.
- ▶ After cleaning, servicing or repair, carry out a few test brake applications.

The brake system is not designed for use on a pedelec which is placed on its side or turned upside down. The brake may not function correctly as a result. This can cause a crash, which may result in injuries.

- ▶ If pedelec has been placed on its side or turned upside down, apply the brakes a couple of times before setting off to ensure they work as normal

The brake seals are unable to withstand high pressures. Damaged brakes can fail and cause an accident with injury.

- ▶ Never clean the pedelec with a pressure washer or compressed air.

Take great care when using a hosepipe. Never point the water jet directly at the seal section.

 **CAUTION**
Crash and falling caused by unintentional activation

There is a risk of injury if the electric drive system is activated unintentionally.

- ▶ Remove the battery before cleaning.

Notice

Water may enter the inside of the bearings if you use a steam jet. This dilutes the lubricant inside, the friction increases and, as a result, the bearings are permanently damaged in the long term. Water may also penetrate the electric components and damage them permanently.

- ▶ Never clean pedelec with a pressure washer, water jet or compressed air.

Greased parts, such as the seat post, the handlebars or the stem, may no longer be safely and reliably clamped.

- ▶ Never apply grease or oil to parts which are clamped.

Harsh cleaning agents such as acetone, methylene and trichloroethylene and solvents such as thinners, alcohol and corrosion protection can attack pedelec components and damage them permanently.

- ▶ Use approved care and cleaning products only.

7.1 Before each ride

Complying with these cleaning instructions is the only way to reduce wear on components, increase the operating hours and guarantee safety.

7.1.1 Checking the guards

The chain or belt guards, mudguards or the motor cover may break and fall off when the pedelec is transported or parked outside.

- ▶ Check that all guards are in place.
- ▶ Take pedelec out of service if a guard is damaged or missing. Contact specialist dealer.

7.1.2 Checking the frame

- ▶ Check frame for cracks, warping and damage to the paintwork.
- ▶ If there are any cracks, warping or damage to the paintwork, remove the pedelec from service. Contact specialist dealer.

7.1.3 Checking the fork

- ▶ Check fork for cracks, warping, tarnished components, leaked oil and damage to the paintwork. Also look at hidden parts on the underside.
- ⇒ If there are any cracks, warping, tarnished components, leaked oil or damage to the paintwork, remove the pedelec from service. Contact specialist dealer.

7.1.4 Checking the rear frame damper

- ▶ Check rear frame damper for cracks, warping, tarnished components, leaked oil and damage to the paintwork. Also look at hidden parts on the underside.
- ⇒ If there are any cracks, warping, tarnished components, leaked oil or damage to the paintwork, remove the pedelec from service. Contact specialist dealer.

7.1.5 Checking the pannier rack

- 1 Hold onto pedelec by its frame. Hold onto pannier rack with the other hand.
- 2 Move the pannier rack backwards and forwards to check that all screw connections are firmly in place.
 - ⇒ Tighten loose screws.
 - ⇒ Attach loose baskets permanently with a basket bracket or cable ties.

7.1.6 Checking the mudguards

- 1 Hold onto pedelec by its frame. Hold onto mudguard rack with the other hand.
- 2 Move the mudguard backwards and forwards to check that all screw connections are firmly in place.
 - ⇒ Tighten loose screws.

7.1.7 Check wheel concentricity

- ▶ Lift the front and rear wheels one after the other and spin each wheel when lifted.
- ⇒ If the wheel is loose or crooked when it turns, take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.

7.1.8 Checking the quick releases

- ▶ Check quick releases to ensure that all quick releases are firmly in their fully closed end position.
- ⇒ If a quick release is not firmly in its closed end position, open quick release and place in its end position.
- ⇒ If the quick release cannot be firmly placed in its end position, take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.

7.1.9 Checking the suspension seat post

- ▶ Deflect and let the suspension seat post rebound.
- ⇒ If you hear unusual noises when the suspension seat post deflects and rebounds, or it yields without any resistance, take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.

7.1.10 Checking the bell

- 1 Press the bell button downwards.
 - 2 Let button spring back.
- ⇒ If you do not hear a clear, distinct ring of the bell, replace bell. Contact specialist dealer.

7.1.11 Checking the handles

- ▶ Check the handles are firmly in place.
- ⇒ Screw loose handles firmly into place.

7.1.12 Checking the USB cover

- ⇒ If featured, check the position of the *cover on the USB port* on a regular basis and adjust if necessary.

7.1.13 Checking the riding light

- 1 Switch light on.
 - 2 Check that the headlight and rear light come on.
- ⇒ If the headlight and rear lights do not come on, take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.

7.1.14 Checking the brake

- 1 Pull both handbrakes when stationary.
 - 2 Push the pedals.
- ⇒ If no resistance is generated in the handbrake's usual position, take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.
 - ⇒ If the brake is losing fluid, take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.

7.2 After each ride

Complying with these cleaning instructions is the only way to reduce wear on components, increase the operating hours and guarantee safety.

The following items should be ready for use to clean the pedelec after each ride:

Tool		Cleaning agent	
 Cloth	 Bucket	 Water	 Dish-washing liquid
 Brush	 Fork oil	 Silicone or Teflon oil	 Acid-free lubricating grease

Table 64: Required tools and cleaning agents after each ride

7.2.1 Cleaning the riding light and reflectors



- 1 Clean headlight, rear light and reflectors with a damp cloth.

7.2.2 Cleaning the suspension fork



- 1 Remove dirt and deposits from the stanchions and deflector seals with a damp cloth. Check stanchions for dents, scratches, staining or leaking oil.
- 2 Lubricate the dust seals and stanchions with a few drops of silicone spray.
- 3 Maintain the suspension fork after cleaning.

7.2.3 Maintaining the suspension fork



- Treat dust seals with fork oil.

7.2.4 Cleaning the pedals



- Clean pedals with a brush and soapy water.

7.2.5 Cleaning the brake



- Clean dirt on the rim and brake components with a slightly dampened cloth.

7.2.6 Cleaning the suspension seat post



- Clean dirt on the articulated joints with a slightly dampened cloth immediately after a ride.

7.2.7 Cleaning the rear frame damper



- Clean dirt on the articulated joints with a slightly dampened cloth immediately after a ride.

7.3 Basic cleaning

Complying with these basic cleaning instructions is the only way to reduce wear on components, increase the operating hours and guarantee safety.

The following are required for basic cleaning:

Tool		Cleaning agent	
 Gloves	 Toothbrush	 Water	 Lubricant
 Cloth	 Paintbrush	 Dish-washing liquid	 Brake cleaner
 Sponge	 Watering can	 Degreaser	 Leather cleaner
 Brushes	 Bucket		

Table 65: Required tools and cleaning agents for basic cleaning

- ✓ Remove battery and on-board computer before thorough cleaning.

7.3.1 Clean on-board computer and control panel



Notice

If water enters the on-board computer, it will be permanently damaged.

- ▶ Never immerse the on-board computer in water.
 - ▶ Never use a cleaning agent.
-
- ▶ Carefully clean the on-board computer and control panel with a soft, damp cloth.

7.3.2 Cleaning the battery



CAUTION

Risk of fire and explosion due to penetration by water

The battery is only protected from simple spray water. Penetration by water can cause a short circuit. The battery may self-ignite and explode.

- ▶ Keep contacts dry and clean.
- ▶ Never immerse the battery in water.

Notice

- ▶ Never use a cleaning agent.

- 1 Clean the battery electrical connections with a dry cloth or paintbrush only.
- 2 Wipe off the decorative sides with a damp cloth.

7.3.3 Cleaning the motor



Notice

If water enters the motor, it will be permanently damaged.

- ▶ Never open the motor.
 - ▶ Never immerse the motor in water.
 - ▶ Never use cleaning agents.
-
- ▶ Carefully clean the motor on the outside with a soft, damp cloth.

7.3.4 Clean Frame, fork, pannier rack, guards and kickstand



- 1 Soak the components with dish-washing detergent if the dirt is thick and ingrained.
- 2 After leaving it to soak for a short time, remove the dirt and mud with a sponge, brush and toothbrushes.
- 3 Rinse off the components with water from a watering can.
- 4 Wipe away oil stains with a degreaser.

7.3.5 Cleaning the stem



- 1 Clean stem with a cloth and soapy water.
- 2 Rinse off component with water from a watering can.

7.3.6 Cleaning the handlebars



- 1 Clean handlebars, including handles and all gears or twist grips, with a cloth and soapy water.
- 2 Rinse off component with water from a watering can.

7.3.7 Clean handles



- 1 Clean handles with sponge, water and soapy water.
- 2 Rinse off component with water from a watering can.
- 3 Care for rubber handles after cleaning (see Section [7.4.8.1](#)).

7.3.7.1 Cleaning leather handles



Leather is a natural product and has similar properties to human skin. Regular cleaning and care help to prevent leather dehydrating, fading or becoming brittle or stained.

- 1 Remove dirt with a soft, damp cloth.
- 2 Remove stubborn stains with a leather cleaner.
- 3 Care for leather handles after cleaning (see Section [7.4.8.2](#)).

7.3.8 Cleaning the seat post



- 1 Clean seat post with a cloth and soapy water.
- 2 Rinse off component with water from a watering can.
- 3 Wipe away any grease or assembly paste residue with a cloth and degreaser.

7.3.9 Cleaning the saddle



- 1 Clean the saddle with lukewarm water and a cloth dampened with soapy water.
- 2 Rinse off component with water from a watering can.

7.3.9.1 Cleaning the leather saddle



Leather is a natural product and has similar properties to human skin. Regular cleaning and care help to prevent leather dehydrating, fading or becoming brittle or stained.

- 1 Remove dirt with a soft, damp cloth.
- 2 Remove stubborn stains with a leather cleaner.
- 3 Care for leather saddle after cleaning (see Section [7.4.11](#)).

7.3.10 Cleaning the tyres



- 1 Clean tyres with a sponge, a brush and soap cleaner.
- 2 Rinse off component with water from a watering can.
- 3 Remove any embedded chips and small stones.

7.3.11 Cleaning the spokes and spoke nipples

- 1 Clean spokes from the inside to the outside with a sponge, brush and soapy water.
- 2 Clean rim with a sponge.
- 3 Rinse off component with water from a watering can.
- 4 Care for spoke nipples after cleaning (see Section [7.4.13](#)).

7.3.12 Clean hub



- 1 Put on protective gloves.
- 2 Remove dirt from hub with a sponge and soapy water.
- 3 Rinse off component with water from a watering can.
- 4 Wipe off oily dirt with a degreaser and a cloth.

7.3.13 Cleaning the switching elements



- 1 Clean gear shift and shift cables with water, a brush and dish-washing detergent.
- 2 Rinse off component with water from a watering can.

7.3.14 Cleaning the SRAM AXS rear derailleur



Notice

The battery will be permanently damaged if water enters the rear derailleur battery or the battery mount.

- ▶ If fitted, remove the rear derailleur battery from the SRAM rear derailleur and insert the battery separator into the rear derailleur before cleaning.
 - ▶ Never immerse the rear derailleur in water.
 - ▶ Never use acidic or degreasing agents on the electrical components.
 - ▶ Never use chemical cleaning agents or solvents as they can destroy the plastic components.
-
- ▶ Clean all derailleur components with a damp cloth.

7.3.14.1 Cleaning the shifter



- Carefully clean shifter with a damp, soft cloth.

7.3.15 Clean cassette, chain wheels and front derailleur



- 1 Put on protective gloves.
- 2 Spray cassette, chain wheels and front derailleur with degreasing agent.
- 3 Clean coarse dirt with a brush after soaking for a short time.
- 4 Wash down all parts with dish-washing detergent and a toothbrush.
- 5 Rinse off component with water from a watering can.

7.3.16 Clean brake

7.3.16.1 Clean handbrake



- Carefully clean the handbrake with a damp, soft cloth.

7.3.17 Cleaning the brake disc



Notice

- Protect brake disc against lubricants and grease from hands.

- 1 Put on protective gloves.
- 2 Spray brake disc with brake disc cleaning spray.
- 3 Wipe with a cloth.

7.3.18 Cleaning the belt



Notice

- Never use aggressive (acid-based) cleaners, rust removers or degreasers when cleaning the belt.

- 1 Dampen a cloth with soapy water. Place the cloth on the belt.
- 2 Hold and apply slight pressure while slowly turning the rear wheel so that the belt passes through the cloth.

7.3.19 Cleaning the chain



Notice

- ▶ Never use aggressive (acid-based) cleaners, rust removers or degreasers when cleaning the chain.
- ▶ Never use gun oil or rust remover spray.
- ▶ Never use chain cleaning devices or chain cleaning baths.
- ▶ Have chain with all-round guard cleaned and cared for during major inspection.

✓ Place newspaper or paper towels underneath to collect dirt.

- 1 Slightly dampen a brush with dish-washing liquid. Brush both sides of the chain.
- 2 Dampen a cloth with soapy water. Place the cloth on the chain.
- 3 Hold and apply slight pressure while slowly turning the rear wheel, so the chain passes through the cloth.
- 4 Wipe off oily, dirty chains thoroughly with a cloth and degreaser.
- 5 Care for the chain after cleaning (see Section [7.4.16](#)).

7.3.19.1 Clean chain, including all-round chain guard



Notice

The chain guard must be removed before cleaning. Contact specialist dealer.

- ▶ Clean water hole on the chain guard lower surface.
- ▶ Care for the chain after cleaning (see Section [7.4.16.1](#)).

7.4 Maintenance

Complying with these servicing instructions is the only way to reduce wear on components, increase the operating hours and guarantee safety.

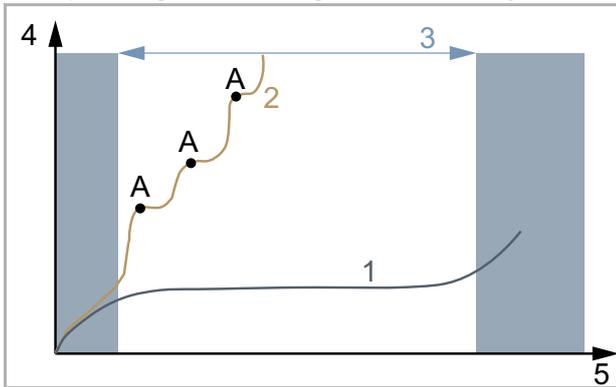


Figure 209: Diagram showing wear, operating hours (5) vs. material abrasion (4)

The service life (3) of an optimally serviced drive chain (1) is almost three times as long with lubrication (A) compared to a drive chain (2) lubricated on an irregular basis.

These tools and cleaning agents are required for servicing:

Tool		Cleaning agent	
			
Cloth	Toothbrush	Frame wax spray	Silicone or Teflon oil
			
		Acid-free lubricating grease	Fork oil
			
		Teflon spray	Spray oil
			
		Chain oil	Leather care product
			
		Battery terminal grease	

Table 66: Required tools and cleaning agents for servicing

7.4.1 Maintain frame



Notice

- ▶ Hard wax polish and protection wax are particularly resistant on gloss paintwork. These car accessory retail products are unsuitable for matt paint finishes.
- ▶ Try wax spray out on a small spot before application.

- 1 Dry frame with a cloth.
- 2 Spray frame with spray wax and leave to dry.
- 3 Wipe away any wax residue with a cloth.

7.4.2 Maintain fork



Notice

- ▶ Hard wax polish and protection wax are particularly resistant on gloss paintwork. These car accessory retail products are unsuitable for matt paint finishes.
- ▶ Try wax spray out on a small spot before application.

- 1 Dry fork with a cloth.
- 2 Spray frame care oil on frame and leave to dry.
- 3 Wipe away any wax residue with a cloth.

7.4.3 Maintain pannier rack



- 1 Dry pannier rack with a cloth.
- 2 Spray pannier rack with spray wax and leave to dry.
- 3 Wipe pannier rack with a cloth.
- 4 Protect chafing points on panniers with adhesive film. Replace worn adhesive film.
- 5 Maintain coil springs with silicone spray or wax spray from time to time.

7.4.4 Maintain mudguard



- Depending on the requirements for the material in the mudguard, apply hard wax polish, metal polish or a plastic care product as per the product instructions.

7.4.5 Servicing the kickstand



- 1 Dry kickstand with a cloth.
- 2 Spray kickstand rack with spray wax and leave to dry.
- 3 Wipe down kickstand with a cloth.
- 4 Lubricate the kickstand joints with spray oil.

7.4.6 Maintaining the stem



- 1 Spray painted and polished metal surfaces with wax spray and leave to dry.
- 2 Wipe away any wax residue with a cloth.
- 3 Apply silicone or Teflon oil to the stem shaft tube and the quick release lever pivot point with a cloth.
- 4 If you have a Speedlifter Twist, also apply oil to the unlocking bolt groove in the Speedlifter body.
- 5 Apply a little acid-free lubricant grease between the stem quick release lever and the sliding piece to reduce the quick release lever operating force.
- 6 If you have a stem with a cone clamp, apply a new protective layer of assembly paste onto the stem and fork steerer contact point once a year.

7.4.7 Maintaining the handlebars



- 1 Spray painted and polished metal surfaces with wax spray and leave to dry.
- 2 Wipe away any wax residue with a cloth.

7.4.8 Maintaining the handles

7.4.8.1 Maintaining rubber handles

- 1 Apply talcum powder to sticky rubber handles.

Notice

- ▶ Never apply talcum powder to leather or foam handles.

7.4.8.2 Maintaining the leather handles



Standard leather care products keep leather smooth and resistant, brighten its appearance and improve or replace stain protection.

- 1 Try leather care product out on a less visible spot before use.
- 2 Care for leather handles with a leather care product.

7.4.9 Maintaining the seat post

- 1 Carefully preserve screw connections with wax spray. In doing so, ensure that no wax is applied to the metal contact surfaces.
- 2 Replace the assembly paste protective layer on the metal contact surfaces on the seat post and seat tube every year.

7.4.9.1 Maintaining the suspension seat post



- 1 Lubricate articulated joints with spray oil.
- 2 Deflect and let the suspension seat post rebound five times. Remove any surplus lubricant with a clean cloth.

7.4.9.2 Maintaining the carbon seat post



Notice

Rain and puddle water can cause contact corrosion if carbon seat posts are used in an aluminium frame without protective assembly paste. It may then take a great deal of force to remove the seat post. The carbon seat post may break as a result.

- 1 Take out the carbon seat post.
- 2 Remove old assembly paste with a cloth.
- 3 Apply new assembly paste with a cloth.
- 4 Re-insert the carbon seat post.

7.4.10 Maintaining the rims



- ▶ Care for chrome rims, stainless steel rims and polished aluminium with chrome or metal polish. Never maintain the brake surface with polish.

7.4.11 Maintaining the leather saddle



Standard leather care products keep leather smooth and resistant, brighten its appearance and improve or replace stain protection.

- 1 Try leather care product out on a less visible spot before use.
- 2 Care for leather saddle from below with a leather care product. Only maintain the top of leather saddles with a leather care product if they are badly worn and dried-out.
- 3 Avoid wearing light-coloured trousers after care due to staining.

7.4.12 Maintaining the hub



- 1 Apply wax spray especially around the spoke holes. In doing so, ensure that no wax is applied to brake parts.
- 2 Treat rubber seals with a cloth with one or two drops of silicone spray. Never use oil if you have disc brakes.

7.4.13 Maintaining the spoke nipples



- 1 Apply wax spray onto the spoke nipples from the rim side.
- 2 Treat heavily corroded spoke nipples with a drop of penetrating or special care oil.

7.4.14 Maintaining the gear shift

7.4.14.1 Maintaining the rear derailleur articulated shafts and jockey wheel



- ▶ Treat front and rear derailleur articulated shafts and jockey wheels with Teflon spray.

7.4.14.2 Maintaining the shifter



Notice

- ▶ Never treat shifters with degreaser or penetrating oil spray.
- ▶ Lubricate articulated joints and mechanical parts which are accessible from outside with a few drops of spray oil or precision mechanics oil.

7.4.15 Maintaining the pedals



- 1 Treat pedals with spray oil. In doing so, ensure that no lubricant is applied to the pedal surfaces.
- 2 Lubricate seals and mechanical parts sparingly with a few drops of oil.
- 3 Remove any surplus lubricant with a clean cloth.
- 4 Spray metal foot rests with silicone spray.

7.4.16 Maintaining the chain



- ✓ Place newspaper or paper towels underneath to collect chain oil.
- 1 Lift rear wheel.
- 2 Turn the crank briskly in an anti-clockwise direction.
- 3 Use slight finger pressure to the chain oil bottle to apply a wafer-thin thread of oil to the chain links. The faster the crank is turned, the thinner the threads of oil will be.

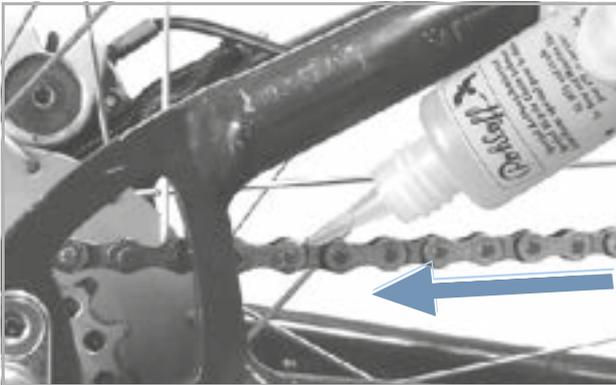


Figure 210: Lubricating the chain

- 4 Remove excessive chain oil with a cloth. If you apply too much oil, it will make the chain all the dirtier at a later point in time.
- 5 Leave chain oil to penetrate into the chain links for a few hours or overnight.

7.4.16.1 Maintaining the chain and all-round chain guard



- ✓ Place newspaper or paper towels underneath to collect chain oil.
- 1 Lift rear wheel.
- 2 Turn the crank briskly in an anti-clockwise direction.
- 3 Use slight finger pressure to the chain oil bottle to apply a wafer-thin thread of oil onto the chain links through the oil hole on the upper surface of the chain guard. The faster the crank is turned, the thinner the threads of oil will be.
- 4 Remove excessive chain oil with a cloth. If you apply too much oil, it will make the chain all the dirtier at a later point in time.
- 5 Leave chain oil to penetrate into the chain links for a few hours or overnight.

7.4.17 Maintaining the battery



- ▶ Grease plug terminals on the battery with terminal grease or contact spray from time to time.

7.4.18 Maintaining the brake

7.4.18.1 Maintaining the handbrake



Notice

- ▶ Never treat brake handbrake with degreaser or penetrating oil spray.
- ▶ Lubricate articulated joints and mechanical parts which are accessible from outside with a few drops of spray oil or precision mechanics oil.

7.4.19 Lubricating the Eightpins seat post tube

- ▶ Use a 2.5 ml syringe to carefully fill Eightpins Fluid V3 very slowly into the lubricating nipple on the outer tube.



Figure 211: Lubricating the Eightpins seat post

Notice

- ▶ Fill a maximum of 2.5 ml since otherwise the reservoir inside will overflow and the oil will spill into the frame.

7.5 Inspection

The following tools are required for an inspection:

	Gloves
	Ring spanners 8 mm, 9 mm, 10 mm, 13 mm, 14 mm and 15 mm
	Torque spanner Working range 5... 40 Nm
	by.schulz handlebars: TORX® bits: T50, T55, and T60
	Hex key 2 mm, 2.5 mm, 3 mm, 4 mm, 5 mm, 6 mm and 8 mm
	Phillips screwdriver
	Slotted-head screwdriver

Table 67: Tools required for inspection

7.5.1 Checking the wheel

- 1 Hold pedelec.
- 2 Hold onto the front or rear wheel and try to move the wheel sideways. In doing so, check to see if the wheel nuts or quick releases move.
 - ⇒ If the wheel moves or the wheel nut or quick release moves sideways, take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.
- 3 Lift pedelec slightly. Turn front or rear wheel. In doing so, check whether the wheel deflects sideways or outwards.
 - ⇒ If the wheel deflects sideways or outwards, take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.

7.5.1.1 Checking tyre pressure

Notice

If the tyre pressure is too low in the tyre, the tyre does not achieve its load bearing capacity. The tyre is not stable and may come off the rim.

If the tyre pressure is too high, the tyre may burst.

Tyres are wear parts and wear away due to fatigue, storage, environmental influences or mechanical impacts. Only optimum tyre pressure will guarantee greater safety, lower rolling resistance, effective protection against punctures and a longer service life.

Air loss

Even the most airtight tube will lose pressure on a continuous basis since the air pressures in a pedelec tyre are significantly higher and the wall thicknesses significantly finer than in a car tyre. Pressure loss of 1 bar per month can be regarded as normal. During this process, the pressure loss is significantly faster at high pressures and significantly slower at low pressures.

Checking tyre pressure

The permitted pressure range is indicated on the side of the tyre.



Figure 212: Tyre pressure specification in bar (1) and psi (2)

- ▶ Verify tyre pressure against the value noted in the pedelec pass every 10 days as a minimum.

Dunlop valve**Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment**

The tyre pressure cannot be measured on the simple Dunlop valve. You thus measure the tyre pressure in the filling hose while slowly pumping the bicycle air pump.

- ✓ It is recommendable to use a bicycle air pump with a pressure gauge.
- 1 Unscrew and remove the valve cap.
- 2 Undo the rim nuts.
- 3 Connect the bicycle air pump.
- 4 Pump up the tyre slowly and pay attention to the tyre pressure in the process.
- 5 Correct the tyre pressure to meet the specified value in the Pedelec pass.
- 6 If the tyre pressure is too high, unfasten the union nut, let air out and re-tighten the union nut.
- 7 Remove the bicycle air pump.
- 8 Screw the valve cap tight.
- 9 Screw the rim nut gently against the rim with the tips of your fingers.
- ⇒ Correct tyre pressure if necessary (see section 6.5.8.2).

Schrader valve**Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment**

- ✓ It is recommended to use an air pump at a filling station or a modern bicycle air with a pressure gauge. Older and simple bicycle air pumps are unsuitable for filling tyres via a Schrader valve.
- 1 Unscrew and remove the valve cap.
- 2 Undo the rim nuts.
- 3 Connect the bicycle air pump.
- 4 Pump up the tyre slowly and pay attention to the tyre pressure in the process.
- ⇒ The tyre pressure has been adjusted as per the specifications.
- 5 Remove the bicycle air pump.
- 6 Screw the valve cap tight.
- 7 Screw the rim nut gently against the rim with the tips of your fingers.
- ⇒ Correct tyre pressure if necessary (see section 6.5.8.2).

Presta valve**Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment**

- ✓ It is recommendable to use a bicycle air pump with a pressure gauge. You must observe the bicycle air pump operating instructions.
- 1 Unscrew and remove the valve cap.
- 2 Open the knurled nut around four turns.
- 3 Carefully attach the bicycle air pump so that you do not bend the valve insert.
- 4 Pump up the tyre slowly and pay attention to the tyre pressure in the process.
- 5 Correct the tyre pressure as per the specifications on the tyre.
- 6 Remove the bicycle air pump.
- 7 Tighten the knurled nut with your fingers.
- 8 Screw the valve cap tight.
- 9 Screw the knurled nut gently against the rim with the tips of your fingers.
- ⇒ Correct tyre pressure if necessary (see section 6.5.8.2).

7.5.1.2 Checking the tyres

The tread is far less important for bicycle tyres than it is for car tyres, for example. Consequently, tyres can still be used with a worn tread with the exception of tyres on mountain bikes.

- 1 Check the tread for wear. The tyre is worn if the anti-puncture protection or the carcass cords are visible.

Since resistance to punctures also depends on the thickness of the tread, it may make sense to change the tyre at an earlier stage.

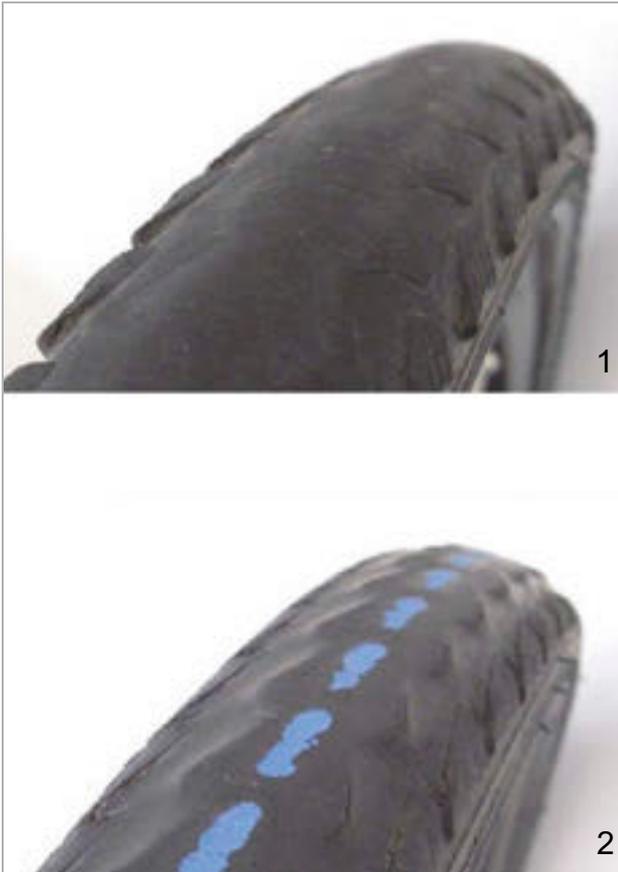


Figure 213: Tyres without a tread which can be replaced (1) and tyres with puncture protection showing through (2) must be replaced

- 2 Check the side walls for wear. If there are any cracks or tears, the tyre must be replaced.



Figure 214: Examples of fatigue cracks (1) and ageing cracks (2)

- 3 Replacing a wheel requires considerable mechanical expertise. If a tyre is worn, it needs to be replaced at a specialist dealer's.

7.5.1.3 Checking the rims



Crash caused by a worn rim

A worn rim can break and block the wheel. This may cause a crash with serious injuries.

- ▶ Check rim wear on a regular basis.
- ▶ Take pedelec out of service if the rim has any cracks or warping. Contact specialist dealer.

Rims are wear parts and wear away due to fatigue, mechanical impacts, environmental influences or due to braking if rim brakes are used.

- ▶ Check the rim well for wear.
- ⇒ The rims of a rim brake with invisible wear indicator are worn as soon as the wear indicator becomes visible in the area of the rim joint.
- ⇒ The rims with visible wear indicator are worn as soon as the black, all-round groove on the pad friction surface is no longer visible.
- ▶ We recommend that you also replace the *rims* at the same time as every second brake lining replacement.

7.5.1.4 Checking the nipple holes

Nipples cause fatigue and stress on the edge of the nipple hole.

- ▶ Check whether there are cracks on the edge of the nipple hole.

If there are cracks on the edge of the nipple hole, contact your specialist dealer.

7.5.1.5 Checking the nipple well

The nipple holes can weaken the tyre bed.

- ▶ Check to see if cracks are emerging from the nipple holes.
- ⇒ If there are cracks radiating from the nipple hole, contact your specialist dealer.

7.5.1.6 Checking the rim hooks

Mechanical impacts can warp the rim hooks. There is no longer a guarantee that a tyre can be fitted safely if this is the case.

- ▶ Check for twisted rim hooks.
- ⇒ Replace rims with twisted rim hooks. Never repair the rim with pliers and bend the hook back.

7.5.1.7 Checking the spokes

- ▶ Press spokes slightly together with your thumb and index finger. Check to ensure that the tension is the same for all spokes.
- ⇒ Contact your specialist dealer if the spokes are loose or are tensioned differently.

7.5.2 Checking the brake system



Crash caused by brake failure

Worn brake discs and brake linings and a lack of hydraulic fluid in the brake cable reduce the braking power. This may cause a crash with serious injuries.

- ▶ Check brake disc, brake linings and the hydraulic brake system regularly. Contact specialist dealer.

The inspection interval for the brake depends on how often it is used and the weather conditions. If the pedelec is used under extreme conditions such as rain, dirt or high mileage, inspection must be performed more frequently.

7.5.2.1 Checking the handbrake

- 1 Check that all screws in the handbrake are firmly in place (see Section 3.5.15).
- 2 Tighten loose screws.
- 3 Check that handbrake is torsionally rigid on the handlebars (see Section 3.5.15).
- 4 Tighten loose screws.
- 5 Check that there is a gap of at least 1 cm between the handbrake and the handle when the handbrake is fully applied.
- 6 Adjust the grip distance if the gap is too narrow (see Section 6.5.9.5).
- 7 Check the braking effect by pedalling while pulling the handbrake.
 - ▶ If the braking power is too weak, adjust the brake pressure point.
 - ▶ Contact your specialist dealer if the pressure point cannot be reached.

7.5.2.2 Checking the hydraulic brake system

- 1 Pull on the handbrake and check whether any brake fluid leaks out of the lines, connections or on the brake linings.
- 2 If any brake fluid leaks from anywhere, take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.
- 3 Pull brake handbrake and hold several times.
- 4 If you are unable to clearly detect the pressure point and it changes, the brake needs to be bled. Contact specialist dealer.

7.5.2.3 Checking the Bowden cables

- 1 Pull on handbrake several times. Check whether the Bowden cables get stuck or they make scraping noises.
- 2 Check the physical condition of the Bowden cables for visible damage and check to see if wire strands are broken.
- 3 Have defective Bowden cables replaced. Contact specialist dealer.

7.5.2.4 Checking the disc brake

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

Checking the brake linings

- ▶ Check that the brake linings are no less than 1.8 mm wide at any point and there are no less than 2.5 mm between the brake lining and supporting plate.



Figure 215: Checking the brake lining when fitted with the help of the transport safety wear gauge

- 1 Check brake linings for damage and thick dirt.
 - ⇒ Have damaged or very dirty brake linings replaced. Contact specialist dealer.
- 2 Pull handbrake and hold.
- 3 In doing so, check whether the transport safety wear gauge can fit between the brake lining supporting plates.
 - ⇒ If the transport safety wear gauge fits between the supporting plates, the brake linings have not reached their wear limit.
 - ⇒ Contact your specialist dealer if they are worn.

Checking the brake discs

- ✓ Put on gloves as the brake disc is very sharp.
- 1 Take hold of brake disc and wiggle it gently to check whether the brake disc is positioned against the wheel free of backlash.
 - 2 Check that the brake linings move steadily and symmetrically back towards the brake disc when you pull and release handbrake.
 - ⇒ If the brake disc can be moved or the brake linings move erratically, contact your specialist dealer.
 - 3 Check that the brake disc is no less than 1.8 mm thick at any point.
 - ⇒ If the brake disc is under the wear limit and is less than 1.8 mm thick, the brake disc must be replaced. Contact specialist dealer.

7.5.3 Checking the chain

- ▶ Check chain for rust, damage and chain links that are difficult to move.
- ⇒ Replace rusted, damaged or difficult-to-move chains since they will not withstand the tensile loads from the drive and will soon break. Contact specialist dealer.

7.5.3.1 Checking the chain tension

Notice

Excessive chain tension increases wear. If the chain tension is too low, there is a risk that the chain will slip off the chain wheels.

- ▶ Check the chain tension once a month.

Check tension in derailleur gears

The rear derailleur tensions the chain on pedelecs with derailleur gears.

- 1 Check to see if the chain is sagging.
 - 2 Gently press the rear derailleur forwards to check whether it moves and whether it goes back into position by itself.
- ⇒ If the chain is sagging or the rear derailleur does not go back into position by itself, contact your specialist dealer.

Check tension in hub gear

- 3 Remove the chain guard on pedelecs with a circumferential chain guard.

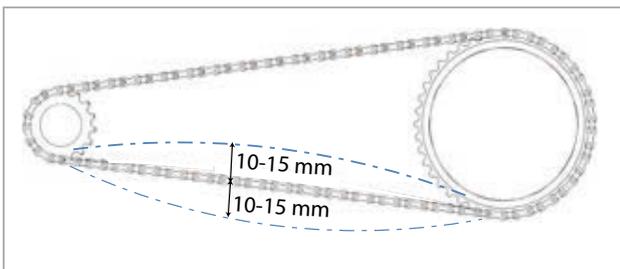


Figure 216: Checking the chain tension (example): 5 mm upwards, 10 mm downwards = 15 mm deviation

- 1 Lift chain upwards. Measure the distance to the centre. Press chain downwards. Measure the distance to the centre.
- 2 Add the two values together to calculate the deviation.

- 3 Check the chain tension at three to four points.

- ⇒ If the deviation is greater than 20 mm, tighten chain.
- ⇒ If the deviation is less than 10 mm, Loosen chain.
- ▶ If a hub gear is fitted, the rear wheel must be pushed backwards and forwards to tighten the chain. Contact specialist dealer.
- ▶ In the case of pedelecs with a hub gear or back-pedal brake, the chain is tensioned by an eccentric bearing or movable fork end in the bottom bracket axle. Special tools and specialist knowledge are required to tension the chain. Contact specialist dealer.

7.5.3.2 Checking the belt for wear

Each chain has a wear limit. If this limited is exceeded, the chain needs to be replaced.

Manufacturer	Wear limits
SHIMANO	>1%
KCM	>0.8 mm per link
SRAM	>0.8%
ROHLOFF	S: >0.1 mm per link A: >0.075 mm per link

Table 68: Chain wear limit by manufacturer

Rough check

You can perform a rough check on the chain wheel by hand on conventional chains.

- 1 Place the chain on the largest chain wheel.
 - 2 Lift the chain from the front to the centre of the bike.
- ⇒ If the chain can be lifted more than half a link from the chain wheel, carry out a check or contact your specialist dealer.

Check

There is a different wear gauge for each chain, depending on the manufacturer:



Figure 217: Example of a KMC gauge



Figure 218: Example of a SHIMANO gauge

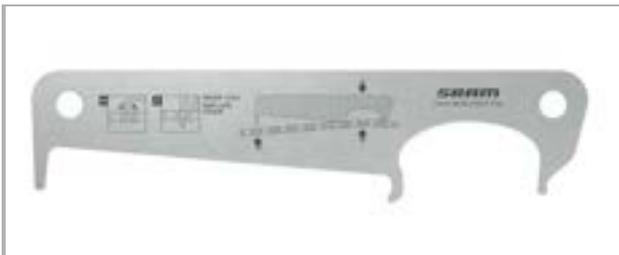


Figure 219: Example of a SRAM gauge



Figure 220: Example of a ROHLOFF gauge



Figure 221: Example of a KMC digital gauge

- 1 Insert gauge between two chain links on the right-hand side.

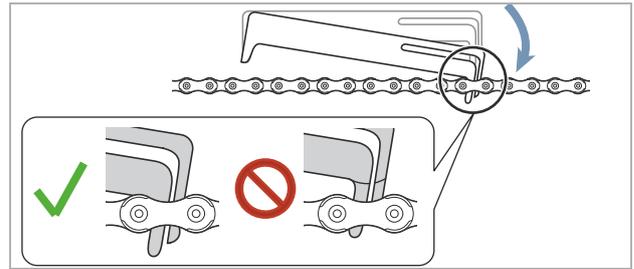


Figure 222: Gauge is inserted

- 2 Lower gauge down to the left-hand side.

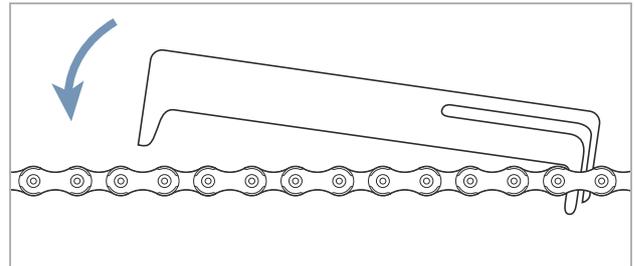


Figure 223: Lower gauge to the left

- ⇒ If the gauge does not fit between the links, the chain is not worn yet.

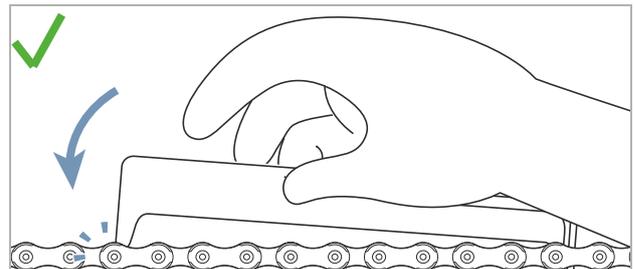


Figure 224: Gauge does not fit

- ⇒ If the gauge does not fit between the links, the chain is worn and must be replaced. Contact specialist dealer.

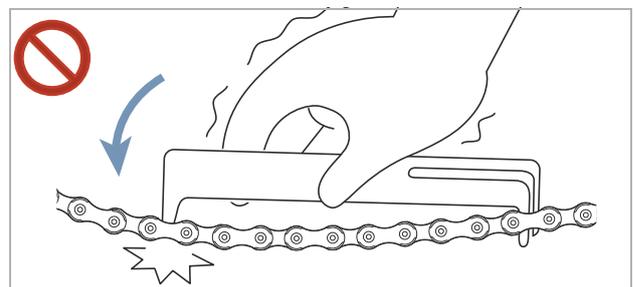


Figure 225: Gauge fits

7.5.4 Checking the belt

7.5.4.1 Checking the belt for wear

► Check belt for indications of wear:

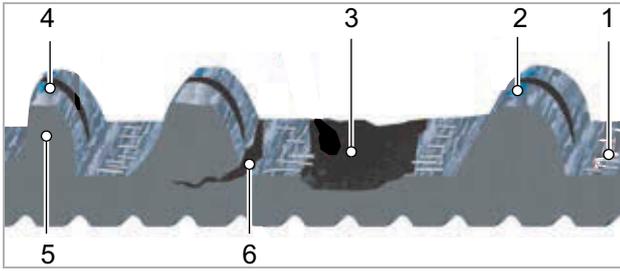


Figure 226: Indications of wear on a belt

- 1 Carbon tensile fibres are exposed
- 2 Worn webbing with visible polymer
- 3 Missing belt tooth
- 4 Imbalance
- 5 Shark tooth
- 6 Cracks

⇒ If there is one or more indications of wear, contact your specialist dealer. The belt needs to be replaced.

7.5.4.2 Checking the belt sprockets for wear

► Check belt sprocket.

⇒ The tooth profile is rounded and the teeth are thick. The belt sprocket does not need to be replaced.

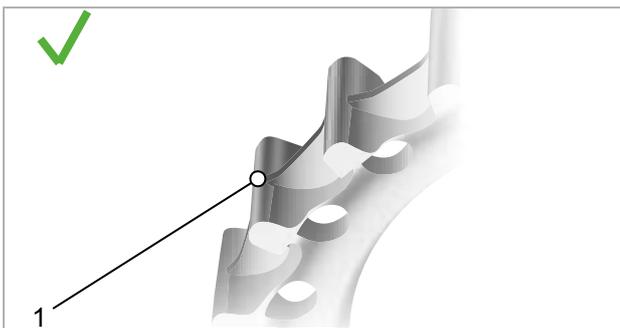


Figure 227: Optimum tooth profile

⇒ The tooth profile is pointed and teeth have worn thinner. Contact specialist dealer. The belt sprocket does need to be replaced.

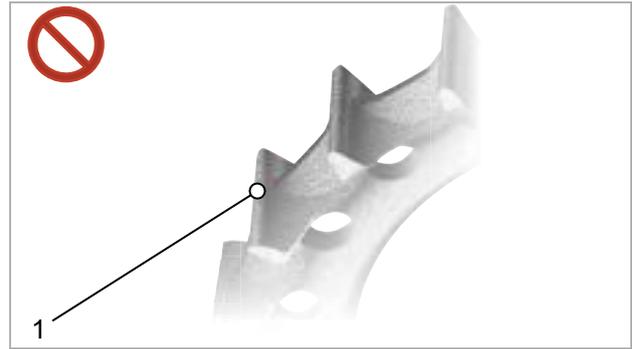


Figure 228: Worn tooth profile

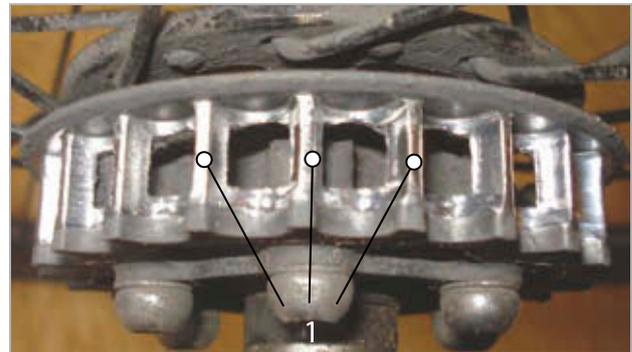


Figure 229: Photo showing example of worn tooth profile

7.5.4.3 Check belt tension

If the belt tension is too low, this can cause the system to skip over a tooth or slip, i.e. the teeth on the belt slip over the teeth on the rear wheel belt sprocket. Excessive tension can cause damage to the bearings, sluggishness in the system and increased wear on the electric drive system.

The adjustment of the belt tension varies depending on the pedelec. Common tensioning systems include angled or vertical drop-outs, horizontally sliding dropouts and eccentric bottom bracket axle.

There are three common methods of measuring belt tension:

- Gates Carbon Drive mobile app for iPhone® and Android®,
- Gates KrikIt tension meter and
- Eco tension tester.

With any of these methods, the tension along the belt may vary slightly, so you should repeat the process several times. Turn the pedal a quarter after each measurement. Measure again.

The tools measure the tension only. They do not provide specifications for the required voltage. The table below contains specifications for the correct tensioning range for Gates Carbon Drive belts.

	Steady pedalling	Sports usage
MTBs* and single-speed bicycles	45– 60 Hz (35– 45 lbs)	60– 75 Hz (45– 53 lbs)
Hub gear/pinion gear	35– 50 Hz (28– 40 lbs)	

Table 69: Specifications for tensioning

* The CDN and SideTrack systems are not permitted for mountain bikes, e-bikes with mid-drive motor or gears, bikes without a gear shift or for trekking or touring bikes.

These tension specifications are designed as initial guidance and may have to be corrected upwards or downwards depending on the body size, gear ratio and the force applied to the pedals.

Gates Carbon Drive mobile app



The Gates Carbon Drive mobile app measures the belt tension based on the belt's natural frequencies (Hz). To do so, the app uses the phone's mic to record the sound of the belt and determines the main frequency.

- ✓ Download Gates Carbon Drive mobile app free of charge from the App Store or Google Play on your mobile phone.
- ✓ Measure in a quiet environment.
- ✓ Ensure that the phone microphone is switched on.

- 1 Open app.
 - 2 Click on the voltage symbol.
 - 3 Click on **MEASURE**.
 - 4 Point phone microphone towards the belt.
 - 5 Pluck the belt so that the belt vibrates like a guitar string.
 - 6 It is recommended to take several measurements for comparison. Turn the crank a quarter. Repeat frequency measurement.
 - 7 Check the belt frequency displayed against the specifications for tensions in Table 69.
- ⇒ If the value is higher than the specification, reduce belt tension.
- ⇒ If the value is within the specified range, the belt tension has been correctly adjusted.
- ⇒ If the value is lower than the specification, increase belt tension.

Gates KrikIt tension meter

Not included in price

- ✓ Check that the measurement indicator is at the very bottom.
- 1 Extend index finger into the finger loop. Place on the check gauge.

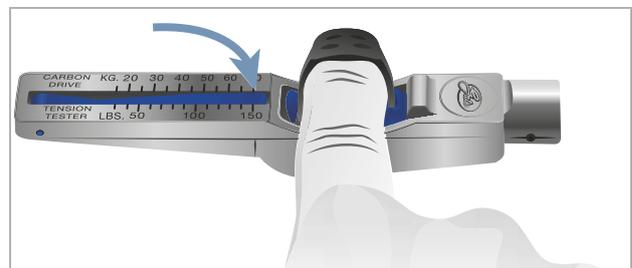


Figure 230: Index finger in the check gauge

- 2 Position check gauge on the upper surface of the belt. Position the check gauge in the middle of the belt length.

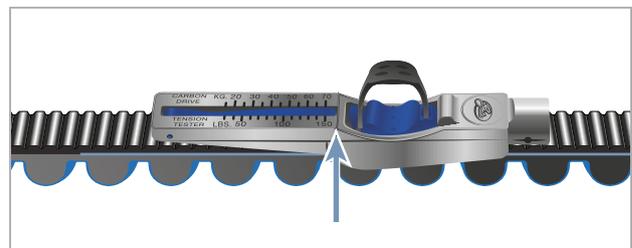


Figure 231: Check gauge on belt

- 3 Press the check gauge down with just one finger until it clicks into place.

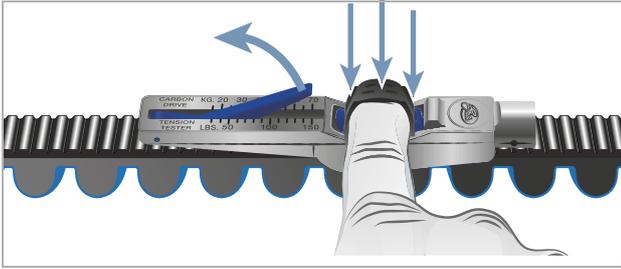


Figure 232: Pressing the check gauge down with one finger

- 4 Take reading where line A meets line B.

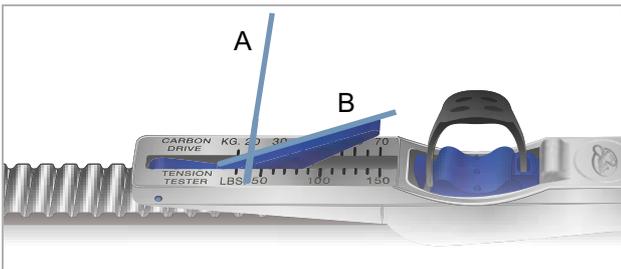


Figure 233: Example of a reading: 20 kg

- 5 Turn the pedal a quarter. Repeat measurement at least three times.
- 6 Convert value read from kg to pounds. The value is given in inches per pound.
Example: 20 kg = 44 inch = 44 lbs
- 7 Compare value with Table 44 Tension specification.
 - ⇒ If the value is higher than the specification, reduce belt tension.
 - ⇒ If the value is within the specified range, the belt tension has been correctly adjusted.
 - ⇒ If the value is lower than the specification, increase belt tension.

ECO tension tester

Not included in price

- 1 Attach the measuring stick on the belt.

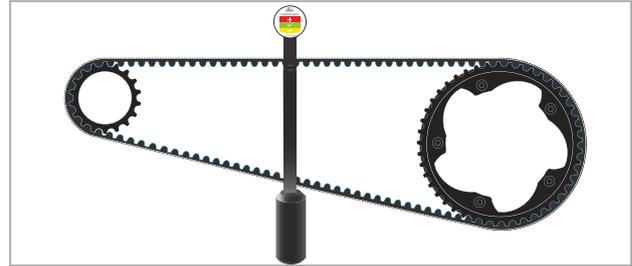


Figure 234: Attached measuring stick

- 2 Place the ruler on both belt sprockets.

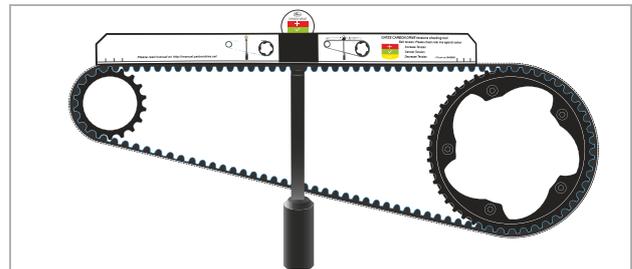


Figure 235: Ruler in place

- ⇒ Read tension on the tension indicator.

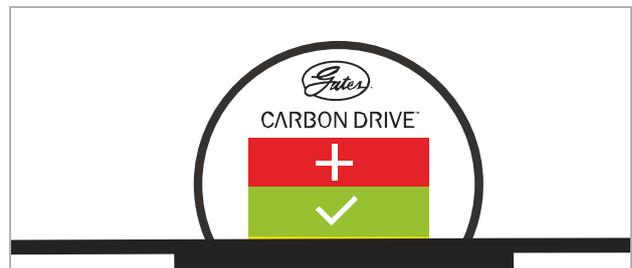


Figure 236: Example: On yellow along lower edge, so reduce belt tension slightly

- Red = increase belt tension
- Green = belt tension is set correctly
- Yellow = reduce belt tension

7.5.5 Checking the riding light

- 1 Check the cable connections on the headlight and rear light for damage and corrosion and ensure they are firmly in position.
 - ⇒ If the headlight or rear lights do not come on, take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.
- ⇒ If cable connections are damaged or corroded, or are not firmly in positioned. take pedelec out of service. Contact specialist dealer.
- 2 Switch light on.
- 3 Check that the headlight and rear light come on.
 - 4 Place pedelec 5 m from the wall.
 - 5 Stand the pedelec up straight. Hold the handlebars straight with both hands. Do not use the kickstand.

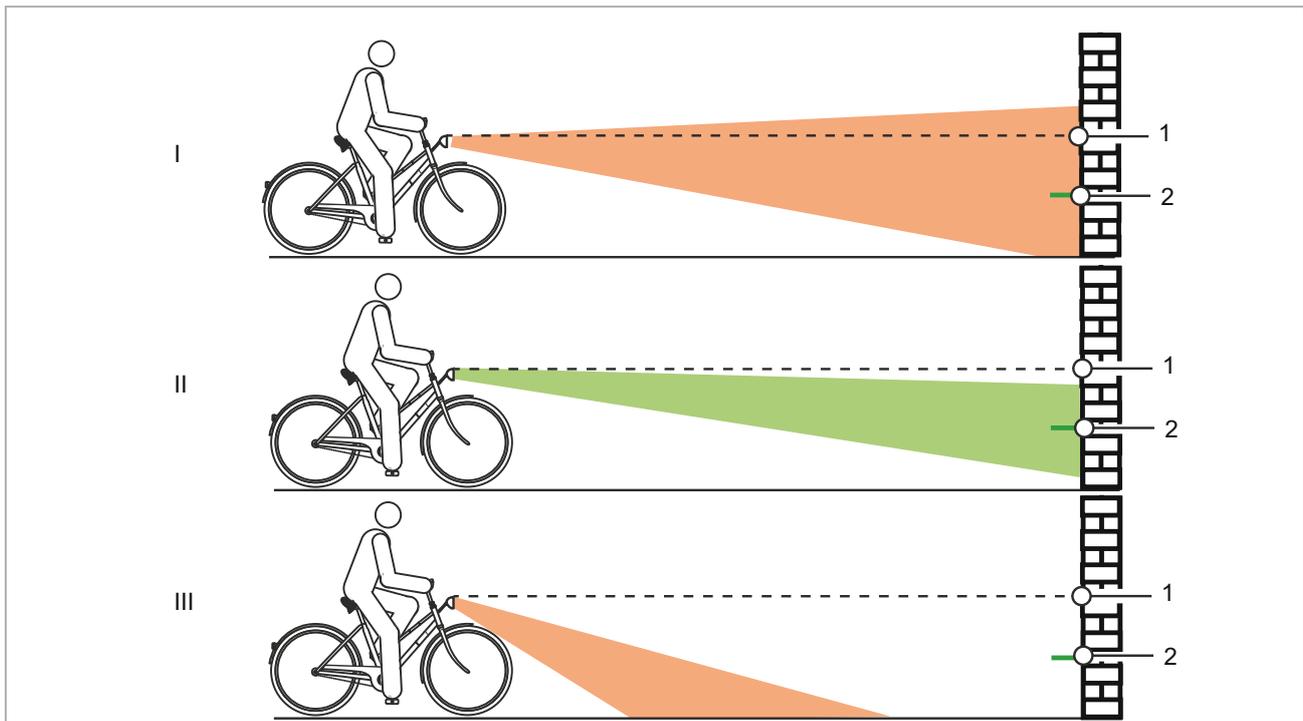


Figure 237: Light positioned too high (1), correctly (2) and too low (3)

- 6 Check the position of the light beam.
 - ⇒ If the light is positioned too high or too low, adjust riding light (see Section 6.5.16.1).

7.5.6 Checking the stem

- ▶ The stem and quick release system must be inspected at regular intervals. The specialist dealer should adjust them if they require adjustment.
- ▶ If the hexagon socket head screw is also loosened, the bearing clearance also needs to be adjusted. Medium-strength thread locker, such as Loctite blue, then needs to be applied to the loosened screws and the screws tightened as per specifications.
- ▶ Check metal contact surfaces on cone, stem clamping screw and fork steerer for corrosion.
- ⇒ Take pedelec out of service if there is any wear or signs of corrosion. Contact specialist dealer.

7.5.7 Checking the handlebars

- 1 Take hold of handlebars with both hands on the handles.
 - 2 Move handlebars up and down and press to tilt.
- ⇒ If the handlebars can move, contact your specialist dealer.
- 3 Place front wheel in position where it can't move sideways (e.g. in a bike stand).
 - 4 Hold handlebars firmly with both hands.
 - 5 Check if the handlebars are able to twist against the front wheel.
- ⇒ If the handlebars can move, contact your specialist dealer.

7.5.8 Checking the saddle

- 1 Hold saddle firmly.
 - 2 Check whether the saddle twists, tilts or can be pushed in one direction or other.
- ⇒ If the saddle twists, tilts or can be pushed in one direction or other, adjust the saddle (see Section 6.5.4).
 - ⇒ Contact your specialist dealer if the saddle cannot be fixed into position.

7.5.9 Checking the seat post

- 1 Take seat post out of the frame.
- 2 Check seat post for cracks and corrosion.
- 3 Reinsert seat post.

7.5.10 Check pedal.

- 1 Hold pedal and try to move it sideways toward the inside or outside. In doing so, observe whether the crank arm or bearing move sideways.
- ⇒ If the pedal, crank arm or crank bearing moves sideways, fasten screw on the pedal crank rear.
- 2 Hold pedal and try to move it upwards and downwards vertically. In doing so, observe whether the pedal, crank arm or crank bearing moves vertically.
- ⇒ If the pedal, crank arm or crank bearing moves vertically, fasten screw.

7.5.11 Checking the gear shift

- 1 Check that all gear shift components are free of damage.
- 2 Contact your specialist dealer if components are damaged.
- 3 Place the pedelec on stand.
- 4 Turn the pedal crank clockwise.
- 5 Switch through all speeds.
- 6 Check that pedelec can switch through all speeds without making unusual noises.
- 7 Adjust the gear shift if gears cannot be changed correctly.

7.5.11.1 Checking the electric gear shift

- 1 Check the cable connections for damage and corrosion and ensure they are firmly in position.
- ⇒ If cable connections are loose, damaged or corroded, contact your specialist dealer.

7.5.11.2 Check the mechanical gear shift

- 1 Change gear a number of times. Check whether the Bowden cables get stuck or they make scraping noises.
 - 2 Check the physical condition of the Bowden cables for visible damage and check to see if wire strands are broken.
- ⇒ Have defective Bowden cables replaced. Contact specialist dealer.

7.5.11.3 Check derailleur gears

The chain is tensioned by the rear derailleur in pedelecs with derailleur gears.

- 1 Place the pedelec on stand.
 - 2 Check to see if the chain is sagging.
 - 3 Gently press the rear derailleur forwards to check whether it moves and whether it goes back into position by itself.
- ⇒ If the chain is sagging or the rear derailleur does not go back into position by itself, contact your specialist dealer.
- 4 Check that there is clearance between the chain tensioner and spokes.
- ⇒ If there is no clearance or the chain scrapes against the spokes or tyres, contact your specialist dealer.
- 5 Check that there is clearance between the chain or rear derailleur and spokes.
- ⇒ If there is no clearance or the chain scrapes against the spokes, contact your specialist dealer.

7.5.11.4 Checking the hub gear

In the case of pedelecs with a hub gear or back-pedal brake, the chain or the belt is tensioned by an eccentric bearing or movable fork end in the bottom bracket axle. Special tools and specialist knowledge are required to tension the chain. Contact specialist dealer.

- ✓ Remove the chain guard on pedelecs with a circumferential chain guard.

- 1 Place the pedelec on stand.
- 2 Check the chain or belt tension in three or four positions, turning the crank a full revolution.

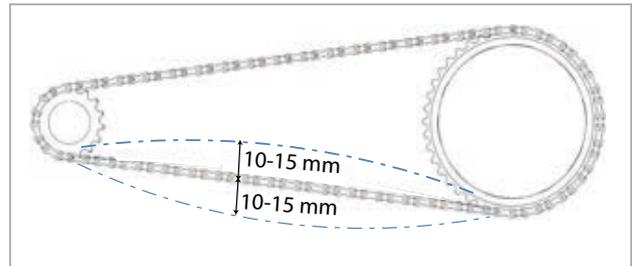


Figure 238: Checking the chain tension (example): 5 mm upwards, 10 mm downwards = 15 mm deviation

- 3 If the chain or the belt can be pushed more than 2 cm, the chain will need to be re-tensioned. Contact specialist dealer.
- ⇒ If the chain or belt can only be pushed up and down less than 1 cm, you will need to the chain or belt slightly. Contact specialist dealer.
- ⇒ The ideal chain and belt tension has been achieved if the chain can be pushed between a maximum of 10 and 15 mm in the middle between the pinion and the toothed wheel. The crank must also turn without resistance.

7.5.11.5 Adjusting gear shift

Adjusting the ROHLOFF hub

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- 1 Check whether shift cable tension is set in such a way that there is a perceptible play of around 5 mm when the shift handle is turned.
 - 2 Adjust the shift cable tension by turning the **tension adjuster**.
- ⇒ Unscrew the **tension adjuster** to increase the shift cable tension.
- ⇒ Tighten the **tension adjuster** to decrease the shift cable tension.

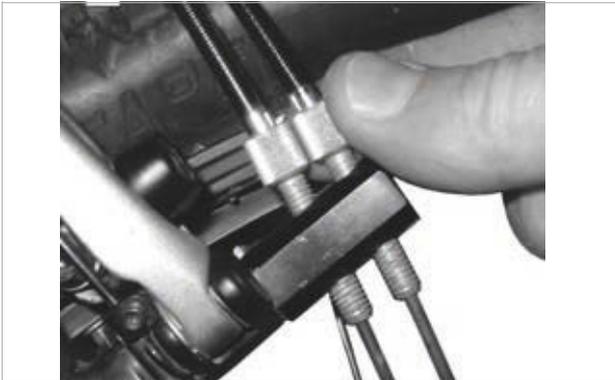


Figure 239: The tension adjuster on ROHLOFF hub versions with internal switch control is located on the tension counter support



Figure 240: The tension adjuster on ROHLOFF hub versions with external switch control is located on the cable box positioned on the left-hand side

- 3 If the marking and numbers on the shift handle do no longer coincide after the gear shift is adjusted, tighten one of the tension adjusters and screw out the other tension adjuster to the same extent.

Adjusting cable-operated gear shift, dual-cable

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- ▶ For a smooth gear shift, adjust the **adjusting sleeves** underneath the chain stay on the frame.
- ▶ The shift cable has around 1 mm play when it is pulled out gently.

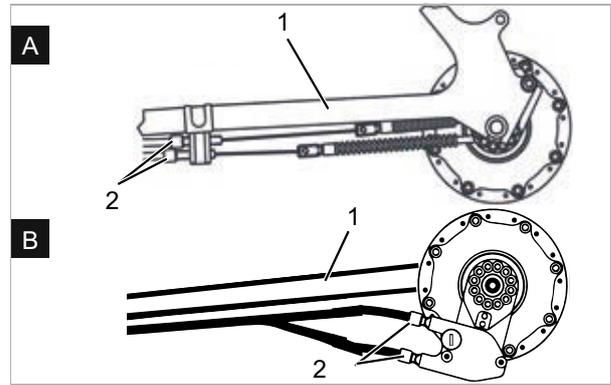


Figure 241: Adjusting sleeves (2) on two alternative versions (A and B) of a dual-cable, Bowden-cable-operated gear shift on the chain stay (1)

Adjusting Bowden-cable-operated twist grip, dual-cable

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- ▶ For a smooth gear shift, adjust the **adjusting sleeves** on the shifter housing.
- ⇒ There is noticeable play of 2 to 5 mm (1/2 gear) when you turn the twist grip.

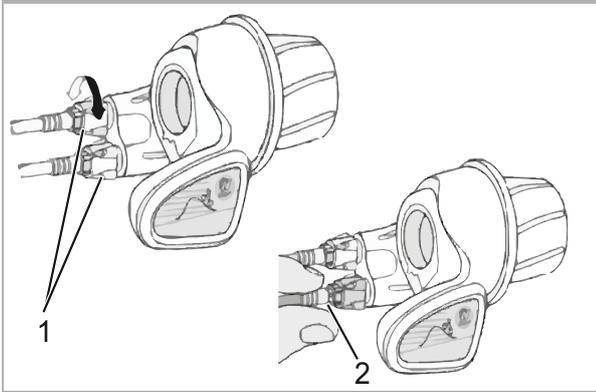


Figure 242: Twist grip with adjusting sleeves (1) with play (2)

Checking kickstand stability

- 1 Place the pedelec on a slight elevation of 5 cm.
 - 2 Extend kickstand.
 - 3 Jolt pedelec to check stability.
- ⇒ If pedelec topples over, tighten screws or change height of the kickstand.

8 Inspection and maintenance

8.1 Initial inspection

After 200 km or 4 weeks after purchase

Vibrations produced while riding can cause screws and springs that were tightened during pedelec manufacture to settle or come loose.

- ▶ Arrange an appointment for the initial inspection directly when purchasing the pedelec.
- ▶ Have the initial inspection entered and stamped in the maintenance book.



- ▶ Carrying out the initial inspection, see Section 8.4.

8.2 Major inspection

every six months

You must have your specialist dealer perform a major inspection every six months as a minimum. This is the only way to ensure that the pedelec remains safe and fully functional.

Tasks require technical expertise, special tools and special lubricants. The pedelec may become damaged if the stipulated major inspection and procedures are not carried out. This is why only specialist dealers may carry out the major inspection.

- ▶ Contact your specialist dealer and arrange an appointment.
- ▶ Enter and stamp major inspection tasks in the maintenance book.



- ▶ Perform major inspection.

8.3 Component-specific maintenance

High-quality components require extra maintenance. Tasks require technical expertise, special tools and special lubricants. The pedelec may become damaged if the stipulated maintenance intervals and procedures are not carried out. This is why only specialist dealers may carry out maintenance.

Correct maintenance on the fork not only guarantees a long service life, but also ensures optimal performance.

Each maintenance interval shows the maximum cycling hours for the required type of maintenance that the component manufacturer recommends.

- ▶ Optimise performance with shorter maintenance intervals, depending on use, terrain and environmental conditions.



- ▶ Enter any components with extra maintenance requirements with their corresponding maintenance intervals into the maintenance book when the pedelec is purchased.
- ▶ Inform the buyer of the additional maintenance schedule.
- ▶ Enter and stamp maintenance tasks in the maintenance book.

Inspection and maintenance intervals for suspension fork		
SR SUNTOUR suspension fork		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance 1	Every 50 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance 2	Every 100 hours
FOX suspension fork		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance	Every 125 hours or once a year
RockShox suspension fork		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance of stanchions for: Paragon™, XC™ 28, XC 30, 30™, Judy®, Recon™, Sektor™, 35™*, Bluto™, REBA®, SID®, RS-1™, Revelation™, PIKE®, Lyrik™, Yari™, BoXXer	Every 50 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance of spring and damper unit for: Paragon, XC 28, XC 30,30 (2015 and earlier), Recon (2015 and earlier), Sektor (2015 and earlier), Bluto (2016 and earlier), Revelation (2017 and earlier), REBA (2016 and earlier), SID (2016 and earlier), RS-1 (2017 and earlier), BoXXer (2018 and earlier)	Every 100 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance of spring and damper unit for: 30 (2016+), Judy (2018+), Recon (2016+), Sektor (2016+), 35 (2020+)*, Revelation (2018+), Bluto (2017+), REBA (2017+), SID (2017+), RS-1 (2018+), PIKE (2014+), Lyrik (2016+), Yari (2016+), BoXXer (2019+)	Every 200 hours

Inspection and maintenance intervals for seat post		
by.schulz suspension seat post		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance	After the first 250 km; every 1500 km after that
Eightpins suspension seat post		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean wiper	20 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean slide bushing	40 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	Replace slide bushing, wiper and felt strip	100 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	Seal service for gas pressure spring	200 hours
FOX suspension seat post		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance	Every 125 hours or once a year
KINDSHOCK suspension seat post		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance	Every 6 months
RockShox dropper post		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Venting of remote control lever and/or maintenance of lower seat post unit for: Reverb™ A1/A2/B1, Reverb Stealth A1/A2/B1/C1*	Every 50 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	Detach lower seat post, clean brass pins, check and replace if necessary and apply new grease for: Reverb AXS™ A1*	Every 50 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	Venting of remote control lever and/or maintenance of lower seat post unit for: Reverb B1, Reverb Stealth B1/C1*, Reverb AXS™ A1*	Every 200 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	Complete maintenance of seat post for: Reverb A1/A2, Reverb Stealth A1/A2	Every 200 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	Complete maintenance of seat post for: Reverb B1, Reverb Stealth B1	Every 400 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	Complete maintenance of seat post for: Reverb AXS™ A1*, Reverb Stealth C1*	Every 600 hours
SR SUNTOUR suspension seat post		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance	Every 100 hours or once a year
All other suspension seat posts		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance	Every 100 hours

Inspection and maintenance intervals for rear frame damper		
RockShox rear frame damper		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Service air chamber assembly	Every 50 hours
<input type="checkbox"/>	Service damper and spring	Every 200 hours
FOX rear frame damper		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance	Every 125 hours or once a year
SR SUNTOUR rear frame damper		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Complete shock absorber service including damper reassembly and air seal replacement	Every 100 hours

Inspection and maintenance intervals for hub		
SHIMANO 11-speed hub		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Internal oil change and maintenance	1,000 km after start of use, then every 2 years or 2,000 km
All other SHIMANO gear hubs		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Lubricate internal components	Once a year or every 2,000 km
ROHLOFF Speedhub 500/14		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Clean cable box and grease cable drum interior	Every 500 km
<input type="checkbox"/>	Oil change	Every 5,000 km or at least once a year
Pinion		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance 1 Check drive elements and replace if necessary Clean cable pulley, slide surfaces and gear box interior, epicyclic wheels, etc. thoroughly and grease generously	Every 500 km
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maintenance 2 Replace chain rings and change oil	Every 10,000 km

 **WARNING**
Injury due to damaged brakes

Special tools and specialist knowledge are required to repair the brakes. Incorrect or unauthorised assembly can damage the brakes. This may lead to an accident with serious injuries.

- ▶ Only specialist dealers may carry out repairs on brakes.
- ▶ Only carry out work or changes, such as dismantling, sanding or painting, which are permitted and described in the brake operating instructions.

Injury to the eyes

Problems may arise if the settings are not made properly and you may sustain serious injuries as a result.

- ▶ Always wear safety glasses during Inspection and maintenance work.

 **CAUTION**
Crash and falling caused by unintentional activation

There is a risk of injury if the electric drive system is activated unintentionally.

- ▶ Remove the battery before inspection or maintenance.

Crash caused by material fatigue

If the service life of a component has expired, the component may suddenly fail. This may cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Have the specialist dealer carry out basic cleaning of the pedelec every six months, preferably at the same time as the required servicing work.

 **CAUTION**
Hazard for the environment due to toxic substances

The brake system contains toxic and environmentally harmful oils and lubricants. Such fluids will contaminate if they enter the sewers or groundwater.

- ▶ Dispose of lubricants and oils left over after repairs in an environmentally responsible way in accordance with statutory regulations.

Notice

The motor is maintenance-free and only qualified specialist personnel may open it.

- ▶ Never open the motor.

8.4 Carry out initial inspection

Incorrectly fastened screws may come loose due to impact. The stem may no longer be firmly fixed in its position as a result. This will cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Check the handlebars and the stem quick release system are firmly in position after the first two hours of riding.

Vibrations produced while riding can cause screws and springs that were tightened during manufacture of the pedelec to settle or come loose.

- 1 Check quick release system is fixed in position.
- 2 Check all tightening torques of screws and screw connections.



8.5 Perform major inspection

Complying with these inspection and maintenance instructions is the only way to reduce wear on components, increase the operating hours and guarantee safety.

Diagnosis and documentation of current status

Components	Fre- quency	Description			Criteria		Measures if rejected
		Inspection	Tests	Maintenance	Accept- ance	Rejection	
Chassis							
Frame	Once a month	Dirt	...	Section 7.3.4	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	6 months	Maintenance	...	Section 7.4.1	O.K.	Untreated	Wax
	6 months	Check for damage – fracture, scratches	Section 8.6.1	...	O.K.	Damage detected	Take pedelec out of service, new frame as specified in parts list
Carbon frame (optional)	Once a month	Dirt	Section 7.3.4	...	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	6 months	Maintenance	...	Section 7.4.1	O.K.	No wax	Wax
	6 months	Damage to paintwork	Section 8.6.1.1	...	O.K.	Damage to paintwork	Apply paint
	6 months	Damage from impact	Section 8.6.1.1	...	O.K.	Damage from impact	Take pedelec out of service, new frame as specified in parts list
ROCKSHOX Rear frame damper (optional)	6 months	Check for damage, corrosion, fracture	See ROCKSHOX component maintenance instructions	Maintenance as specified by manufacturer Air chamber assembly group, damper and spring	O.K.	Damage detected	New rear frame damper as specified in parts list
FOX Rear frame damper (optional)	6 months	Check for damage, corrosion, fracture	...	Send to FOX	O.K.	Damage detected	New rear frame damper as specified in parts list
SR SUNTOUR Rear frame damper (optional)	6 months	Check for damage, corrosion, fracture	See SR SUNTOUR component maintenance instructions	Maintenance as specified by manufacturer Complete shock absorber service including damper reassembly and air seal replacement	O.K.	Damage detected	New rear frame damper as specified in parts list
Steering system							
Handlebars	Once a month	Cleaning	...	Section 7.3.6	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	6 months	Wax	...	Section 7.4.7	O.K.	Untreated	Wax
	6 months	Check mount fastening	Section 7.5.7	...	O.K.	Loose, rust	Tighten screws; new handlebars as specified in parts list if necessary



Components	Fre- quency	Description			Criteria		Measures if rejected
		Inspection	Tests	Maintenance	Accept- ance	Rejection	
Stem	Once a month	Cleaning	...	Section 7.3.5	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	6 months	Wax	...	Section 7.4.6	O.K.	Untreated	Wax
	6 months	Check mount fas- tening	Section 7.5.6 and Section 8.6.4	...	O.K.	Loose, rust	Retighten screws; new stem as specified in parts list if neces- sary
Handles	Once a month	Cleaning	...	Section 7.3.7	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	Once a month	Care	Section 7.4.8	...	O.K.	Untreated	Talcum powder
	before each ride	Wear; check if fas- tened securely	Section 7.1.11	...	O.K.	Missing, wob- bles	Retighten screws, new handles and cov- erings as specified in parts list
Steering head- set	6 months	Clean and check for damage	...	Clean, lubricate and adjust	O.K.	Unclean	Clean and lubricate
Fork (rigid)	6 months	Check for damage, corrosion, fracture	...	Dismount, check, lubricate, refit	O.K.	Damage detected	New fork as specified in the parts list
Carbon fork (optional)	6 months	Check for damage, corrosion, fracture	...	Maintenance as specified by manufacturer Lubrication, oil change as specified by manufacturer	O.K.	Damage detected	New fork as specified in the parts list
SR SUNTOUR suspension fork (optional)	6 months	Check for damage, corrosion, fracture	...	Maintenance as specified by manufacturer Lubrication, oil change as specified by manufacturer	O.K.	Damage detected	New fork as specified in the parts list
FOX suspen- sion fork (optional)	6 months	Check for damage, corrosion, fracture	...	Send to FOX	O.K.	Damage detected	New rear frame damper as specified in parts list
RockShox sus- pension fork (optional)	6 months	Check for damage, corrosion, fracture	...	Maintenance as specified by manufacturer Lubrication, oil change as specified by manufacturer	O.K.	Damage detected	New fork as specified in the parts list
Spinner sus- pension fork (optional)	6 months	Check for damage, corrosion, fracture	...	Maintenance as specified by manufacturer Lubrication, oil change as specified by manufacturer	O.K.	Damage detected	New fork as specified in the parts list



Components	Fre- quency	Description			Criteria		Measures if rejected
		Inspection	Tests	Maintenance	Accept- ance	Rejection	
Wheel							
Wheel	Before each ride	Concentricity	Section 7.1.7	...	O.K.	Not straight	Re-mount wheel
	6 months	Assembly	Section 7.5.1	...	O.K.	Loose	Adjust quick release
Tyres	Once a month	Cleaning	Section 7.3.10	...	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	Once a week	Tyre pressure	Section 7.5.1.1	...	O.K.	Tyre pressure too low/too high	Adjust tyre pressure
	10 days	Wear	Section 7.3.10	...	O.K.	Worn profile	New tyre as specified in the parts list
Rims	6 months	Wax	...	Section 7.4.10	O.K.	Untreated	Wax
	6 months	Wear	Section 7.5.1.3	...	O.K.	Defective rim	New rim as specified in the parts list
	Once a month	Wear on brake surface	Section 7.5.2.4	...	O.K.	Worn brake surface	New rim as specified in the parts list
Spokes	Once a month	Cleaning	...	Section 7.3.11	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	3 months	Check tension	Section 7.5.1.3	...	O.K.	Loose, tension varies	Re-tension spokes or new spokes as specified in parts list
	6 months	Check rim hooks	Section 7.5.1.3	...	O.K.	Twisted rim hooks	New rim as specified in the parts list
Spoke nipples	Once a month	Cleaning	...	Section 7.3.11	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	Once a month	Wax	...	Section 7.4.13	O.K.	Untreated	Wax
Nipple holes	6 months	Check for cracks	Section 7.5.1.4	...	O.K.	Cracks	New rim as specified in the parts list
Nipple well	Once a year	Check for cracks	Section 7.5.1.5	...	O.K.	Cracks	New rim as specified in the parts list
Hub	Once a month	Cleaning	...	Section 7.3.12	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	Once a month	Care	...	Section 7.4.12	O.K.	Untreated	Treat
Hub with cone bearing (optional)	Once a month	Cleaning	...	Section 7.3.12	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	Once a month	Care	...	Section 7.4.12	O.K.	Untreated	Treat
	6 months	Check mount fastening	...	...	O.K.	Loose, rust	Retighten screws; new handlebars as specified in parts list if necessary
	Once a year	Adjust	...		O.K.	Not adjusted	New position



Components	Fre- quency	Description			Criteria		Measures if rejected
		Inspection	Tests	Maintenance	Accept- ance	Rejection	
Hub gear (optional)	Once a month	Cleaning	...	Section 7.3.12	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	Once a month	Care	...	Section 7.4.12	O.K.	Untreated	Treat
	6 months	Check mount fas- tening	...	...	O.K.	Loose, rust	Retighten screws; new handlebars as specified in parts list if necessary
	6 months	Functional check	Section 7.5.11.4	...		incorrect switching	Readjust hub
Saddle and seat post							
Saddle	Once a month	Cleaning		Section 7.3.9	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	6 months	Check mount fas- tening	Section 7.5.8	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Leather saddle (optional)	Once a month	Cleaning	...	Section 7.3.9.1	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	6 months	Care	...	Section 7.4.11	O.K.	Untreated	Leather wax
	6 months	Check mount fas- tening	Section 7.5.8	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Seat post	Once a month	Cleaning	...	Section 7.3.8	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	6 months	Care	...		O.K.	Untreated	Leather wax
	6 months	Complete clean, check fastening and paint protection film	...	Section 8.6.8	O.K.	Loose	Tighten screws, new paint protection film
Carbon seat post (optional)	Once a month	Cleaning	...	Section 7.3.8	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	6 months	Care	...	Section 7.4.9.2	O.K.	Untreated	Assembly paste
	6 months	Complete clean, check fastening and paint protection film	...	Section 8.6.8.1	O.K.	Loose	Tighten screws, apply new paint protection film; new seat post as specified in parts list if damaged
Suspension seat post (optional)	Once a month	Cleaning	...	...	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	6 months	Care	...	Section 7.4.9.1	O.K.	Untreated	Oils
	100 hours or 6 months	Complete clean, check fastening and paint protection film	Section 8.6.8	...	O.K.	Loose	Tighten screws, new paint protection film
by.schulz sus- pension seat post (optional)	After the first 250 km; every 1500 km after that	Complete clean, check fastening and paint protection film, lubricate	Section 8.6.8.2	...	O.K.	Loose	Tighten screws, apply new paint protection film; new seat post as specified in parts list if damaged
SR SUNTOUR suspension seat post	Every 100 hours or once a year	Complete clean, check fastening and paint protection film, lubricate	Section 8.6.8.3	...	O.K.	Loose	Tighten screws, apply new paint protection film; new seat post as specified in parts list if damaged



Components	Fre- quency	Description			Criteria		Measures if rejected
		Inspection	Tests	Maintenance	Accept- ance	Rejection	
EIGHTPINS NGS2 Suspension seat post	20 hours	Refill oil	...	Section 7.4.19	O.K.	No oil	Refill oil
	20 hours	Clean wiper			O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	40 hours	Clean slide bushing			O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	100 hours	Replace slide bushing, wiper and felt strip			O.K.	No replacement	Replace
	200 hours	Seal service for gas pressure spring			O.K.	No service	Carry out the service
EIGHTPINS H01 Suspension seat post	20 hours	Refill oil	...	Section 7.4.19	O.K.	No oil	Refill oil
	20 hours	Clean wiper			O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	40 hours	Clean slide bushing			O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	100 hours	Replace slide bushing, wiper and felt strip			O.K.	No replacement	Replace
	200 hours	Seal service for gas pressure spring			O.K.	No service	Carry out the service
RockShox dropper post	50 hours	Venting	...	See manufacturer	O.K.		
	50 hours	Cleaning	...	See manufacturer	O.K.		
	200 hours	Venting	...	See manufacturer	O.K.		
	200 hours	Complete maintenance	...	See manufacturer	O.K.		
	400 hours	Complete maintenance	...	See manufacturer	O.K.		
	600 hours	Complete maintenance	...	See manufacturer	O.K.		
FOX suspension seat post	Every 125 hours or once a year	Complete maintenance	See manufacturer	At the manufacturer FOX	...	...
Safety guards							
Belt or chain guards	6 months	Attachment	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Guard	6 months	Attachment	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Motor cover	6 months	Attachment	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Brake system							
Handbrake	6 months	Attachment	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Brake fluid	6 months	Check fluid level	Depending on time of year	...	O.K.	Too little	Top up brake fluid; take Pedelec out of service if damaged; new brake hoses
Brake linings	6 months	Brake linings, brake discs and rims	Check for damage	...	O.K.	Damage detected	New brake linings, brake discs and rims



Components	Fre- quency	Description			Criteria		Measures if rejected
		Inspection	Tests	Maintenance	Accept- ance	Rejection	
Back-pedal brake braking armature	6 months	Attachment	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Brake system	6 months	Attachment	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Lighting system							
Light cabling	6 months	Connections, cor- rect wiring	Check	...	O.K.	Cable defec- tive, no light	New cabling
Rear light	6 months	Side light	Functional check	...	O.K.	No constant light	New rear light as specified in parts list; replace if necessary
Front light	6 months	Side light, daytime riding light	Functional check	...	O.K.	No constant light	New front light as specified in parts list; replace if necessary
Reflectors	6 months	All complete, state, fastening	Check	...	O.K.	Damaged or not all com- plete	New reflectors
Drive/gear shift							
Chain/cassette/ sprocket/chain- ring	6 months	Check for damage	Check for dam- age	...	O.K.	Damage	Refasten if necessary or replace as speci- fied in parts list
Chain guard/ spoke guard	6 months	Check for damage	Check for dam- age	...	O.K.	Damage	Replace as specified in parts list
Bottom bracket axle/crank	6 months	Check mount fas- tening	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Pedals	6 months	Check mount fas- tening	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Shifter	6 months	Check mount fas- tening	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Shift cables	6 months	Check for damage	Check for dam- age	...	O.K.	Loose and defective	Adjust shift cables; new shift cables if necessary
Front derailleur	6 months	Check for damage	Check for dam- age	...	O.K.	Gear shift diffi- cult or not pos- sible	Adjust
Rear derailleur	6 months	Check for damage	Check for dam- age	...	O.K.	Gear shift diffi- cult or not pos- sible	Adjust
Electric drive system							
On-board com- puter	6 months	Check for damage	Check for dam- age	...	O.K.	No screen, defective screen display	Restart, test battery, new software or new on-board computer, decommissioning,
Control panel	6 months	Check control panel for damage	Check for dam- age	...	O.K.	No response	Restart; contact con- trol panel manufac- turer, new control panel
Tachometer	6 months	Calibration	Speed meas- urement	...	O.K.	Pedelec travel- ling 10% too fast/slow	Take pedelec out of service until the source of the error is found
Cabling	6 months	Visual inspection	Visual inspec- tion	...	O.K.	Failure in sys- tem, damage, kinked cables	New cabling



Components	Frequency	Description			Criteria		Measures if rejected
		Inspection	Tests	Maintenance	Acceptance	Rejection	
Rechargeable battery	6 months	First examination	See Section on Assembly	...	O.K.	Error message	Contact battery manufacturer; take out of service, new battery
Battery mount	6 months	Firmly in position, lock, contacts	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Loose; lock doesn't close, no contacts	New battery mount
Motor	6 months	Visual inspection and mount	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Damage, loose	Refasten motor, contact motor manufacturer, new motor; take out of service
Software	6 months	Check version	Check software version	...	In latest version	Not latest version	Import update
Miscellaneous							
Pannier rack	Before each ride	Stability	Section 7.1.5	...	O.K.	Loose	Firm
	Once a month	Dirt	...	Section 7.3.4	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	6 months	Maintenance	...	Section 7.4.3	O.K.	Untreated	Wax
	6 months	Check fastening and paint protection film	Section 8.5.2	...	O.K.	Loose	Tighten screws, new paint protection film
Kickstands	Once a month	Dirt	...	Section 7.3.4	O.K.	Dirt	Cleaning
	6 months	Maintenance	...	Section 7.4.5	O.K.	Untreated	Wax
	6 months	Attachment	Section	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
	6 months	Stability	Section	...	O.K.	Tips over	Change kickstand height
Bell	Before each ride	Sound	Functional check, Section 7.1.10.	...	O.K.	No ring, too quiet, missing	New bell as specified in the parts list
Attachments (optional)	6 months	Attachment	Check mount fastening	...	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws

Technical inspection, checking safety, test ride

Components	Description		Criteria		Measures if rejected
	Assembly/inspection	Tests	Acceptance	Rejection	
Brake system	6 months	Functional check	O.K.	No full braking; braking distance too long	Locate defective part in brake system and correct
Gear shift under operating load	6 months	Functional check	O.K.	Problems when shifting gear	Readjust gear shift
Suspension components (fork, shock absorber, seat post)	6 months	Functional check	O.K.	Suspension too deep or no longer exists	Locate defective component and correct
Electric drive system	6 months	Functional check	O.K.	Loose connection, problems when riding, accelerate	Locate faulty component in electric drive and remedy
Lighting system	6 months	Functional check	O.K.	No continuous light, not bright enough	Locate defective part in lighting system and correct
Test ride	6 months	Functional check	No strange noises	Strange noises	Locate source of noise and correct



8.5.1 Inspect frame

- 1 Check frame for cracks, warping and damage to the paintwork.
- ⇒ If there are any cracks, warping or damage to the paintwork, remove the pedelec from service. New frame as specified in the parts list.

8.5.1.1 Inspecting the carbon frame

You need to distinguish between scratches on the paintwork and impacts if the carbon frame paintwork is damaged.

- ▶ Ask customer what caused the damage.
- ▶ Examine damage with a magnifying glass to see if fibres are permanently damaged or delamination has taken place.

8.5.2 Inspecting the pannier rack

Scratches, cracks and breaks may appear on the pannier rack caused by the panniers and cargo boxes.

- 1 Examine pannier rack for scratches, cracks and breaks.
- ⇒ Replace damaged pannier racks.
- ⇒ If the paint protection film is missing or has worn away, affix a new paint protection film.

8.5.3 Inspecting and maintaining the rear frame damper

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment



WARNING

Injury due to explosion

The air chamber is pressurised. If the air system is serviced in a rear frame damper, it can explode and cause serious injury.

- ▶ Wear safety goggles, protective gloves and safety clothing when assembling or carrying out maintenance on the bicycle.
- ▶ Release the air for the air chambers. Detach all air insert fitments.
- ▶ Never service or dismantle a rear frame damper if it has not completely rebounded.

Intoxication from suspension oil

Suspension oil is poisonous to the touch, irritates respiratory tracts and causes cancer, sterility and mutation in germ cells.

- ▶ Always wear safety goggles and nitrile gloves when carrying suspension oil.
- ▶ Never perform inspection or maintenance when you are pregnant.
- ▶ Use an oil catchment tray under the section where the rear frame damper is being serviced.

Intoxication from lubrication oil

The lubrication oil for Eightpins seat posts is toxic if touched or inhaled.

- ▶ Always wear safety goggles and nitrile gloves when working with lubrication oil.
- ▶ Lubricate seat post in the open air or in a well-ventilated room only.
- ▶ Avoid skin coming into contact with lubrication oil. Wear nitrile gloves when lubricating, cleaning and maintaining the vehicle.
- ▶ Use an oil catchment tray under the section where the seat post is serviced.


CAUTION
Hazard for the environment due to toxic substances

The rear frame damper contains toxic and environmentally harmful oils and lubricants. Such fluids will contaminate if they enter the sewers or groundwater.

- ▶ Dispose of lubricants and oils left over after repairs in an environmentally responsible way in accordance with statutory regulations.

- 1 Dismantle the rear frame damper.
 - 2 Clean and inspect its interior and exterior.
 - 3 Recondition air springs.
 - 4 Replace airtight seals on air springs.
 - 5 Change oil.
- ⇒ Replace dust wipers.

8.5.4 Inspecting the gear hub

8.5.4.1 Adjusting the hub with cone bearing

In the case of hubs with a cone bearing, the bearing shell fixed in the hub cone body rotates with its larger ball bearing surfaces around the inner bearing cone resting against the fork end. The outer bearing shell rotating around the stationary bearing cone is subject to considerably more evenly distributed loads thanks to its larger ball running surface.

- 1 Attach a small, red colour marking on the lock nut.
 - 2 Turn the wheel axle 40° to 90° every 1,000 to 2,000 km.
- ⇒ The bearing cone is subject to evenly distributed loads.

8.5.5 Inspecting the stem

Incorrectly fastened screws may come loose due to impact. The stem may no longer be firmly fixed in its position as a result. This will cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ Check the handlebars and the stem's quick release are firmly in position.

8.5.6 Inspect and grease steering headset

- 1 Remove fork.
- 2 Clean steering headset. If it is very dirty, flush the bearing with cleaning agents such as WD-40 or Karamba.
- 3 Check steering headset for damage.
 - ⇒ If the steering headset is damaged, replace steering headset as specified in the parts list.
- 4 Grease steering headset and bearing seat with highly viscous, water-repellent grease (e.g. Dura Ace special grease by SHIMANO).
- 5 Re-fit fork with steering headset as per fork instructions.



8.5.7 Inspecting the axle with quick release

CAUTION

Crash caused by unfastened quick release

A faulty or incorrectly installed quick release may become caught in the brake disc and block the wheel. This will cause a crash.

- ▶ Install the front wheel quick release lever on the opposite side to the brake disc.

Crash caused by faulty or incorrectly installed quick release

The brake disc becomes very hot during operation. Parts of the quick release may become damaged as a result. The quick release comes loose. This will cause a crash with injuries.

- ▶ The front wheel quick release lever and the brake disc must be situated on opposite sides.

Crash caused by incorrectly set clamping force

Excessively high clamping force will damage the quick release and cause it to lose its function.

Insufficient clamping force will cause a detrimental transmission of force. The suspension fork or the frame may break. This will cause a crash with serious injuries.

- ▶ Never fasten a quick release using a tool (e.g. hammer or pliers).
- ▶ Only use the clamping lever with the specified set clamping force.

- 1 Undo quick release.
- 2 Fasten quick release.
- 3 Check the position and clamping force of the quick release lever.

- ⇒ The quick release lever is flush with the lower housing.
- ⇒ You should be able to see slight impression on the palm of your hand when you close the quick release lever.



Figure 243: Adjusting the quick release clamping force

- 4 Use a 4 mm hexagon socket spanner to adjust the clamping lever clamping force if required.
- 5 Check the quick release lever position and clamping force again.

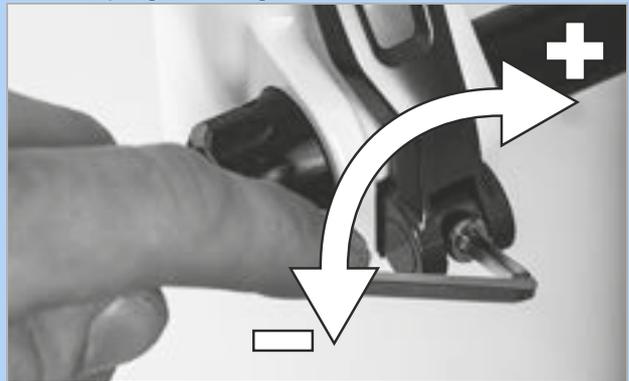


Figure 244: Adjusting the quick release clamping force



8.5.8 Inspecting the fork

WARNING

Injury due to explosion

The air chamber is pressurised. When the air system in a faulty suspension fork is maintained, it may explode and cause serious injury.

- ▶ Wear safety goggles, protective gloves and safety clothing when assembling or carrying out maintenance on the bicycle.
- ▶ Release the air for the air chambers. Detach all air insert fitments.
- ▶ Never service or dismantle a suspension fork if it has not completely rebounded.

CAUTION

Hazard for the environment due to toxic substances

The suspension fork contains toxic and environmentally harmful oils and lubricants. Such fluids will contaminate if they enter the sewers or groundwater.

- ▶ Dispose of lubricants and oils left over after repairs in an environmentally responsible way in accordance with statutory regulations.

- 1 Remove fork.
- 2 Check fork for cracks, warping and damage to the paintwork.
 - ⇒ If there are any cracks, warping or damage to the paintwork, remove the pedelec from service. New fork as specified in the parts list.
- 3 Clean inside and exterior.
- 4 Grease fork.
- 5 Install fork.

8.5.8.1 Inspecting the carbon suspension fork

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- 1 Remove fork.
- 2 Check fork for cracks, warping and damage to the paintwork.
- 3 You need to distinguish between scratches on the paintwork and impacts if the carbon suspension fork paintwork is damaged.
 - ▶ Ask customer what caused the damage.
 - ▶ Examine damage with a magnifying glass to see if fibres are permanently damaged or delamination has taken place.

8.5.8.2 Inspecting the suspension fork

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- 1 Remove fork.
- 2 Check fork for cracks, warping and damage to the paintwork.
 - ⇒ If there are any cracks, warping or damage to the paintwork, remove the pedelec from service. New fork as specified in the parts list.
- 3 Dismantle suspension fork.
- 4 Lubricate dust seals and slide bushings.
- 5 Check torques.
- 6 Clean inside and exterior.
- 7 Grease fork.
- 8 Install fork.
- 9 Adjust suspension fork (see Section 6.3.14).



8.5.9 Inspecting the seat post



WARNING

Intoxication from lubrication oil

The lubrication oil for Eightpins seat posts is toxic if touched or inhaled.

- ▶ Always wear safety goggles and nitrile gloves when working with lubrication oil.
- ▶ Lubricate seat post in the open air or in a well-ventilated room only.
- ▶ Avoid skin coming into contact with lubrication oil. Wear nitrile gloves when lubricating, cleaning and maintaining the vehicle.
- ▶ Use an oil catchment tray under the section where the seat post is serviced.

- 1 Remove seat post from the frame.
- 2 Clean seat post on the inside and outside.
- 3 Examine seat post rack for scratches, cracks and fractures.
 - ⇒ Replace damaged seat post as specified in the parts list.
- 4 Fit seat post as per height specifications in the pedevec pass.

8.5.9.1 Inspecting the carbon seat post

Only applies to pedevecs with this equipment

You need to distinguish between impacts and scratches on the paintwork if the carbon seat post paintwork is damaged.

- ▶ Ask customer what caused the damage.
- ▶ Examine damage with a magnifying glass to see if fibres are permanently damaged or delamination has taken place.

8.5.9.2 Inspecting and greasing BY.SCHULZ suspension seat post

Only applies to pedevecs with this equipment

- 1 Remove seat post from the frame.
- 2 Remove safety and protective cover.
- 3 Clean seat post on the inside and outside.
- 4 Examine seat post rack for scratches, cracks and fractures.
 - ⇒ Replace damaged seat post as specified in the parts list.
- 5 Lubricate screws in the parallel suspension.
- 6 Reinsert seat post as per height specifications in the pedevec pass. Check screws for correct tightening torques.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Torques G1 M8 seat clamp screw M5 fixing grub screws	20 ... 24 Nm 3 Nm
<input type="checkbox"/>	Torque G2 M6 seat clamp screw M5 fixing grub screws	12 ... 14 Nm 3 Nm

- 7 Put on safety and protective cover.



8.5.9.3 Inspecting and greasing RS SUNTOUR suspension seat post

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- 1 Remove seat post from the frame.
- 2 Remove safety and protective cover.
- 3 Examine seat post rack for scratches, cracks and fractures.
 - ⇒ Replace damaged seat post as specified in the parts list.
 - ⇒ If the paint protection film protecting a child seat is missing or has worn away, affix a new paint protection film.
- 4 Undo preload adjuster and take out steel suspension.
- 5 Clean seat post on inside and outside.
- 6 Grease seat post on inside with SR SUNTOUR grease no. 9170-001.
- 7 Lubricate pressure roller with bicycle chain oil.
 - ▶ Lubricate articulated joints in parallel suspension with bike chain oil.

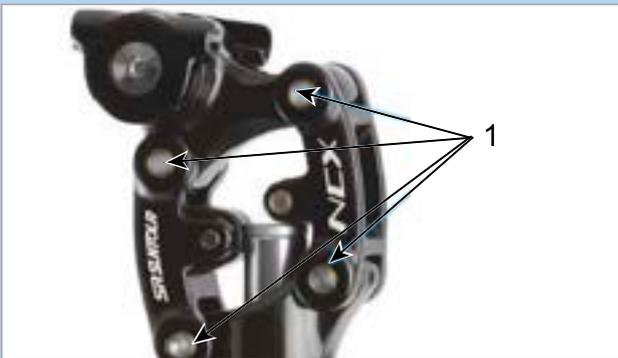


Figure 245: SR SUNTOUR suspension seat post lubrication points

- 8 Reinsert seat post as per height specifications in the pedelec pass.
- 9 Check screws for correct tightening torques.

<input type="checkbox"/> SR SUNTOUR suspension seat post torques Seat clamp screw M5 fixing grub screws	15–18 Nm 3 Nm
--	------------------

- 10 Put on safety and protective cover.



8.5.9.4 Inspecting the EIGHTPINS NGS2 seat post

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

Removing the seat post

- 1 Use a 2.5 mm hex key to turn the height adjustment 45° anti-clockwise and move to the “Open position”.



Figure 246: Moving height adjustment to the “Open position”

- 2 Activate operating lever. Pull seat post upwards at the same time and remove completely.



Figure 247: Pulling the seat post out

- 3 Activate operating lever. Hold Bowden cable fastener and pull or tilt forwards. Remove outer sleeve from the seat post remote control.



Figure 248: Removing the cartridge

- 4 Use a 5 mm to undo Postpin axle and pull out.



Figure 249: Undoing the Postpin axle

- 5 Pull cartridge from the piston rod while pushing the outer sleeve into the frame at the same time to help.

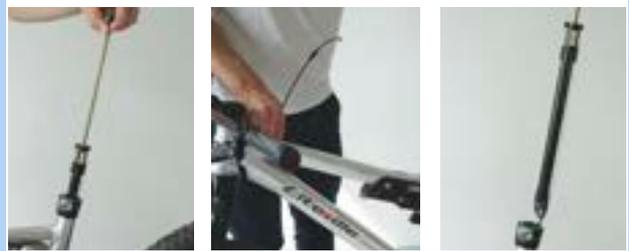


Figure 250: Pulling the cartridge out

- 6 Hold the cartridge with one hand at the height of the mechanism and pull the Bowden cable straight down with the other.
- 7 Hold the white actuating slide in the locking mechanism with your thumb.
- 8 Carefully push the Bowden cable upwards with the other hand and detach it.



Figure 251: Detaching the Bowden cable

Notice

- ▶ Never pull Bowden cable forwards at an angle.



Figure 252: Bowden cable position



- 9 Pull out the outer sleeve end cap from the counter support on the Postpin interface on the seat post.

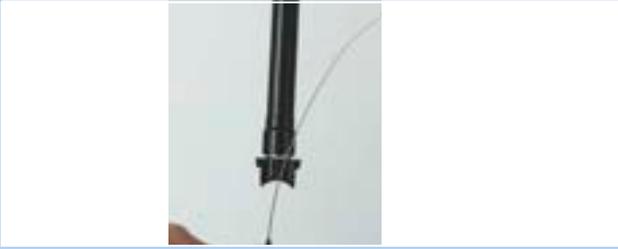


Figure 253: Pulling the end cap out

Removing the outer sleeve and slide bushing

- 1 Use a 3 mm hex spanner to remove attachment screw from the outer sleeve.
- 2 Detach outer sleeve by pulling upwards with your hand.
- 3 Pull slide bushing tube out of the seat tube.



Figure 254: Removing the outer sleeve and slide bushing

Caring for the outer sleeve

- 1 Detach spring washer or outer sealing ring.



Figure 255: Removed spring washer

- 2 Carefully remove the wiper from the groove.



Figure 256: Removing the wiper

- 3 Use a small, sharp object to look for and remove the end of the felt ring.
- 4 Carefully take out the felt ring.
- 5 Remove felt ring.
- 6 Clean or replace felt ring.



Figure 257: Removing the felt ring

- 7 Clean inside of outer sleeve with a cloth.



Figure 258: Cleaning the outer sleeve



- 8 Carefully re-insert dry felt ring with one end in the designated groove.
- 9 Unfurl felt ring within the outer sleeve, so that it lies on the groove.
- 10 Carefully press felt ring into the groove by hand. Ensure that both ends are fully pressed in and meet and that they do not overlap and are not twisted.



Figure 259: Inserting the felt ring

- 11 Insert cleaned or new wiper into the upper groove.
- 12 Stretch spring washer over the wiper.



Figure 260: Inserting and fastening the wiper

Clean slide bushing

- 1 Clean the slide bushing tube with a damp cloth.



Figure 261: Cleaning the slide bushing tube

Notice

- ▶ Do not squash. The slide bushing tube wall is very thin.

Increasing the air pressure

- 1 Use 3 mm hex spanner to unscrew valve cap.



Figure 262: Unscrewing the valve cap

- 2 Screw valve adapter into mounting interface from below.



Figure 263: Screwing the valve adapter in

- 3 Use compression pump to pump the cartridge up to 24 bar.



Figure 264: Pumping the cartridge up

Notice

Screwing in the valve adapter will not open the valve. No pressure is displayed. The pressure is displayed when you start pumping.

- 4 Unscrew pump and valve adapter.



- 5 Use a 3 mm hex spanner to screw the valve cover back on and tighten with a maximum torque of 0.5 Nm.

□	EIGHTPINS NGS2 tightening torques Valve cover, 3 mm hex spanner	0.5 Nm
---	---	--------



Figure 265: Fastening the cartridge valve cover

Notice

- ▶ The cartridge is not airtight without the valve cover.

- 4 Use a 3 mm hex spanner to screw the valve cover on and tighten with a maximum of 0.5 Nm.

□	EIGHTPINS NGS2 tightening torques Valve cover, 3 mm hex spanner	0.5 Nm
---	---	--------



Figure 269: Fastening the cartridge valve cover

Notice

- ▶ The cartridge is not airtight without the valve cover.

Setting the slipper clutch

- 1 Use 3 mm hex spanner to unscrew valve cap.



Figure 266: Unscrewing the valve cap

- 2 Secure the mounting interface against twisting with a 24 mm open-end spanner.



Figure 267: Securing against twisting

- 3 Set the torque to 18 Nm with a torque wrench and a 6 mm hex bit with a shaft length of at least 25 mm. Rotate clockwise.

□	EIGHTPINS NGS2 tightening torques Slipper clutch, 6 mm hex spanner	18 Nm
---	--	-------



Figure 268: Setting in a clockwise direction



installing the outer sleeve and slide bushing

- 1 Carefully push slide bushing tube into the seat tube.
- 2 Detach outer sleeve by pressing downwards with your hand.
- 3 Use a 3 mm hex spanner to fasten the attachment screw onto the outer sleeve.

□	EIGHTPINS NGS2 tightening torques	
	Outer sleeve attachment screw, 3 mm hex	18 Nm



Figure 270: Fitting the slide bushing and outer sleeve

Fitting the seat post

- 1 Attach the outer sleeve end cap in the counterholder on the seat post frame interface.



Figure 271: Attaching the end cap

- 2 Use both thumbs to push white activation slider downwards and hold with one thumb.



Figure 272: Pushing the white activation slider downwards

- 3 Attach Bowden cable with the nipple to the bracket for the Bowden cable.



Figure 273: Correct and incorrect Bowden cable

Notice

- ▶ Never pull Bowden cable forwards at an angle.

- 4 Carefully push cartridge into the seat tube. Pull the Bowden cable out of the frame to help.



Figure 274: Fastening the cartridge valve cover

Notice

- ▶ Before continuing with installation, ensure that the Bowden cable is fed into the middle of the longitudinal guide. If the Bowden cable is off-centre, it will be pinched by the tube.

- 5 Look at the frame interface through the hole in the Postpin. Push the cartridge down until the Postpin mounting interface on the seat post reaches the Postpin interface on the frame.

- 6 If necessary, turn the seat post slightly and push it to the correct position so that the Postpin axle can be inserted.



Figure 275: Fastening the cartridge valve cover

- 7 Use a 5 mm hex spanner to screw in Postpin axle and fasten slightly.

- 8 Use torque spanner to tighten Postpin axle with 8 Nm.

□	EIGHTPINS NGS2 tightening torques	
	Postpin axle, 5 mm hex spanner	8 Nm



Figure 276: Fastening the Postpin axle

9 Carefully insert slide bushing tube into the seat tube.



Figure 277: Inserting the slide bushing tube into the seat tube

10 Place outer sleeve on the seat tube and push downwards firmly.



Figure 278: Attaching the outer sleeve

11 Turn the outer sleeve so that the outer sleeve mounting hole is aligned with the fastening hole in the frame.

12 Use a 3 mm hex spanner to fasten the M5 attachment screw into the outer sleeve. Tighten screw gently with a maximum torque of 0.5 Nm.

□	EIGHTPINS NGS2 tightening torques M5 attachment screw, 3 mm hex spanner	0.5 Nm
---	---	--------

⇒ The screw must fasten into the outer sleeve easily without any resistance. If this is not the case, the hole in the frame is not aligned with the mounting hole in the outer sleeve. Turn outer sleeve into the right position.



Figure 279: Fastening the outer sleeve

13 Feed height adjustment clamp into the seat tube.

⇒ The two height adjustment clamp guides are in the longitudinal grooves inside the seat post.



Figure 280: Feeding the height adjustment clamp in

14 Push the seat post carefully downwards and feed into the wiper.



Figure 281: Pushing the seat post downwards

Notice

▶ Never let the seat post tube collide with the piston rod. There is a risk of scratches and damage to the piston rod. This will causes loss of air.

15 Move operating lever and press seat post downwards to the required height as per the values in the pedelec pass.

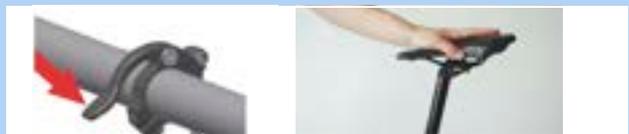


Figure 282: Setting the seat post height

16 Turn the height adjustment mechanism 45° in a clockwise direction and place in the "Closed position".



Figure 283: Closing the height adjustment



8.5.9.5 Eightpins H01 seat post

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

Removing the seat post

- 1 Use a 5 mm hex spanner to unscrew the Postpin axle.

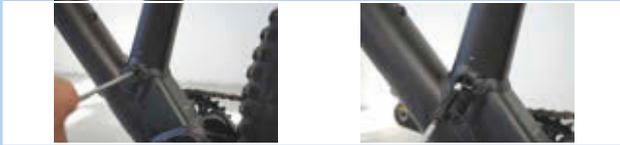


Figure 284: Undoing the seat post

- ▶ Detach Bowden cable from the on-bar remote control on the seat post.
- ▶ Detach the operating lever from the handlebars in the case of under-bar-remote control on the seat post. Activate operating lever. Hold Bowden cable fastener and pull or tilt forwards.



Figure 285: Unfastening the remote control

- 2 Pull seat post slowly out of the frame.

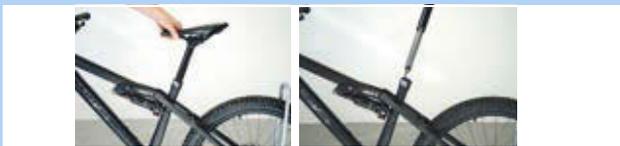


Figure 286: Removing the seat post

- 3 Pull out the special end cap for the outer sleeve from the bracket.
- 4 Detach the Bowden cable head from the hydraulic activation lever bracket.
- 5 If necessary, operate the lever by hand to make more space to detach it.



Figure 287: Removing the Bowden cable

Removing the outer sleeve and slide bushing

- 1 Use a 3 mm hex spanner to remove attachment screw from the outer sleeve.
- 2 Detach outer sleeve by pulling upwards with your hand.
- 3 Pull slide bushing tube out of the seat tube.



Figure 288: Removing the outer sleeve and slide bushing

Caring for the outer sleeve

- 1 Push the blue wiper towards the edge.
- 2 Detach the seal lip ring.



Figure 289: Detaching the seal lip ring

- 3 Detach spring washer or outer sealing ring.



Figure 290: Removed spring washer



4 Carefully remove the wiper from the groove.



Figure 291: Removing the wiper

5 Use a small, sharp object to look for and remove the end of the felt ring.

6 Carefully take out the felt ring.

7 Remove felt ring.

8 Clean or replace felt ring.



Figure 292: Removing the felt ring

9 Clean inside of outer sleeve with a cloth.



Figure 293: Cleaning the outer sleeve

10 Carefully re-insert dry felt ring with one end in the designated groove.

11 Unfurl felt ring within the outer sleeve, so that it lies on the groove.

12 Carefully press felt ring into the groove by hand. Ensure that both ends are fully pressed in and meet and that they do not overlap and are not twisted.



Figure 294: Inserting the felt ring

13 Insert cleaned or new wiper into the upper groove.

14 Stretch spring washer over the wiper.



Figure 295: Inserting and fastening the wiper



Clean slide bushing

- 1 Clean the slide bushing tube with a damp cloth.



Figure 296: Cleaning the slide bushing tube

Notice

- ▶ Do not squash. The slide bushing tube wall is very thin.

Cleaning and lubricating the guide grooves

- 1 Push the operating lever forwards.



Figure 297: Opening the height adjustment

- 2 Pull seat post out with your hand until it will go no further.

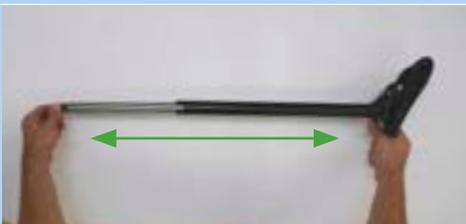


Figure 298: Pulling the seat post out

- 3 Clean the seat post longitudinal grooves with a damp cloth.



Figure 299: Cleaning the longitudinal groove

- 4 Apply grease into the longitudinal groove and on both cross-pieces.



Figure 300: Applying grease

- 5 Push seat post together.

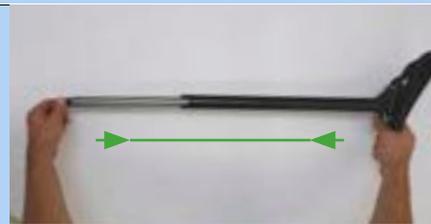


Figure 301: Pushing the seat post together

- 6 Push the height adjustment operating lever backwards.



Figure 302: Closing the height adjustment



installing the outer sleeve and slide bushing

- 1 Carefully push slide bushing tube into the seat tube.
- 2 Detach outer sleeve by pressing downwards with your hand.
- 3 Use a 3 mm hex spanner to fasten the attachment screw onto the outer sleeve.



Figure 303: Fitting the slide bushing and outer sleeve

Fitting the seat post

- 1 Attach Bowden cable head to the hydraulic activation lever bracket.
- 2 Push special end cap for the outer sleeve into the holder on the mounting interface.
- 3 Carefully push the seat post into the frame. In doing so, ensure that the wiper and the slide bushing do not become damaged.



Figure 304: Attaching and pushing in the seat post

- 4 Hold the Bowden cable firmly on the handlebars while feeding it in. Carefully pull the end of the Bowden cable from the frame so that the seat post slides downwards unhindered.



Figure 305: Attaching the end cap

- 5 Look at the frame interface through the hole in the Postpin. Push the seat post down until the Postpin mounting interface on the seat post reaches the Postpin interface on the frame.



Figure 306: Hole in the Postpin interface

- 6 If necessary, turn the seat post slightly and push it to the correct position so that the Postpin axle can be inserted.
- 7 Use a 5 mm hex spanner to screw in Postpin axle and fasten slightly.
- 8 Straighten saddle.
- 9 Use torque spanner to tighten Postpin axle with 8 Nm.

□	EIGHTPINS H01 tightening torques Postpin axle, 5 mm hex spanner	8 Nm
---	---	------

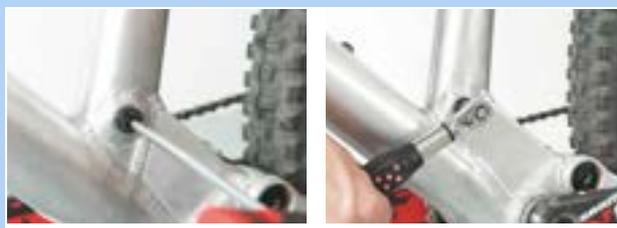


Figure 307: Screwing the seat post into position

9 Troubleshooting, fault clearance and repair

9.1 Preventing pain

The pedelec is both a means of transport and a piece of sports equipment that promotes health.

After the first few rides, you may experience sore muscles the next day. However, permanent pain should never occur during or after a ride.

The most common complaints are:

- Sitting discomfort
- Pain in hips
- Backache
- Pain in shoulders and nape of neck
- Numb or aching hands
- Pain in upper thigh
- Pain in the knee
- Pain in the foot

If you suffer from one or more of the complaints above, take the following action steps:

- 1** Check the correct adjustment of all components. In most cases, however, pain after pedelec rides is due to a lack of training and components set incorrectly or components that are not adjusted to the rider's physique.
- 2** Consult a doctor as soon as possible and talk openly about the complaints. Pain may be a sign of medical problems that need to be treated.



- 3** If the doctor does not diagnose a medical condition, visit a gym, sports trainer or physiotherapist. Personalised stretching or musculature strengthening exercises must be supervised to ensure they are performed correctly.

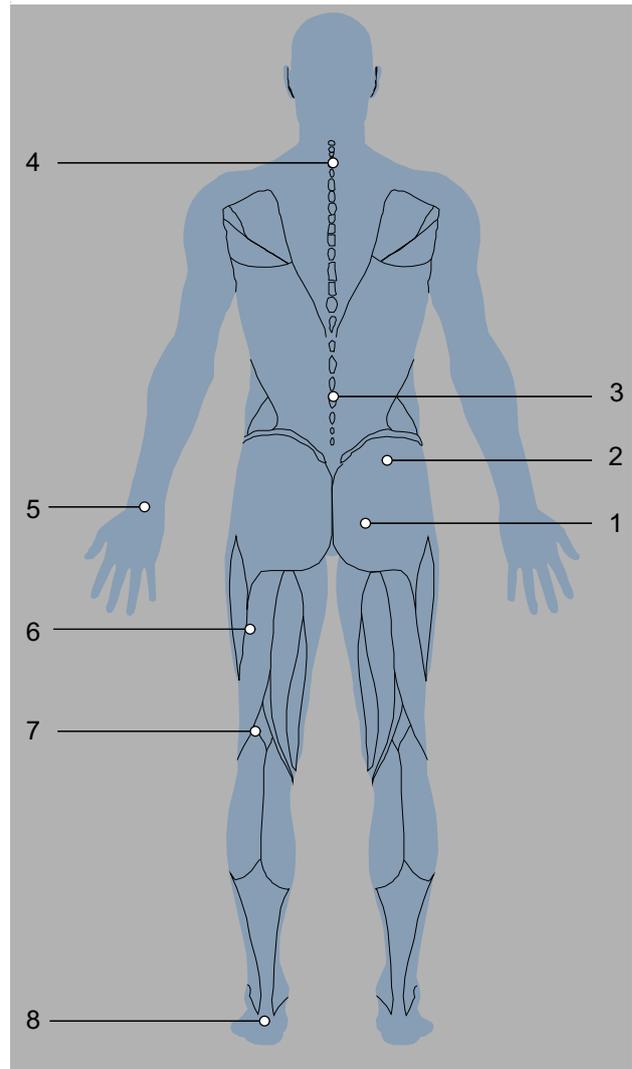


Figure 308: Known pain due to lack of training and/or incorrect component adjustment

9.1.1 Sitting discomfort

Around 50% of all pedelec riders experience sitting discomfort:

- Pressure pain in the sitting bones
- Pain in the lower back
- Pressure pain and numbness in perineal region

Solution

- Adopt an optimal riding position (see Section 6.5.2).
- Adjust the saddle height and tilt (see Section 6.5.4).
- Wear cycling shorts and use chamois cream (see Section 6.12).
- Use an ergonomically adjusted saddle (see Section 6.5.4).

- Ride standing up now and again.



9.1.2 Pain in hips

Lower back pain is often not caused by the back muscles, but by the iliopsoas muscle instead. This muscle is part of the inner hip musculature and flexes the hip. It is attached to the thigh bone and reaches up to the spine. Pain can occur in the back if this muscle is strained too much or shortened.

Solution

- Strengthening exercises for the iliopsoas muscle
- Stretching exercises for hip flexors and extensors.



9.1.3 Backache

Riding a pedelec strengthens the back musculature. The greater the saddle-to-bar drop is, the greater the strain on the back musculature is. At the beginning, a posture where you lean too far forward can lead to pain in the back, arms and wrists. The abdominal muscles are the counterpart to the back muscles and stabilise the pelvis and the back. Back pain is thus often caused by weak abdominal muscles.

Solution

- Contact specialist dealer. You need to adopt a more upright sitting position (see Section 6.5.3).

- Stretching exercises for the back and abdominal muscle ligaments and moderate bicycle training will lengthen the tendons and build new back and abdominal muscles.



The desired position can be adopted after a period of training.

9.1.4 Pain in shoulders and nape of neck

The weight of the upper body places a strain on the shoulders due to the bent-forward posture. The more stretched the position is, the more strain there is on the shoulders.

The specific posture adopted is often the source of pain. Pedelec riders often extend their arms. Impacts such as those occurring on bumpy roads are thus transmitted to the shoulders without suspension. This causes severe pain.

Another source of pain is a hunchback. Due to the posture adopted, the neck needs to be extended backwards excessively so that the rider can look forwards. This causes strain in the neck and shoulder muscles.

9.1.5 Numb or aching hands

Your hands are one of the three points of contact when you ride a pedelec. The hands transmit the weight of the upper body to the handlebars. In the upright Holland position, there is almost no weight applied whereas body weight is at its highest in the sports position. The force is applied to a small area on the handle, meaning the pressure load on the hands is very high. Hands are highly sensitive and can bear a maximum of 20% of body weight during prolonged exposure to load.

9.1.6 Pain in upper thigh

Pain in the upper thigh is usually due to muscular problems. A muscular imbalance between the extensors, flexors and adductors can cause this pain.

Solution



- A more upright riding position will immediately reduce pain.
- Always bend elbows slightly.
- ⇒ The elbow joint will not block. The arms cushion impacts.
- Adjust the handlebars (see Section 6.5.5).
- Always adopt an optimal riding position (see Section 6.5.3).

Solution

- Position handles perfectly (see Section 6.5.5.1, 6.5.5.2 and 6.5.8).
- Move hands and arms while riding (see Section 6.15).
- Use padded cycling gloves (see Section 2.15).
- Optimise handles (see Section 6.5.7).

Solution

- Increasing assistance on the pedelec will bring immediate relief.



- Targeted exercises to correct imbalance and shortening of the thigh muscles.
- Stretching exercises for the thigh muscles.

9.1.7 Knee pain

Pedelec riding is a sport that is easy on the knee joints and is recommended for beginners. Very powerful forces are transmitted from the thigh to the foot via the knee when pedalling. As a result, the tendons and cartilage in the knee are subjected to great stress.

Pain on the inside and outside of the knee is often caused by incorrect adjustment of the click system and the foot being out of position as a consequence. Pain in the lower part of the knee usually stems from an improper riding position.

Cold weather can also cause knee pain. Tendons are less elastic at low temperatures and thus rub against the knee more.

If the knee is out of position, the cartilage becomes very worn. Ligaments that are too short or muscular imbalances can increase this effect. Pain on the top of the kneecap often indicates a muscular imbalance. Pain under the kneecap is usually related to excessive pressure in the knee joint and consequential irritation to the patellar tendon.

9.1.8 Pain in the foot

Your feet are one of three points of contact when you ride a pedelec. Feet transmit force from the upper thigh to the pedal, thus driving the pedelec. In the process, your feet are subjected to between 100% and, during jumps, even up to 1,000% of your body weight.

Foot pain often arises when the saddle is too low or the foot is placed incorrectly on the pedal.

Unsuitable shoes can also be the cause of pain in the feet.

Solution

- Contact specialist dealer. Have the pedelec adjusted (see Section 6.5). Then measure the wheel.
- Avoid cold.



- Get imbalances under control through stretching exercises, strengthening the muscles and Blackroll training.

Solution

- Wear sturdy shoes which are not too tightly laced (see Section 2.5).
- Position feet correctly on the pedals (see Section 6.13).
- Adjust the saddle height to an optimum position (see Section 6.5.4).

9.2 Troubleshooting and fault clearance

The control panel indicates whether a critical or less critical error has occurred in the electric drive system.

You can read the error messages that the electric drive system generates in the eBike Flow app and at the specialist dealer's.

The rider can use a link in the eBike Flow app to display all information on errors and assistance on eliminating errors.

9.2.1 Control panel or electric drive system won't start

If the control panel and/or the electric drive system do not start up, proceed as follows:

- 1 Remove battery (see Section 6.12.1.1 or 6.12.2.1).
- 2 Insert battery (see Section 6.12.1.2 or 6.12.2.2).
- 3 Switching on the electric drive system (see Section 6.13.1).
- 4 Remove the battery if the electric drive system won't start (see Section 6.12.1.1 or 6.12.2.1).
- 5 Clean all the contacts with a soft cloth.
- 6 Insert battery (see Section 6.12.1.2 or 6.12.2.2).
- 7 Switching on the electric drive system (see Section 6.13.1).
- 8 Remove the battery if the electric drive system won't start (see Section 6.12.1.1 or 6.12.2.1).
- 9 Charge battery completely (see Section 6.12.3).
- 10 Insert battery (see Section 6.12.1.2 or 6.12.2.2).
- 11 Switching on the electric drive system (see Section 6.13.1).
- 12 Press the **On-Off button (control panel) for at least 8 seconds** if the electric drive system won't start.

13 If the electric drive system does not start after about 6 seconds, press the **On-Off button (control panel) for at least 2 seconds**.

14 Contact your specialist dealer if the electric drive system won't start.

9.2.2 Correcting errors in the assistance function

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
Assistance is not available.	Is the battery charged sufficiently?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Check battery is charged. 2 Recharge the battery if it is almost flat.
	Is the electric drive system switched on?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Press On-Off button (battery). ⇒ The electric drive system starts.
	Is the level of assistance set to [OFF]?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Set the assistance mode to a different level of assistance than [OFF]. 2 Contact your specialist dealer if you still feel that the no assistance is being supplied.
	The rechargeable battery, on-board computer or assistance switch may be connected incorrectly, or one or more of them may have a problem.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Contact specialist dealer.
	Are the pedals being pushed?	<p>The pedelec is not a motorbike.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Push the pedals.
	Is the speed too high?	<p>The electronic gear assistance is only active up to a maximum speed of 25 km/h.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Check on-board computer indicators.
	Is the eBike Lock function activated?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Use suitable on-board computer.
	The battery may become too hot during rides at high temperatures, up long inclines or when carrying a heavy load for a long time.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Switching off the electric drive system (see Section 6.13.2). 2 Leave pedelec to cool down. 3 Switching on the electric drive system (see Section 6.13.1).
The assisted journey distance is too short.	Is the battery fully charged?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Check charge level. 2 Recharge the battery if it is almost flat.
	The battery does not perform as well in winter weather.	This does not indicate a problem.
	The journey distance can be shorter depending on the road conditions, the gear level and the entire light usage time.	This does not indicate a problem.
	The battery is a consumable. Repeated charging and long periods of use will cause the battery to degrade (lose power).	<p>If the distance covered with a fully charged battery has become shorter, the battery may be affected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Replace old battery with new one.
It is difficult to pedal. Are the tyres pumped to an adequate pressure?		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Pump up tyres.
	Is the level of assistance set to [OFF]?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Set level of assistance to [HIGH], [STD], [ECO] or [AUTO]. 2 Contact your specialist dealer if the pedals are still stiff.
<eBike Lock function> can no longer be set up or switched off.	There is an internal error.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Contact specialist dealer.

Table 70: Error solution for assistance system

9.2.3 Correcting battery errors

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
The battery discharges very quickly.	The battery may be at the end of its useful life.	► Replace old battery with new one.
The battery cannot be recharged.	Is the charger mains plug firmly connected to the socket?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Disconnect the charger mains plug and plug it in again. 2 Start charging. 3 If the battery still won't recharge, contact your specialist dealer.
	Is the charger plug firmly connected to battery?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Disconnect the charger plug and plug it in again. 2 Start charging. 3 If the battery still won't recharge, contact your specialist dealer.
	Is the adapter firmly connected to the charger plug or the battery's charging port?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Connect the adapter firmly to the charger plug or the battery charging port. 2 Start charging. 3 If the battery still won't recharge, contact your specialist dealer.
	Is the connection terminal for the charger, charger adapter or batteries dirty?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Wipe with a dry cloth to clean the connection terminals. 2 Start charging. 3 If the battery still won't recharge, contact your specialist dealer.
The battery does not start charging when the charger is connected.	The battery may be at the end of its useful life.	► Replace old battery with new one.
The battery and charger become hot.	Has the battery or charger temperature exceeded the operating temperature range?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Interrupt charging process. 2 Leave battery and charger to cool down. 3 Start charging. <p>⇒ If the battery becomes too hot to touch, there might be a problem with the battery.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4 Contact specialist dealer.
The charger is hot.	If the charger is used continuously to charge batteries, it may become hot.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Interrupt charging process. 2 Leave charger to cool down. 3 Start charging.
The LED on the charger does not light up.	The LED on the charger will go out when the battery is fully charged.	This is not a malfunction.
	Is the charger plug firmly connected to battery?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Check connection for any contaminants. 2 Insert charger plug. 3 If the battery still won't recharge, contact your specialist dealer.
	Is the battery fully charged?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Disconnect charger mains plug. 2 Insert mains plug again. 3 Start charging. 4 Contact your specialist dealer if the LED on the charger still doesn't light up.
The battery cannot be removed.		► Contact specialist dealer.
The battery cannot be inserted.		► Contact specialist dealer.
Fluid is leaking from the battery.		► Observe all the warnings in Section 2 Safety.

Table 71: Error solution for battery

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
There is an unusual smell.		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Remove from the battery immediately. 2 Contact the fire service immediately. 3 Observe all the warnings in Section 2 Safety.
Fumes are emitted from the battery.		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Remove from the battery immediately. 2 Contact the fire service immediately. 3 Observe all the warnings in Section 2 Safety.

Table 71: Error solution for battery

9.2.4 Correcting errors on the control panel

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
No data are shown on the control panel if you press the On-Off button (battery) .	The battery charge level may be insufficient.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Charge the battery. 2 Switch on the power.
	Is the power switched on?	▶ Press the On-Off button (battery) to switch the power on.
	Is the battery charged?	<p>If the battery is fitted to the pedelec and is being charged, it cannot be switched on.</p> <p>▶ Interrupt charging.</p>
	Is the connector fitted to the power cable correctly?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Check whether the connector is fitted to the power cable correctly. 2 If the connector is fitted correctly, contact your specialist dealer.
	A component may be connected which the system is unable to recognise.	▶ Contact specialist dealer.
The eBike Lock function cannot be set up or switched off.	It may be a firmware error.	▶ Contact specialist dealer.
The Connect account has been deleted or deactivated and the eBike Lock function is still activated.	...	▶ Contact specialist dealer.

Table 72: On-board computer error solution

9.2.5 Correcting disc brake faults

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
Ringing and unusual sounds from disc brakes.	Riding on asphalt with off-road tyres.	▶ Contact specialist dealer. Fit a city or trekking tyre.
Low braking power from the disc brake.	Dirty or greasy brake disc.	▶ Clean brake disc thoroughly with white spirit or brake cleaner.
	Worn brake disc.	▶ Contact specialist dealer. New brake disc.
	Worn brake lining.	▶ Contact specialist dealer. New brake linings.
	Brake lining vitrification.	
Metallic noises from disc brake.	Worn brake linings.	▶ Contact specialist dealer. New brake linings and brake disc.
Spongy, soft or poor pressure point in disc brakes.	Brake calliper fitted incorrectly, brake disc loose, brake disc or brake lining worn or brake system leaking.	▶ Contact specialist dealer.
Noises when a disc brake is applied.	Dirt.	1 Clean brake disc and brake thoroughly. 2 If the problem is not solved, contact your specialist dealer.
	Worn or wrong brake linings.	▶ Contact specialist dealer. New brake linings and brake discs.
	Wheel, hub or axle fitted incorrectly.	▶ Contact specialist dealer. Check brake system and wheel assembly.
	Brake calliper and/or brake disc fitted incorrectly.	
	Incorrect torques.	
	Brake disc damaged by side impact.	
	Vitrified brake linings.	
	Brake system leaking.	
Incorrect brake mount height.		

Table 73: Disc brake error solution

9.2.6 Correcting faults in the ROCKSHOX suspension fork

9.2.6.1 Rebound too fast

The suspension fork rebounds too quickly, producing a "pogo stick" effect, where the wheel lifts from the ground in an uncontrolled way. This impairs traction and control (blue line).

Fork head and handlebars are deflected upwards if the wheel bounces back from the ground. Body weight may be thrown up and backwards in an uncontrolled way (green line).



Figure 309: Suspension fork rebounding too quickly

Solution



Figure 310: Turning the rebound adjuster (suspension fork) towards tortoise symbol

- ▶ Turn the rebound adjuster (suspension fork) clockwise towards the tortoise symbol.
- ⇒ The rebound speed is decreased (slower return).

9.2.6.2 Rebounding too slowly

The suspension fork does not rebound quickly enough after absorbing a bump. The suspension fork also remains deflected over subsequent bumps, which reduces deflection and increases the hardness of impacts. Available deflection, traction and control decrease (blue line).

The suspension fork remains in a deflected state, causing the headset and handlebars to move to a lower position. Body weight is shifted forward after impact (green line).



Figure 311: Suspension fork rebounding too slowly

Solution



Figure 312: Turning the rebound adjuster (suspension fork) towards hare symbol

- ▶ Turn the rebound adjuster (suspension fork) anti-clockwise towards the hare symbol.
- ⇒ The rebound speed is increased (faster return).

9.2.6.3 Suspension too soft on inclines

The suspension fork deflects at a low point in the terrain. The deflection is quickly used up, body

weight shifts forward, and the pedelec loses some momentum.



Figure 313: Excessively soft suspension in the suspension fork on hilly terrain

Solution



Figure 314: Adjust the compression adjuster so that it is harder

- ▶ Turn the **compression adjuster** clockwise.
- ⇒ The damping and compression stroke hardness is increased while the deflection stroke speed is reduced. Efficiency on hilly and flat terrain is improved.

9.2.6.4 Excessively hard damping on bumps

When the bike hits a bump, the suspension fork deflects too slowly and the wheel lifts up from the bump. Traction decreases when the wheel no longer touches the ground.

The headset and handlebars are deflected upwards significantly, which can impair control.



Figure 315: Excessively hard damping in the suspension fork on bumps

Solution



Figure 316: Adjust the compression adjuster so that it is softer

- ▶ Turn the **compression adjuster** anti-clockwise.
- ⇒ The damping and compression stroke hardness is reduced and the deflection stroke speed is increased. Sensitivity to small bumps is increased.

9.2.7 Correcting faults in the SR SUNTOUR suspension fork

9.2.7.1 Rebound too fast

The suspension fork rebounds too quickly, producing a "pogo stick" effect, where the wheel lifts from the ground in an uncontrolled way. This impairs traction and control (blue line).

Fork head and handlebars are deflected upwards if the wheel bounces back from the ground. Body weight may be thrown up and back in an uncontrolled way (green line).



Figure 317: Suspension fork rebounding too quickly

Solution

► Turn **rebound adjuster (fork)** clockwise.

⇒ The rebound speed is decreased (slower return).

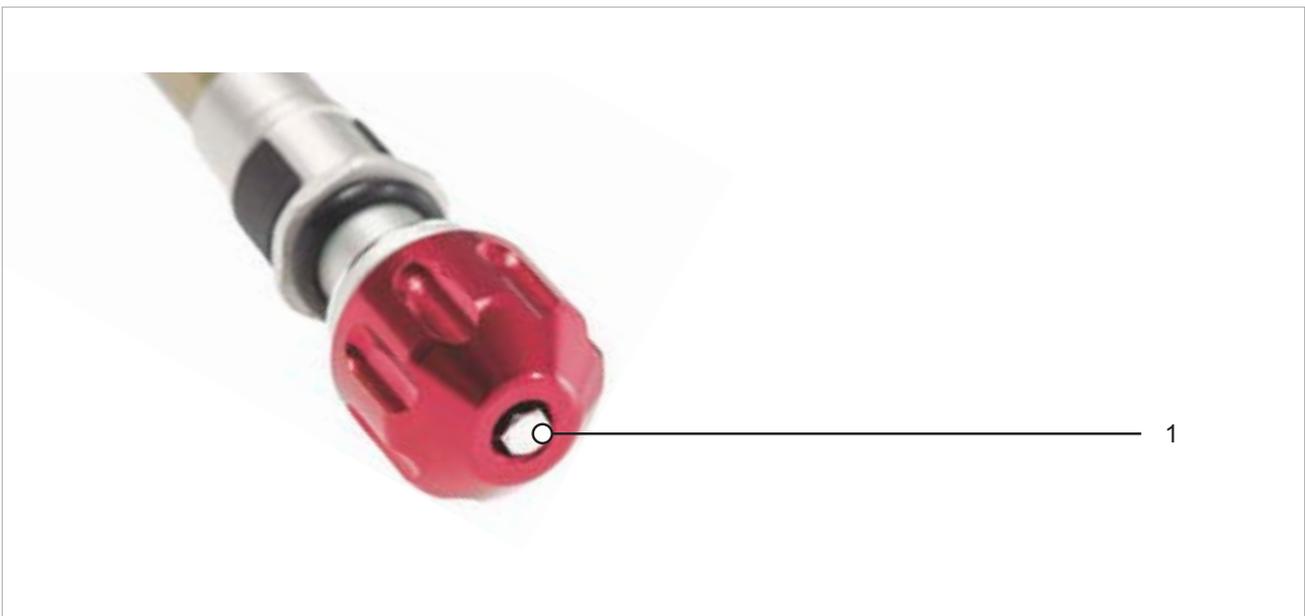


Figure 318: Example of SR SUNTOUR rebound adjuster (fork) (1)

9.2.7.2 Rebounding too slowly

The fork does not rebound quickly enough after absorbing a bump. The fork also remains deflected over subsequent bumps, which reduces deflection and increases the hardness of impacts. Available deflection, traction and control decrease (blue line).

The fork remains in a deflected state, causing the headset and handlebars to move to a lower position. Body weight is shifted forward after the impact (green line).



Figure 319: Suspension fork rebounding too slowly

Solution

► Turn **rebound adjuster (fork)** anti-clockwise.

⇒ The rebound speed is increased (faster return).



Figure 320: Example of SR SUNTOUR rebound adjuster (fork) (1)

9.2.7.3 Suspension too soft on inclines

The fork deflects at a low point in the terrain. The deflection is quickly used up, body weight shifts forward and the pedelec loses some momentum.



Figure 321: Excessively soft suspension in the suspension fork on hilly terrain

Solution

- ▶ Turn **compression lever** clockwise towards **LOCK**.

⇒ The damping and compression hardness are increased and the deflection stroke speed. Efficiency on hilly and flat terrain is improved.

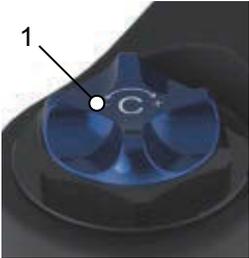
R2C2-PCS R2C2 RC2 RC2-PCS	RC-PCS RC	RLRC-PCS RLRC	LORC-PCS LORC
			

Table 74: Low-speed lever (1) on the SR Suntour suspension fork on the fork crown

9.2.7.4 Excessively hard damping on bumps

When the bike hits a bump, the fork deflects too slowly and the wheel lifts up from the bump. Traction decreases when the wheel no longer touches the ground.

The headset and handlebars are deflected upwards significantly, which can impair control.



Figure 322: Excessively hard damping in the suspension fork on bumps

Solution

► Turn **compression lever** clockwise towards OPEN.

⇒ The damping and compression hardness reduces and the deflection stroke speed is reduced. Sensitivity to small bumps is increased.

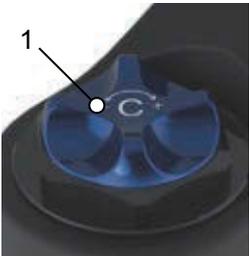
R2C2-PCS R2C2 RC2 RC2-PCS	RC-PCS RC	RLRC-PCS RLRC	LORC-PCS LORC
			

Table 75: Low-speed lever (1) on the SR Suntour suspension fork on the fork crown

9.2.8 Correcting faults in the ROCKSHOX rear frame damper

9.2.8.1 Rebound too fast

The rear frame damper rebounds too quickly, producing a "pogo stick" effect or causing the bike to bounce after the wheel hits a bump and lands on the ground again. This impairs traction and control due to the uncontrolled speed at which the damper rebounds after deflecting (blue line).

Saddle and handlebars are deflected upwards when the wheel bounces back from the ground. The rider's body weight may be shifted upwards and forwards if the damper fully rebounds too quickly (green line).



Figure 323: Rear frame damper rebounding too quickly

Solution

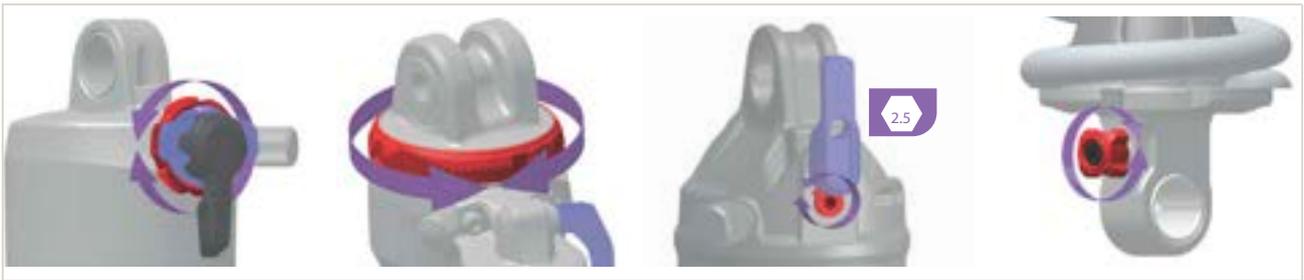


Figure 324: Position and shape of the rebound adjuster (rear frame damper) (red) depends on the model

- ▶ Turn **rebound adjuster (rear frame damper)** clockwise.
- ⇒ Rebound damping is increased. The rebound speed is reduced and traction and control is increased.

9.2.8.2 Rebounding too slowly

The rear frame damper does not rebound quickly enough after a bump has been compensated and is not in the required initial position when the wheel hits the next bump. The rear frame damper remains compressed during successive bumps, thus reducing deflection and ground contact and increasing hardness on the next impact. The rear wheel bounces off the second bump since the rear frame damper does not rebound quickly enough to make contact with the ground and return to the initial position again. The available deflection and traction are reduced (blue line).

The rear frame damper remains in a deflected state after contact with the first bump. When the rear wheel hits the second bump, the saddle follows the path of the rear wheel instead of remaining in a horizontal position. The available deflection and potential absorption of bumps are reduced, which causes instability and loss of control during successive bumps (green line).

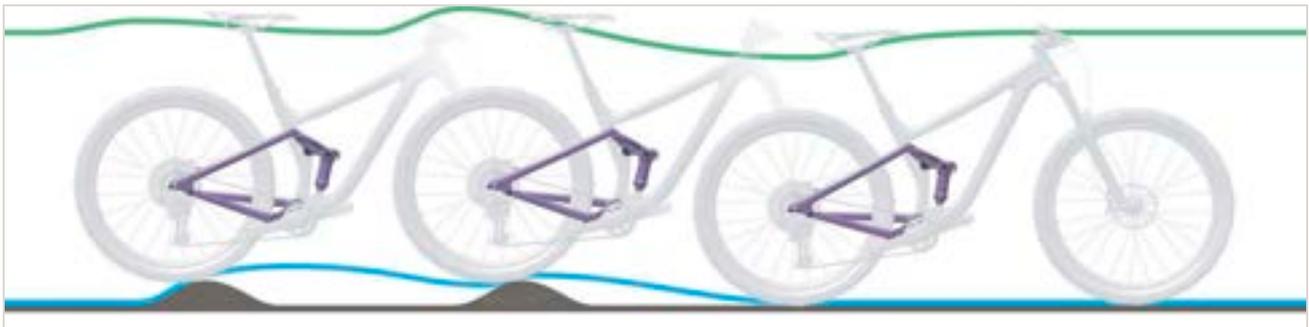


Figure 325: Rear frame damper rebounding too slowly

Solution



Figure 326: Position and shape of the rebound adjuster (red) depends on the model

- ▶ Turn **rebound adjuster** in an anti-clockwise direction.
- ⇒ Rebound damping is reduced. The rebound speed is increased. Performance while riding over bumps is improved.

9.2.8.3 Suspension too soft on inclines

The rear frame damper deflects deeply through the deflection range. Deflection is quickly used up,

to the pedelec rider's weight shifts forward and the pedelec loses some momentum.



Figure 327: Excessively soft suspension in the rear frame damper on hilly terrain

Solution

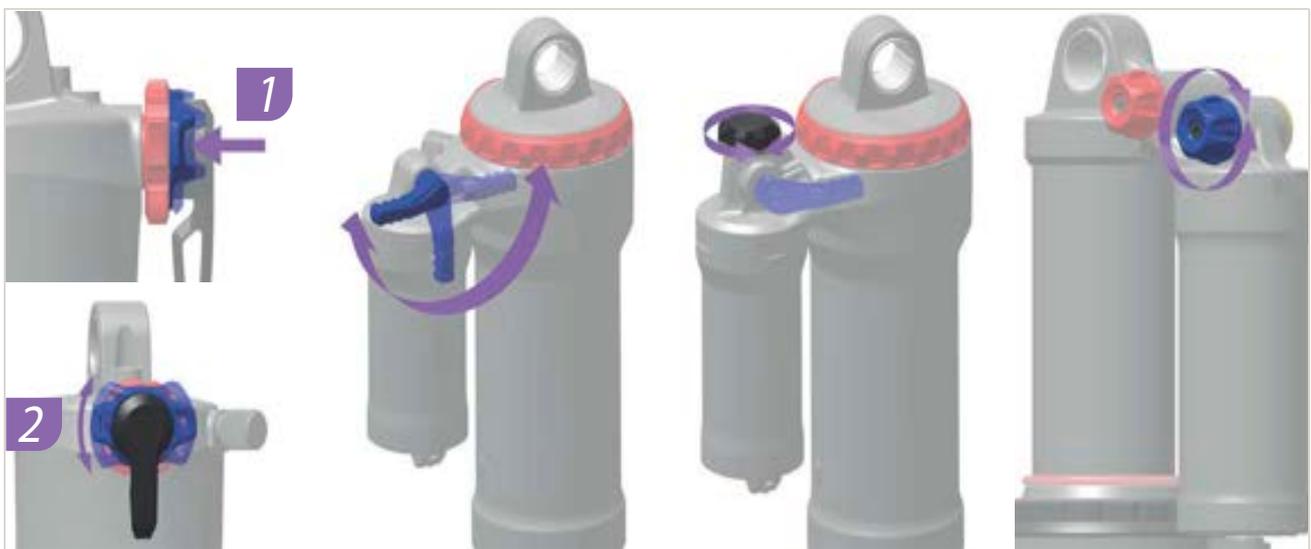


Figure 328: Position and shape of the compression adjuster (blue) depends on the model

- ▶ Turn the **compression adjuster** clockwise.
- ⇒ The damping and compression stroke hardness is increased while the deflection stroke speed is reduced.

9.2.8.4 Excessively hard damping on bumps

When the bike hits a bump, the damper deflects too slowly and the rear wheel lifts up from the bump. Traction is reduced (blue line).

Saddle and pedelec rider are deflected upwards and forwards, the rear wheel loses contact with the ground and control is reduced (green line).



Figure 329: Excessively hard damping in the rear frame damper on bumps

Solution

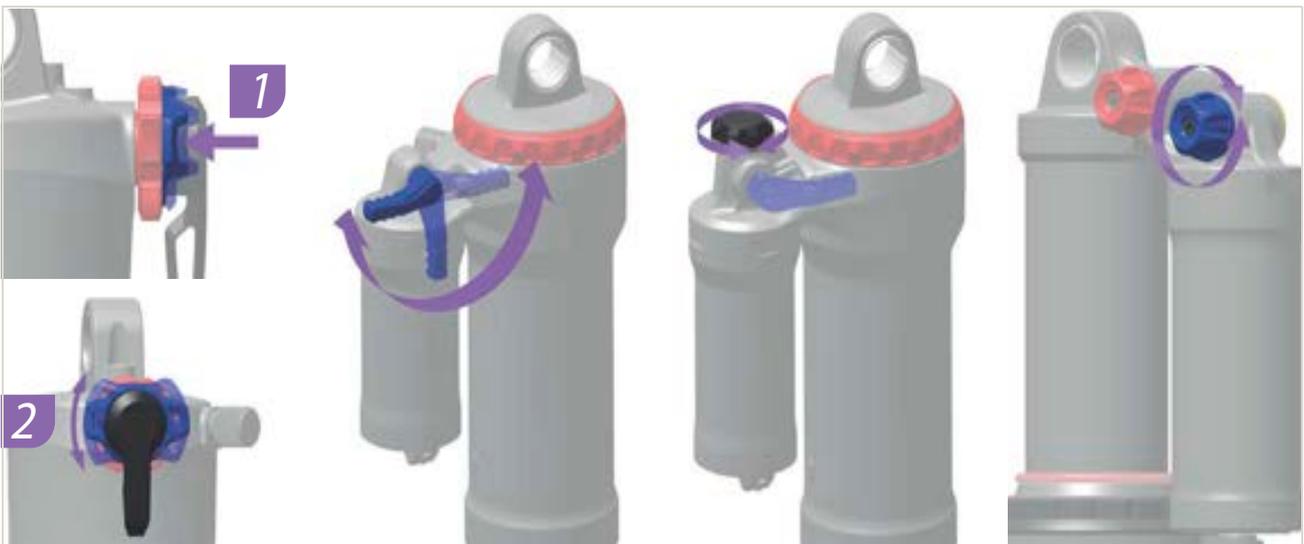


Figure 330: Position and shape of the compression adjuster (blue) depends on the model

- ▶ Turn the **compression adjuster** anti-clockwise.
- ⇒ The damping and compression stroke hardness is reduced and the deflection stroke speed is increased. Sensitivity to small bumps is increased.

9.2.9 Correcting faults in the SR SUNTOUR rear frame damper

9.2.9.1 Rebound too fast

The rear frame damper rebounds too quickly, producing a "pogo stick" effect or causing the bike to bounce after the wheel hits a bump and lands on the ground again. This impairs traction and control due to the uncontrolled speed at which the rear frame damper rebounds after deflecting (blue line).

Saddle and handlebars are deflected upwards when the wheel bounces back from the ground. The rider's body weight may be shifted upwards and forwards if the rear frame damper fully rebounds too quickly (green line).



Figure 331: Rear frame damper rebounding too quickly

Solution

► Turn **rebound adjuster (rear frame damper)** towards plus.

⇒ The deflection movement is reduced.

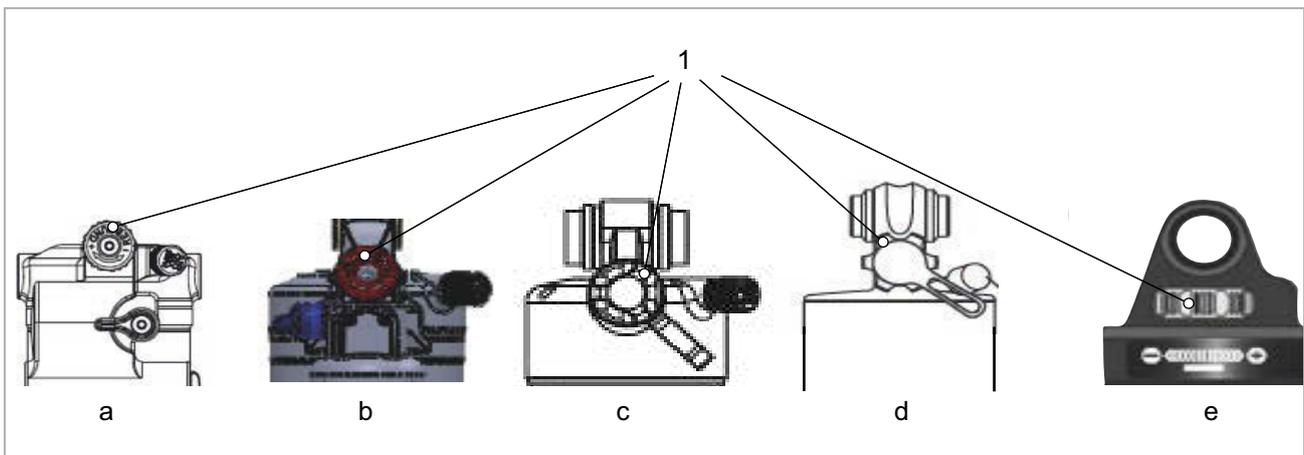


Figure 332: Position of RS Suntour rebound adjuster (rear frame damper) on Triair2 (a), Triair (b), EDGE-comp (c), EDGE (d) and RAIDON (e)

9.2.9.2 Rebounding too slowly

The rear frame damper does not rebound quickly enough after a bump has been compensated and is not in the required initial position when the wheel hits the next bump. The rear frame damper remains compressed during successive bumps, thus reducing deflection and ground contact and increasing hardness on the next impact. The rear wheel bounces off the second bump since the rear frame damper does not rebound quickly enough to make contact with the ground and return to the initial position again. The available deflection and traction are reduced (blue line).

The rear frame damper remains in a deflected state after contact with the first bump. When the rear wheel hits the second bump, the saddle follows the path of the rear wheel instead of remaining in a horizontal position. The available deflection and potential absorption of bumps are reduced, which causes instability and loss of control during successive bumps (green line).



Figure 333: Rear frame damper rebounding too slowly

Solution

► Turn **rebound adjuster (rear frame damper)** towards minus.

⇒ The rebound movement is increased.

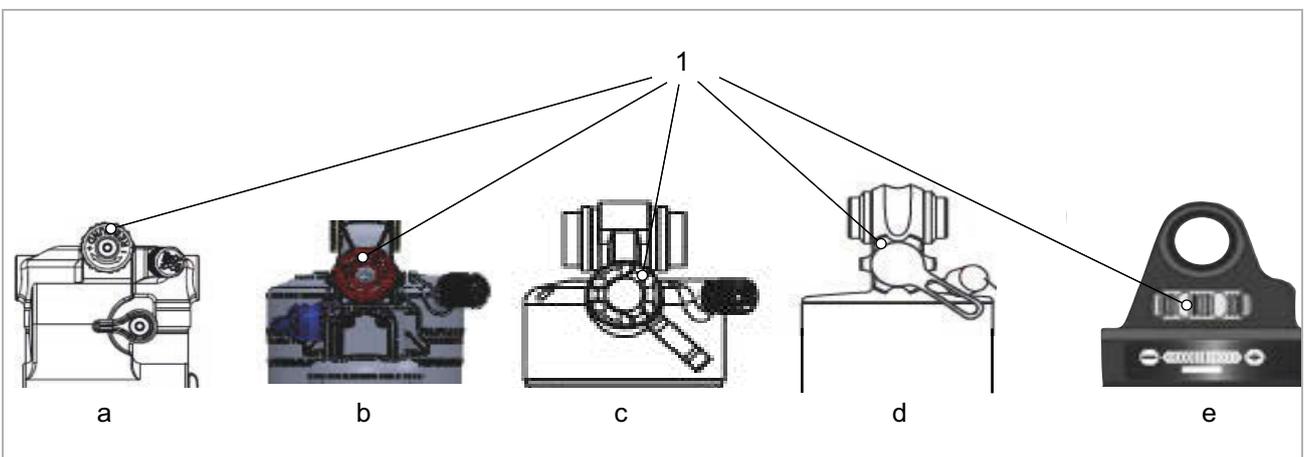


Figure 334: Position of RS Suntour rebound adjuster (rear frame dampers) on Triair2 (a), Triair (b), EDGE-comp (c), EDGE (d) and RAIDON (e)

9.2.9.3 Suspension too soft on inclines

The rear frame damper deflects deeply through the deflection range. The deflection is quickly

used up, body weight shifts downwards and the pedelec loses some momentum.



Figure 335: Excessively soft suspension in the rear frame damper on hilly terrain

Solution

► Turn **compression level** clockwise.

⇒ The damping and compression stroke hardness is increased while the deflection stroke speed is reduced. Efficiency on hilly and flat terrain is improved.

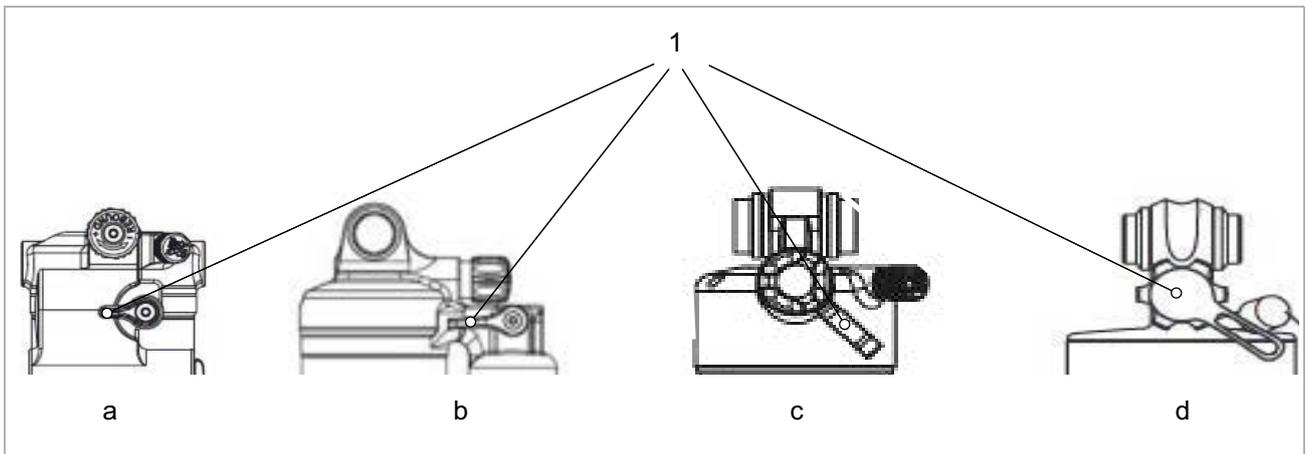


Figure 336: Position of RS Suntour compression lever for rear frame dampers Triair2 (a), Triair (b), EDGE-comp (c) and EDGE (d)

9.2.9.4 Excessively hard damping on bumps

When the bike hits a bump, the damper deflects too slowly and the rear wheel lifts up from the bump. Traction is reduced (blue line).

Saddle and pedelec rider are deflected upwards and forwards, the rear wheel loses contact with the ground and control is reduced (green line).



Figure 337: Excessively hard damping in the rear frame damper on bumps

Solution

- ▶ Turn **compression lever** anti-clockwise.
- ⇒ The damping and compression stroke hardness is reduced and the deflection stroke

speed is increased. Sensitivity to small bumps is increased.

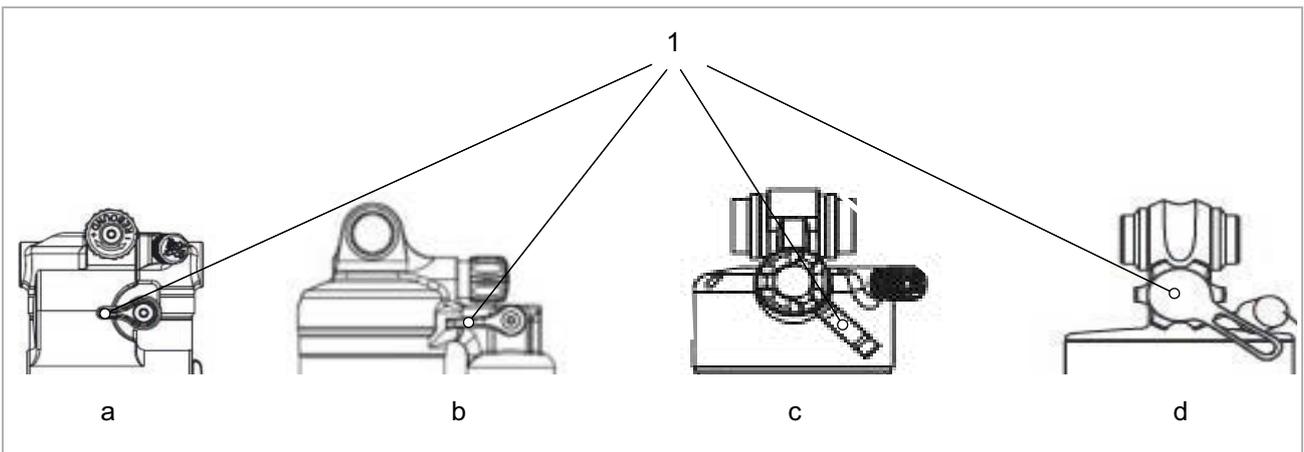


Figure 338: Position of RS Suntour compression lever for rear frame dampers Triair2 (a), Triair (b), EDGE-comp (c) and EDGE (d)

9.2.10 Correcting freewheel faults

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
Freewheel blocked.	Cover forgotten after fitting.	▶ Contact specialist dealer. Check installation correct.
	After fitting, socket was compressed by over-tightening the quick-release axle.	▶ Contact specialist dealer. Measure the length of the socket. If the socket is shorter than 15.4 mm, replace socket.
Freewheel does not lock into place or slips.	After maintenance: Too much or wrong grease on the toothed discs.	▶ Contact specialist dealer. Remove hub. Clean and grease toothed disc.
	Toothed discs are worn.	▶ Contact specialist dealer. Replace toothed disc.
	One or both springs were forgotten after fitting.	▶ Contact specialist dealer. Check installation correct.
	One or both toothed discs are fitted the wrong way round after assembly.	▶ Contact specialist dealer. Check installation correct.
Hub has axial clearance.	Ball bearings are worn.	▶ Contact specialist dealer. Replace ball bearings.
	One or both toothed discs are fitted the wrong way round after assembly.	▶ Contact specialist dealer. Check installation correct.
Hub is stiff when turned.	Ball bearings are worn.	▶ Contact specialist dealer. Replace ball bearings.
	Ball bearings have been driven in too firmly after assembly	▶ Contact specialist dealer. Check installation correct.
	Installation sequence for ball bearings not observed.	▶ Contact specialist dealer. Check installation correct.
Hub makes noise.	Ball bearings are worn.	▶ Contact specialist dealer. Replace ball bearings.
Cassette caused notches on the freewheel body.	Steel cassette works its way into the aluminium bar on the freewheel body.	▶ Contact specialist dealer. Remove notches on the cassette surface with a file.
Freewheel body is stiff when turned.	Ball bearings in the freewheel body are worn.	▶ Contact specialist dealer. Replace freewheel body.
Freewheel is too loud or too quiet.	Perception of freewheel noise is subjective. While some pedelec riders prefer loud freewheel noise, others like a quite freewheel more.	▶ This is not a malfunction. The amount of grease between the toothed discs may have an effect on the freewheel noise. Less grease increases freewheel noise but also causes greater wear.

Table 76: Error solution for freewheel

9.2.11 Correcting lighting faults

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
The front light or rear light does not go on, even when the switch is pressed.	The default settings in the electric drive system have probably been configured incorrectly. The light is defective.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Take pedelec out of service immediately. 2 Contact specialist dealer.

Table 77: Lighting fault solution

9.2.12 Correcting faults in tyres

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
Valve torn off.	Presta valve used with a sizeable valve hole. The hole's metal edge separates the valve stem from the tube.	► Contact specialist dealer. Fit another type of valve.

Table 78: Fault solution for tyres

9.2.13 Correcting control seat post faults

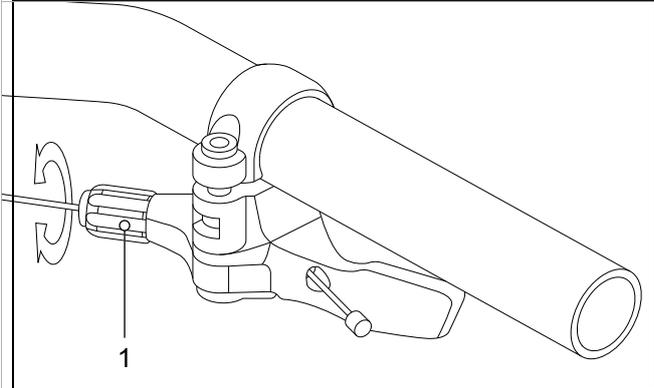
Symptom	Cause	Remedy
Seat post clicks or creaks.	Protective layer missing.	► Service seat post (see Section 7.4.9).
Seat post deflects and bobs periodically.	Incorrect preload.	► Adjust preload so that the suspension seat post does not compress under the rider's weight when at rest.
Seat post with remote control does not rise or lower.	Bowden cable is not tensioned correctly.	<p>► Adjust the Bowden cable with the setting screw (1) on the remote control.</p>  <p>Figure 339: Remote control with setting screw (1)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reduce sensitivity: turn the setting screw clockwise. • Increase sensitivity: turn setting screw anti-clockwise.

Table 79: Fault solution for the seat post

9.2.14 Correcting other faults and errors

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
Two beeps will sound if a switch is pressed but the switch cannot be operated.	Pressed switch mode has been deactivated.	▶ This is not a malfunction.
Three beeps are sounded.	A fault or warning has occurred.	▶ This occurs when a warning or an error is shown on the on-board computer. Follow the instructions for the code in Section 6.2 System Messages.
If an electronic gear shift is used, pedal assistance becomes less effective when the gear is changed.	This is because the computer sets the pedal assistance to the optimum level.	▶ This is not a malfunction.
A noise can be heard after switching.		▶ Contact specialist dealer.
It is normal to hear a noise coming from the rear wheel when cycling as normal.	The gear shift setting may not have been made properly.	▶ Contact specialist dealer.
If the pedelec is brought to a stop the pedelec, the gear transmission does not switch to the position pre-configured in the functional feature.	You may have applied too much pressure on the pedals.	▶ Press on the pedals only gently to make it easier to change the transmission.

Table 80: Other drive system errors

9.3 Repairs

9.3.1 Replacing the Mini Remote battery

✓ A flashing orange LED indicator lamp signals that the battery in the Mini Remote control panel is low.

✓ A new CR 1620 battery is at hand.

1 Use a 3 mm hex bit to undo the **attachment screw (Mini Remote)** anti-clockwise.



Figure 340: Position of the attachment screw

2 Remove Mini Remote from handlebars.

3 Remove rubber inlay. The battery is inside the rubber inlay.



Figure 341: Position of rubber inlay

4 Remove used battery.

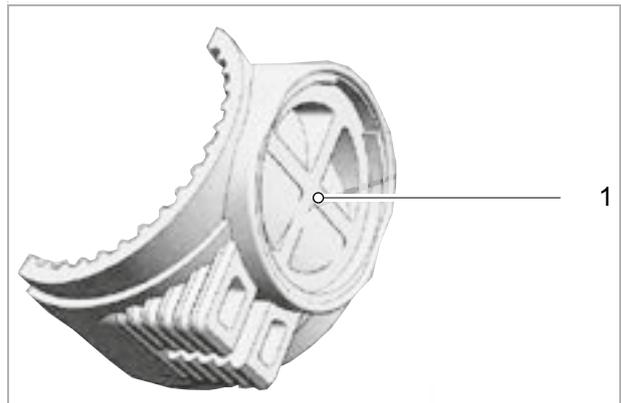


Figure 342: Rubber inlay without battery

5 Insert new CR 1620 battery into the rubber inlay.

6 Press rubber inlay with new battery into the Mini Remote control panel.

⇒ If the battery is inserted correctly, the LED indicator lamp will flash green for 10 seconds.

7 Position Mini Remote on the handlebars.

8 Fasten the **attachment screw (Mini Remote)** clockwise.

Notice

- ▶ Tighten the **attachment screw (Mini Remote)** using a maximum torque of 0.4 Nm only contrary to the marking indicating 0.6 Nm.

9.3.2 Replacing pedelec components if eBike Lock function is installed

9.3.2.1 Replacing a smartphone

- 1 Install Bosch eBike Flow app on the new smartphone.
 - 2 Log on using the same account which was used to activate the eBike Lock function.
 - 3 Connect on-board computer with the smartphone while the on-board computer is in use.
- ⇒ The BOSCH eBike Flow app indicates that the eBike Lock function is configured.

9.3.2.2 Replacing the on-board computer

- ▶ Connect on-board computer with the smartphone while the on-board computer is in use.
- ⇒ The BOSCH eBike Flow app indicates that the eBike Lock function is configured.

9.3.2.3 Activating eBike Lock function after motor replacement

- ✓ Whenever the motor is replaced, the eBike Lock function is shown as deactivated in the BOSCH eBike Flow app.
- 1 Open the **<My eBike>** option in the BOSCH eBike Flow app.
 - 2 Push the **<eBike Lock function> slider** to the right.
 - 3 The drive unit assistance can now be deactivated by removing the on-board computer.

9.3.2.4 Connecting the Mini Remote to a different system controller

- 1 Remove battery from the Mini Remote.
 - 2 Insert battery into the Mini Remote.
 - 3 Press the **minus button** on the Mini Remote for 5 seconds within the next 10 seconds.
 - ⇒ The blue indicator lamp on the Mini Remote will flash for 30 seconds to indicate that pairing is in progress.
 - 4 Press the On-Off button on the System Controller for 3 seconds.
 - ⇒ The lower bar on the charging status indicator on the System Controller will flash blue to indicate that pairing is in progress.
 - ⇒ If the LED indicator lamp on the Mini Remote flashes red three times, this indicates the connection has been interrupted.
- ▶ Switching off the electric drive system (see Section 6.13.2).
 - ▶ Repeat process.
- ⇒ The indicator lamp on the Mini Remote will flash green three times within 30 seconds if pairing is successful.

9.3.2.5 Recharging the SRAM battery

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

Notice

Contact with suntan lotion or cleaning agents containing hydrocarbons can damage the SRAM battery.

- ▶ Always wear clean gloves to handle the SRAM battery.
- ▶ To protect the contacts on the SRAM battery, only attach the battery cover and battery separator to the SRAM battery when the SRAM battery is not in the SRAM charger or the AXS rear derailleur.

- 1 Push the battery lock upwards (1).
- 2 Push the extension cable snap-fit upwards (2).
- 3 Remove extension cable forwards (3).

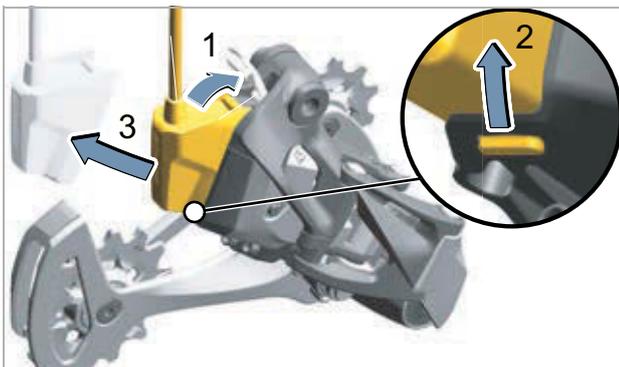


Figure 343: Removing the extension cable

- 4 Detach the battery guard at detachment points A, B and C.

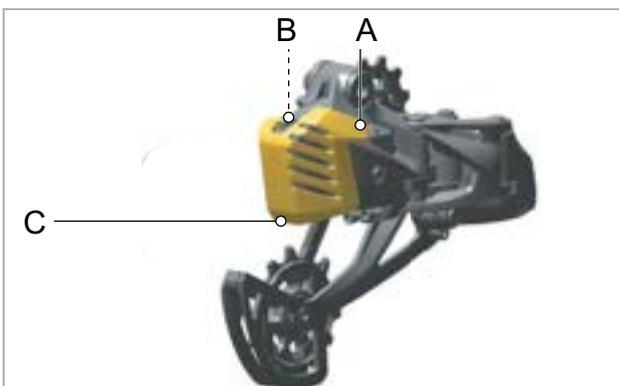


Figure 344: Detachment points A and B



Figure 345: Detachment points A and B in detailed view

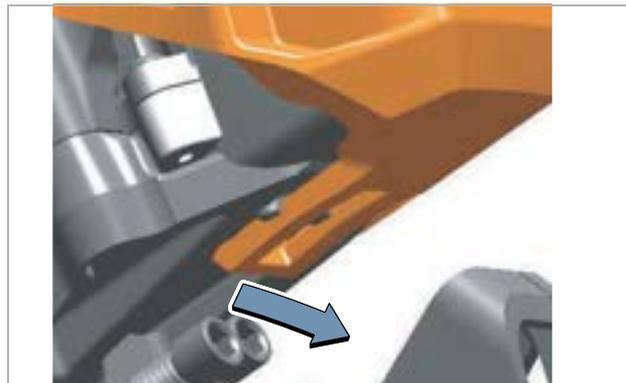


Figure 346: Detachment point C in detailed view

- 5 Pull battery guard forwards.
 - ⇒ The battery and battery lock are visible.



Figure 347: Removing the battery cover

- 6 Pull the SRAM battery forwards out of the AXS rear derailleur.
- 7 Insert the battery separator into the battery compartment during charging.
 - ⇒ If the battery separator is in the right position, the battery lock will close automatically.

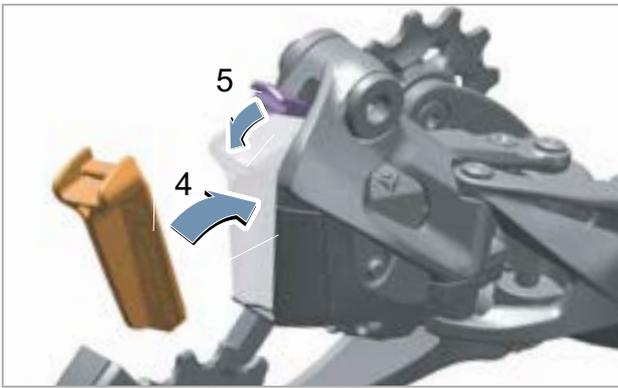


Figure 348: Inserting the battery separator (4) and closing the battery lock

- 8 Insert the SRAM battery into the SRAM charger.
- 9 Place the battery cover onto the SRAM battery.



Figure 349: Putting the battery cover into position

- 10 Charge the battery.
 - ⇒ The green LED lights up on the SRAM charger instead of the red LED.
- 11 Remove the battery cover from the SRAM battery.



Figure 350: Removing the battery cover

- 12 Pull SRAM battery out of the SRAM charger.
- 13 Insert SRAM battery into the AXS rear derailleur.
- 14 Place the battery cover onto the SRAM battery.
 - ⇒ The SRAM battery is now charged.
 - ⇒ Insert fully charged battery into the rear derailleur.
 - ⇒ Close the battery lock. The locking mechanism will engage if the battery is properly inserted.

9.3.3 Replacing the SRAM AXS Controller battery

Only applies to pedelecs with this equipment

- ✓ The SRAM AXS Controller is clean and dry.
- ✓ A new CR 2032 battery is at hand.

- 1 Use a coin to turn the **battery compartment cover (shifter)** anti-clockwise as far as the open mark.
Never remove the O-ring seal. This will help protect moisture damage.



Figure 351: Open mark

- 2 Remove used battery.
- 3 Insert new CR 2032 battery with the plus terminal (+) pointing to the cover.
- 4 Use a coin to turn the **battery compartment cover (shifter)** anti-clockwise as far as the lock mark.



Figure 352: Lock mark



9.4 Repairs at the specialist dealer

Expert knowledge and special tools are required for many repairs. For this reason, repairs may only be carried out at a specialist dealer. These include:

- Replacing tyre, tube and spokes
- Replace brake linings, rims and brake discs
- Replace and tension the chain.

9.4.1 Original parts and lubricants

The individual pedelec parts have been carefully selected and matched to one other.

Only original parts and lubricants must be used for inspection and repair.

The constantly updated accessory approval and parts lists are in Section 11, Documents and Drawings.

- ▶ Follow the operating instructions for the new components.

9.4.2 Repairing the frame

9.4.2.1 Removing paint damage on frame

- 1 Gently sand paintwork damage with 600-grit sandpaper.
- 2 Smooth edges.
- 3 Apply one or two coats of repair paint.

9.4.2.2 Removing damage from impact on the carbon frame

There may be damage to the laminate beneath the paintwork in the case of impact. The frame may break even under light stress.

- 1 Take pedelec out of service.
- 2 Send frame to a fibre composite repair company or purchase new frame as specified in the parts list.

9.4.3 Repairing the suspension fork

9.4.3.1 Removing paint damage on the fork

- 1 Gently sand paintwork damage with 600-grit sandpaper.
- 2 Smooth edges.
- 3 Apply one or two coats of repair paint.

9.4.3.2 Removing damage from impact on the carbon frame

There may be damage to the laminate beneath the paintwork in the case of impact. The fork may break even under light stress.

- ▶ Take pedelec out of service. New fork as specified in the parts list.
- ⇒ The fork must be free from any defects.
- 4 Clean inside and exterior.
- 5 Grease fork.
- 6 Install fork.

9.4.3.3 Repairing the seat post

Repairing paint damage on the seat post.

- 1 Gently sand paintwork damage with 600-grit sandpaper.
- 2 Smooth edges.
- 3 Apply one or two coats of repair paint.

9.4.3.4 Repairing damage from impact on the carbon seat post

There may be damage to the laminate beneath the paintwork in the case of impact. The carbon seat post may break even under light stress.

- 1 Take pedelec out of service.
- 2 New carbon seat post as specified in parts list.



9.4.4 Replacing the riding light

- ▶ Only use components in the corresponding power class for replacement.

9.4.5 Adjusting the headlight

- ▶ The *headlight* must be positioned so that its light beam shines on the road 10 m in front of the pedelec (see Section 6.4).

9.4.6 Checking suspension fork-tyre clearance

The tyre clearance needs to be checked each time a suspension fork tyre is replaced.

- 1 Release pressure from the suspension fork.
- 2 Press suspension fork together fully.
- 3 Measure the gap between the top of the tyre and the fork crown's lower surface. The gap must not be less than 10 mm. If the tyre is too large, the tyre will touch the lower surface of the fork crown when the fork is fully pressed together.
- 4 Release pressure on the suspension fork and pump it up again if it is an air suspension fork.
- 5 Take into account the fact that the gap will be smaller if there is a guard. Check again to ensure that there is sufficient clearance for the tyre.

10 Recycling and disposal



This device is marked according to the European Directive 2012/19/EU on waste electrical and electronic equipment – WEEE and the European



Directive 2006/66/EC on accumulators. The directive provides the framework for the return and recycling of used devices

across the EU. Consumers are legally required to return all used batteries of any type. It is forbidden to dispose of batteries in domestic waste.

The battery manufacturer is legally obliged to take back used and old batteries free of charge according to Section 9 German Batteries Act. The pedelec frame, battery, motor, on-board computer and charger are recyclable materials. You must dispose of and recycle them separately from the domestic waste in compliance with applicable statutory regulations. Separate collection and

recycling saves reserves of raw materials and ensures that all the regulations for protection of health and the environment are adhered to when recycling the product and/or the battery.

- ▶ Never dismantle the pedelec, battery or charger for disposal.

The pedelec, on-board computer, the unopened and undamaged battery and the charger can be returned to any specialist dealer free of charge. Further disposal options may be available, depending on the region.

- ▶ Store the individual parts of the decommissioned pedelec in a dry place, free from frost, where they are protected from direct sunlight.

10.1 Guidelines on removal of waste

Waste type	Disposal
Non-hazardous waste	
 Recycling	
Waste paper, cardboard	Return paper collection bin, paper container, undamaged transport packaging to suppliers
Scrap metal and aluminium	Take to municipal collection points or have collected by waste disposal companies
Tyres, tubes	Tyre manufacturers' collection points, collection forms and fax templates available from tyre manufacturer Otherwise, residual waste bin (grey bin)
Fibre composite components (e.g. carbon, GRP)	Large carbon components such as defective frames and carbon rims can be sent to special collection points for recycling; see www.cfk-recycling.de/index.php?id=57
Dual system sales packaging made of plastic, metal and composite material, lightweight packaging	Collection by waste disposal firm where applicable; return transport packaging to suppliers Plastic waste bin (yellow bin)
CDs, DVDs	Take to municipal collection points since they are made of high-grade plastic and are easy to recycle Otherwise, residual waste bin (grey bin)

Table 81: Removal of waste guidelines

Waste type	Disposal
Dispose of	
Residual waste	Residual waste bin (grey bin)
Biodegradable lubricants Biodegradable oils Cleaning cloths covered in biodegradable oil	Residual waste bin (grey bin)
Filament lamps, halogen lamps	Residual waste bin (grey bin)
Hazardous waste	
 Recycling	
Batteries, rechargeable batteries	Return to the battery manufacturer.
Electric devices: Motor On-board computer Display Control panel Wiring	Take to a municipal collection point for electronic waste
Dispose of	
Waste oil Cleaning cloths daubed in oil Lubrication oil Gear oil Lubricating grease Cleaning fluids Kerosene White spirit Hydraulic fluid Brake fluid	<p>Never mix different oil fluids. Store in original container</p> <p>Small amounts (mainly <30 kg) Take to municipal collection points for hazardous waste (e.g. mobile toxic waste collection service)</p> <p>Larger quantities (>30 kg) Collection by waste disposal companies</p>
Paints Varnishes Thinners	Take to municipal collection points for hazardous waste (e.g. mobile toxic waste collection service)
Neon lights, energy-saving lamps	Take to municipal collection points for hazardous waste (e.g. mobile toxic waste collection service)

Table 81: Removal of waste guidelines



11 Documents

11.1 Assembly report

Date:

Frame number:

Components	Description	Tests	Criteria		Measures if rejected
			Acceptance	Rejection	
Front wheel	Assembly		O.K.	Loose	Adjust quick release
Kickstands	Check mount fastening	Functional check	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Tyres		Tyre pressure check	O.K.	Tyre pressure too low/ too high	Adjust tyre pressure
Frame	Check for damage – fracture, scratches		O.K.	Damage detected	<i>Take out of operation</i> , new frame
Handles, coverings	Check mount fastening		O.K.	Not provided	Retighten screws, new handles and coverings as specified in parts list
Handlebars, stem	Check mount fastening		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws; new stem as specified in parts list if necessary
Steering headset	Check for damage	Functional check	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Saddle	Check mount fastening		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Seat post	Check mount fastening		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Guard	Check mount fastening		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Pannier rack	Check mount fastening		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Attachments	Check mount fastening		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Bell		Functional check	O.K.	No ring, too quiet, missing	New bell as specified in the parts list
Suspension elements					
Fork, suspension fork	Check for damage		O.K.	Damage detected	New fork as specified in the parts list
Rear frame damper	Check for damage		O.K.	Damage detected	New fork as specified in the parts list
Suspension seat post	Check for damage		O.K.	Damage detected	New fork as specified in the parts list
Brake system					
Handbrake	Check mount fastening		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Brake fluid	Check fluid level		O.K.	Too little	Refill with brake fluid; new brake hoses if damaged
Brake linings	Check brake linings, brake discs and rims for damage		O.K.	Damage detected	New brake linings, brake discs and rims
Back-pedal brake braking armature	Check mount fastening		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Lighting system					
Rechargeable battery	First examination		O.K.	Error message	<i>Take out of service</i> ; contact battery manufacturer, new battery
Light cabling	Connections, correct wiring		O.K.	Cable defective, no light	New cabling
Rear light	Side light	Functional check	O.K.	No constant light	<i>Take out of service</i> ; new rear light as specified in parts list; replace if necessary
Front light	Side light, daytime riding light	Functional check	O.K.	No constant light	<i>Take out of service</i> ; new front light as specified in parts list; replace if necessary
Reflectors	All complete, state, fastening		O.K.	Damaged or not all complete	New reflectors



Components	Description		Criteria		Measures if rejected
	Assembly /inspection	Tests	Acceptance	Rejection	
Drive/gear shift					
Chain/cassette/sprocket/chainring	Check for damage		O.K.	Damage	Refasten if necessary or replace as specified in parts list
Chain guard/spoke guard	Check for damage		O.K.	Damage	Replace as specified in parts list
Bottom bracket axle/crank	Check mount fastening		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Pedals	Check mount fastening		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Shifter	Check mount fastening	Functional check	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Shift cables	Check for damage	Functional check	O.K.	Loose and defective	Adjust shift cables; new shift cables if necessary
Front derailleur	Check for damage	Functional check	O.K.	Switching gears difficult or not possible	Adjust
Rear derailleur	Check for damage	Functional check	O.K.	Switching gears difficult or not possible	Adjust
Electric drive					
On-board computer	Check for damage	Functional check	O.K.	No screen, defective screen display	Restart, test battery, new software or new on-board computer; <i>take out of service</i>
Control panel	Control panel Check for damage	Functional check	O.K.	No response	Restart; contact control panel manufacturer, new control panel
Tachometer		Speed measurement	O.K.	Pedelec travelling 10% too fast/slow	Take pedelec out of service until the source of the error is found
Cabling	Visual inspection		O.K.	Failure in system, damage, kinked cables	New cabling
Battery mount	Firmly in position, lock, contacts	Functional check	O.K.	Loose; lock doesn't close, no contacts	New battery mount
Motor	Visual inspection and mount		O.K.	Damage, loose	Refasten motor, contact motor manufacturer, new motor
Software	Check version		In latest version	Not latest version	Import update

Technical inspection, checking safety, test ride

Components	Description		Criteria		Measures if rejected
	Assembly /inspection	Tests	Acceptance	Rejection	
Brake system		Functional check	O.K.	No full braking; braking distance too long	Locate defective part in brake system and correct
Gear shift under operating load		Functional check	O.K.	Problems when shifting gear	Readjust gear shift
Suspension components (fork, shock absorber, seat post)		Functional check	O.K.	Suspension too deep or no longer exists	Locate defective component and correct
Electric drive system		Functional check	O.K.	Loose connection, problems when riding, accelerate	Locate faulty components in electric drive and remedy
Lighting system		Functional check	O.K.	No continuous light, not bright enough	Locate defective part in lighting system and correct
Test ride			No strange noises	Strange noises	Locate source of noise and correct

Date:	
Fitter's name:	
Final inspection by workshop manager:	



11.2 Inspection and maintenance log

Diagnosis and documentation of current status

Date:

Frame number:

Component	Frequency	Description			Criteria		Measures if rejected
		Inspection	Test		Acceptance	Rejection	
Front wheel	6 months	Assembly			O.K.	Loose	Adjust quick release
Kickstands	6 months	Check mount fastening	Functional check		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Tyres	6 months		Tyre pressure check		O.K.	Tyre pressure too low/ too high	Adjust tyre pressure
Frame	6 months	Check for damage – fracture, scratches			O.K.	Damage detected	Take pedelec out of service, new frame
Handles, coverings	6 months	Wear; check if fastened securely			O.K.	Not provided	Retighten screws, new handles and coverings as specified in parts list
Handlebars, stem	6 months	Check mount fastening			O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws; new stem as specified in parts list if necessary
Steering headset	6 months	Check for damage	Functional check	Lubricating and adjustment	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Saddle	6 months	Check mount fastening			O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Seat post	6 months	Check mount fastening			O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Guard	6 months	Check mount fastening			O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Pannier rack	6 months	Check mount fastening			O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Attachments	6 months	Check mount fastening			O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Bell	6 months		Functional check		O.K.	No ring, too quiet, missing	New bell as specified in the parts list
Suspension elements							
Fork, suspension fork	To manufacturer's specifications*	Check for damage, corrosion, fracture		Maintenance as specified by manufacturer Lubrication, oil change as specified by manufacturer	O.K.	Damage detected	New fork as specified in the parts list
Rear frame damper	To manufacturer's specifications*	Check for damage, corrosion, fracture		Maintenance as specified by manufacturer Lubrication, oil change as specified by manufacturer	O.K.	Damage detected	New fork as specified in the parts list
Suspension seat post	To manufacturer's specifications*	Check for damage		Maintenance as specified by manufacturer	O.K.	Damage detected	New fork as specified in the parts list



Component	Frequency	Description			Criteria		Measures if rejected
		Inspection	Test		Acceptance	Rejection	
Brake system							
Handbrake	6 months	Check mount fastening			O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Brake fluid	6 months	Check fluid level		Depending on time of year	O.K.	Too little	Top up brake fluid; take Pedelec out of service if damaged; new brake hoses
Brake linings	6 months	Check brake linings, brake discs and rims for damage			O.K.	Damage detected	New brake linings, brake discs and rims
Back-pedal brake braking armature	6 months	Check mount fastening			O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Brake system	6 months	Check mount fastening		Functional check	O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Lighting system							
Rechargeable battery	6 months	First examination			O.K.	Error message	Contact battery manufacturer; take battery out of service; new battery
Light cabling	6 months	Connections, correct wiring			O.K.	Cable defective, no light	New cabling
Rear light	6 months	Side light	Functional check		O.K.	No constant light	New rear light as specified in parts list; replace if necessary
Headlight	6 months	Side light, daytime riding light	Functional check		O.K.	No constant light	New headlight light as specified in parts list; replace if necessary
Reflectors	6 months	All complete, state, fastening			O.K.	Damaged or not all complete	New reflectors
Drive/gear shift							
Chain/cassette/sprocket/chainring	6 months	Check for damage			O.K.	Damage	Refasten if necessary or replace as specified in parts list
Chain guard/spoke guard	6 months	Check for damage			O.K.	Damage	Replace as specified in parts list
Bottom bracket axle/crank	6 months	Check mount fastening			O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Pedals	6 months	Check mount fastening			O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Shifter	6 months	Check mount fastening	Functional check		O.K.	Loose	Retighten screws
Shift cables	6 months	Check for damage	Functional check		O.K.	Loose and defective	Adjust shift cables; new shift cables if necessary
Front derailleur	6 months	Check for damage	Functional check		O.K.	Switching gears difficult or not possible	Adjust
Rear derailleur	6 months	Check for damage	Functional check		O.K.	Switching gears difficult or not possible	Adjust



Component	Frequency	Description			Criteria		Measures if rejected
		Inspection	Test		Acceptance	Rejection	
Electric drive system							
On-board computer	6 months	Check for damage	Functional check		O.K.	No screen, defective screen display	Restart; test battery; new software or new on-board computer; take out of service
Control panel	6 months	Check control panel for damage	Functional check		O.K.	No response	Restart; contact control panel manufacturer, new control panel
Tachometer	6 months		Speed measurement		O.K.	Pedelec travelling 10% too fast/slow	Take pedelec out of service until the source of the error is found
Cabling	6 months	Visual inspection			O.K.	Failure in system, damage, kinked cables	New cabling
Battery mount	6 months	Firmly in position, lock, contacts	Functional check		O.K.	Loose; lock doesn't close, no contacts	New battery mount
Motor	6 months	Visual inspection and mount			O.K.	Damage, loose	Refasten motor, contact motor manufacturer, new motor; <i>take out of service</i>
Software	6 months	Check version			In latest version	Not latest version	Import update

Technical inspection, checking safety, test ride

Component	Frequency	Description			Criteria
		Inspection	Test		Acceptance
Brake system	6 months	Functional check	O.K.	No full braking; braking distance too long	Locate defective part in brake system and correct
Gear shift under operating load	6 months	Functional check	O.K.	Problems when shifting gear	Readjust gear shift
Suspension components (fork, shock absorber, seat post)	6 months	Functional check	O.K.	Suspension too deep or no longer exists	Locate defective component and correct
Electric drive	6 months	Functional check	O.K.	Loose connection, problems when riding, accelerate	Locate faulty component in electric drive and remedy
Lighting system	6 months	Functional check	O.K.	No continuous light, not bright enough	Locate defective part in lighting system and correct
Test ride	6 months	Functional check	No strange noises	Strange noises	Locate source of noise and correct

Date:	
Fitter's name:	
Final inspection by workshop manager:	



Notes

11.3 Parts list

11.3.1 Sonic EVO AM 2 Carbon, 29/27.5

23-18-3067

Gent

Frame	Bulls, Sonic EVO AM 2	Aluminium Frame shape and size: Gent: 41/44/47/51
Rear frame damper	SR SUNTOUR, Edge Plus LOR8	Air damper Installation length: # mm Deflection:# mm Function Rebound adjustment: # Damping: #
Tyres Front | Rear	SCHWALBE, Magic Mary | Big Betty	Gravel tyres TLE, Super Trail EPI: 67 Profile: HS609 | HS608 Folding tyres Weight: 1150 g | 1180 g Size: 62-622 (29") | 65-584 (27.5") Max. load: 125 kg | 115 kg Pressure: max. 3.5 bar (max. 50.0 psi) | 3.0 bar (max. 45.0 psi)
Tube	SCHWALBE, SV19B L	Presta valve Size: 54-75 × 584-622
Wheel	...	...
Rims	RODI, Tryp30	Aluminium, double wall rim Size: ETRTO 622 × 30 mm | 584 × 30 mm Dimensions (height/width): 19 mm /30 mm Material: Aluminium Rim connection: inserted Valve hole: 8.5 mm Number of spokes: 32 ERD 2: 565 mm Weight: 616 g
Spokes	MACH1, Spoke Plus	Steel Diameter: 2.0 mm Length: 294 mm | 275 mm 14G
Spoke nipples	SAPIM, Polyax	Length: 14 G Length: 14 mm
Front wheel hub	SHIMANO, FH-MT500-B	Steel/aluminium For disc brake, centre lock Gear speeds: 12 Housing length: 141 mm Spoke holes: 32H Axle: quick release axle, 174 mm, 178 mm Offset: 6.6 mm Flunch diameter (left | right): 68.8 | 69.8
Rear wheel hub	SHIMANO, FH-TC500-HM-B	SHIMANO, FH-TC500-HM-B
Steering headset	ACROS, BULLS NO. 18	Aluminium, Aheadset, for fork steerer: 1-1/8"
Stem	COMPETITION SL, adjustable	Aluminium, Ahead stem, adjustable Handlebars clamp diameter: Ø 35 mm Stem length: 45 mm
Handlebars	BULLS, EVO 35 Small	Aluminium Ø: 35 mm Length: 740 mm Height: 15 mm Up Rise: 5° Swap: 7° Weight: 322 g
Handles/tapered Left hand | Right hand	Prologo, New Enduro	Plastic

Fork	SR SUNTOUR, ZERON35-Boost LOR DS 15QLC32-110 29"	Steel suspension fork Deflection: 150 mm
Fork remote control	...	...
Saddle	Prologo, Proxim 400	...
Seat post	LIMOTEC, A1 SHIMANO, SL-MT500-IL	Aluminium, lowerable seat post Ø: 34.9 mm Deflection: 100 mm Max. rider weight: 120 kg With remote control
Saddle clamp	Bulls, carbon	Carbon, Ø:38.4 mm
Pedal	Bulls, Zecure VPE 527	Body weight up to: 150 kg
Crank set	SAMOX, EC40	Crank length: 165 mm ISIS Drive
Chain/belt	SHIMANO, CN-HG601-11	For 11-speed Weight (per 114 links): 257 g
Chain wheel/belt sprocket	...	...
Chain guard	VELO ENTERPRISE, VLF-C-1301	...
Chain guide	...	...
Motor	BOSCH™, Performance Line CX (BDU3740)	See Section #
On-board computer	BOSCH™, System Controller (BRC3100)	See Section #
Display	...	...
Control panel	BOSCH™, Mini Remote (BRC3300)	See Section #
Rechargeable battery	BOSCH™, PowerTube 625 (BBP376Y), vertical or PowerTube 750 (BBP377Y), vertical	See Section #
Charger	BOSCH™, 4A Charger (BPC3400)	Charger, charging current (max.): 4 A
Brake lever Front | Rear	SHIMANO, BL-M4100	Brake lever for hydraulic disc brake 2-finger
Brake Front | Rear	SHIMANO, BR-MT420	Hydraulic disc brake 4 pistons
Brake disc Front | Rear	SHIMANO, SM-RT30/RT-EM300	Steel, Ø 220 mm/203 mm, 6-hole mount
ABS	...	...
Shifter	SHIMANO, Deore SL-M5100-IR	RAPIDFIRE PLUS, 11-speed Max. multiple gear shifts (main lever at rear): 3
Rear derailleur	...	...
Front derailleur	SHIMANO, Deore RD-M5100-SGS	Aluminium, 11-speed,
Ring gear	SHIMANO, Deore CS-M5100-11	Cassette, 11-speed Chain sprockets (teeth): 11-13-15-18-21-24-28-33-39-45-51T
Spoke guard	WESTPHAL, Spoke Protector 873 71200099	...
Headlight	...	Interface available for MonkeyLight
Rear light	...	Interface available for MonkeyLight
Reflectors Front | Rear | Side	...	...
Pannier rack, front	...	...
Pannier rack, rear	...	...

Guard Front | Rear	...	...
Kickstands	...	...
Bell/horn	...	...
Mirror	...	...
Battery lock	ABUS, BOSCH IT3 XPlus	...
Chain lock	...	...
Bottle holder	FIDLOCK, bottle cage	...
GPS/BT	...	...

... not available, # information not available when document was produced

11.3.2 Sonic EVO AM 3 Carbon, 29/27.5

23-18-3068

Frame	Bulls, Sonic EVO AM 2	Aluminium Frame shape and size: Gent: 41/44/47/51
Rear frame damper	SR SUNTOUR, Edge Plus LOR8	Air damper Installation length: # mm Deflection:# mm Function Rebound adjustment: # Damping: #
Tyres Front | Rear	SCHWALBE, Magic Mary | Big Betty	Gravel tyres TLE, Super Trail EPI: 67 Profile: HS609 | HS608 Folding tyres Weight: 1150 g | 1180 g Size: 62-622 (29") | 65-584 (27.5") Max. load: 125 kg | 115 kg Pressure: max. 3.5 bar (max. 50.0 psi) | 3.0 bar (max. 45.0 psi)
Tube	SCHWALBE, SV19B L	Presta valve Size: 54-75 × 584-622
Wheel	...	...
Rims	RODI, Tryp30	Aluminium, double wall rim Size: ETRTO 622 × 30 mm | 584 × 30 mm Dimensions (height/width): 19 mm /30 mm Material: Aluminium Rim connection: inserted Valve hole: 8.5 mm Number of spokes: 32 ERD 2: 565 mm Weight: 616 g
Spokes	MACH1, Spoke Plus	Steel Diameter: 2.0 mm Length: 294 mm | 275 mm 14G
Spoke nipples	SAPIM, Polyax	Length: 14 G Length: 14 mm
Front wheel hub	SHIMANO, FH-MT500-B	Steel/aluminium For disc brake, centre lock Gear speeds: 12 Housing length: 141 mm Spoke holes: 32H Axle: quick release axle, 174 mm, 178 mm Offset: 6.6 mm Flunch diameter (left | right): 68.8 | 69.8
Rear wheel hub	SHIMANO, FH-TC500-HM-B	SHIMANO, FH-TC500-HM-B
Steering headset	ACROS, BULLS NO. 18	Aluminium, Aheadset, for fork steerer: 1-1/8"
Stem	COMPETITION SL, adjustable	Aluminium, Ahead stem, adjustable Handlebars clamp diameter: Ø 35 mm Stem length: 45 mm
Handlebars	BULLS, EVO 35 Small	Aluminium Ø: 35 mm Length: 740 mm Height: 15 mm Up Rise: 5° Sweep: 7° Weight: 322 g
Handles/tapered Left hand | Right hand	Prologo, New Enduro	Plastic
Fork	SR SUNTOUR, ZERON35-Boost LOR DS 15QLC32-110 29"	Steel suspension fork Deflection: 150 mm
Fork remote control	...	...

Saddle	Prologo, Proxim 400	...
Seat post	LIMOTEC, A1 SHIMANO, SL-MT500-IL	Aluminium, lowerable seat post Ø: 34.9 mm Deflection: 100 mm Max. Rider weight: 120 kg With remote control
Saddle clamp	Bulls, carbon	Carbon, Ø:38.4 mm
Pedal	Bulls, Zecure VPE 527	Body weight up to: 150 kg
Crank set	SAMOX, EC40	Crank length: 165 mm ISIS Drive
Chain/belt	SHIMANO, CN-HG601-11	For 11-speed Weight (per 114 links): 257 g
Chain wheel/belt sprocket	...	...
Chain guard	VELO ENTERPRISE, VLF-C-1301	...
Chain guide	...	...
Motor	BOSCH™, Performance Line CX (BDU3740)	See Section #
On-board computer	BOSCH™, System Controller (BRC3100)	See Section #
Display	...	...
Control panel	BOSCH™, Mini Remote (BRC3300)	See Section #
Rechargeable battery	BOSCH™, PowerTube 625 (BBP376Y), vertical or PowerTube 750 (BBP377Y), vertical	See Section #
Charger	BOSCH™, 4A Charger (BPC3400)	Charger, charging current (max.): 4 A
Brake lever Front | Rear	SHIMANO, BL-M4100	Brake lever for hydraulic disc brake 2-finger
Brake Front | Rear	SHIMANO, BR-MT420	Hydraulic disc brake 4 pistons
Brake disc Front | Rear	SHIMANO, SM-RT30/RT-EM300	Steel, Ø 220 mm/203 mm, 6-hole mount
ABS	...	...
Shifter	SHIMANO, Deore SL-M5100-IR	RAPIDFIRE PLUS, 11-speed Max. multiple gear shifts (main lever at rear): 3
Rear derailleur	...	...
Front derailleur	SHIMANO, Deore RD-M5100-SGS	Aluminium, 11-speed
Ring gear	SHIMANO, Deore CS-M5100-11	Cassette, 11-speed Chain sprockets (teeth): 11-13-15-18-21-24-28-33-39-45-51T
Spoke guard	WESTPHAL, Spoke Protector 873 71200099	...
Headlight	...	Interface available for MonkeyLight
Rear light	...	Interface available for MonkeyLight
Reflectors Front | Rear | Side	...	...
Pannier rack, front	...	...
Pannier rack, rear	...	...
Guard Front | Rear	...	...
Kickstands	...	...
Bell/horn	...	...

Mirror	...	...
Battery lock	ABUS, BOSCH IT3 XPlus	...
Chain lock	...	...
Bottle holder	FIDLOCK, bottle cage	...
GPS/BT	...	...

... not available, # information not available when document was produced

11.3.3 Sonic EVO AM 4 Carbon, 29/27.5

23-18-3069

Frame	Bulls, Sonic EVO AM4 Carbon	Aluminium Frame shape and size: Gent: 41/44/47/51
Rear frame damper	ROCKSHOX, DELUXE SELECT+	Air damper Installation length: 205 mm Deflection: 60 mm Function Rebound adjustment: H, L, M Compression stroke: H, L, L1, LC, M Damper variant: RL
Tyres Front | Rear	SCHWALBE, Magic Mary | Big Betty	Gravel tyres TLE, Super Trail EPI: 67 Profile: HS609 | HS608 Folding tyres Weight: 1150 g | 1180 g Size: 62-622 (29") | 65-584 (27.5") Max. load: 125 kg | 115 kg Pressure: max. 3.5 bar (max. 50.0 psi) | 3.0 bar (max. 45.0 psi)
Tube	SCHWALBE, SV19B L	Presta valve Size: 54-75 × 584-622
Wheel Front | Rear	MAVIC, E-DEEMAX30 29" | E-DEEMAX35 27.5"	Material: Maxtal, S6000 aluminium, steel Size: 29" | 27.5" Tubeless Hub Freewheel hub Axles: 15 × 110 mm | 12 × 148 mm Boost Brake: centre lock disc brakes Rim Weight tuning: ISM Special rim profile for e-bikes Jaw length: 30 mm | 35 mm ETRTO size: 622 × 30tc | 584 × 35tc Spoke Quantity: 28 Spoke configuration: triple-crossed, contactless Spoke nipples Aluminium integrated in the spokes
Rims	...	...
Spokes	...	...
Spoke nipples	...	...
Front wheel hub	...	...
Rear wheel hub	...	...
Steering headset	ACROS, BULLS NO. 18	Aluminium, Aheadset, for fork steerer: 1-1/8"
Stem	COMPETITION SL, adjustable	Aluminium, Ahead stem, adjustable Handlebars clamp diameter: Ø 35 mm Stem length: 45 mm
Handlebars	BULLS, EVO 35 Small	Aluminium Ø: 35 mm Length: 740 mm Height: 15 mm Up Rise: 5° Sweep: 7° Weight: 322 g
Handles/tapered Left hand | Right hand	Prologo, New Enduro	Plastic
Fork	ROCKSHOX, 35 Gold RL 29"	Air suspension fork, deflection: 150 mm
Fork remote control	...	...
Saddle	Prologo, Proxim 400	...

Seat post	Eightpins	Aluminium, spring seat post Length: 320 mm Ø: 34.9 mm MMS-4X-S 8PI-STAND4-C20/S With remote control
Saddle clamp	Bulls, carbon	Carbon, Ø:38.4 mm
Pedal	Bulls, Zecure VPE 527	Body weight up to: 150 kg
Crank set	Bulls, E13 E-Bike crank Bosch forged	Crank length: 160 mm (S)
Chain/belt	SHIMANO, CN-M6100	For 12-speed Weight (per 114 links): 252 g
Chain wheel/belt sprocket	...	...
Chain guard	VELO ENTERPRISE, VLF-C-1301	...
Chain guide	...	...
Motor	BOSCH™, Performance Line CX (BDU3740)	See Section #
On-board computer	BOSCH™, System Controller (BRC3100)	See Section #
Display	...	...
Control panel	BOSCH™, Mini Remote (BRC3300)	See Section #
Rechargeable battery	BOSCH™, PowerTube 625 (BBP376Y), vertical PowerTube 750 (BBP377Y), vertical	See Section #
Charger	BOSCH™, 4A Charger (BPC3400)	See Section #
Brake lever Front | Rear	SHIMANO, BL-M6120	...
Brake Front | Rear	SHIMANO, BR-M6100	Hydraulic disc brake 4 pistons/2 pistons
Brake disc Front | Rear	SHIMANO, SM-RT30/RT-EM300	Steel, Ø 220 mm/203 mm, 6-hole mount
ABS	...	...
Shifter	SHIMANO, DEORE SL-M8100-R	RAPIDFIRE PLUS, 12-speed Max. multiple gear shifts (main lever at rear): 3
Rear derailleur	...	...
Front derailleur	SHIMANO, RD-M8100-SGS	Aluminium, 12-speed
Ring gear	SHIMANO, Deore CS-M6100-12	Cassette, 12-speed Chain sprocket (teeth): 10-12-14-16-18-21-24-28-33-39-45-51T
Spoke guard	WESTPHAL, Spoke Protector 873 71200099	...
Headlight	...	Interface available for MonkeyLight
Rear light	...	Interface available for MonkeyLight
Reflectors Front | Rear | Side	...	...
Pannier rack, front	...	...
Pannier rack, rear	...	...
Guard Front | Rear	Fork | ...	Fender on fork
Kickstands	...	...
Bell/horn	...	...
Mirror	...	...

Battery lock	ABUS, BOSCH IT3 XPlus	...
Chain lock	...	...
Bottle holder	FIDLOCK, bottle cage	...
GPS/BT	...	...

... not available, # information not available when document was produced

11.3.4 Sonic EVO AM Team Carbon

23-18-3070

Frame	Bulls, Sonic EVO AM-IR	Carbon Frame shape and size: Gent: 41/44/47/51
Rear frame damper	ROCKSHOX, SUPER DELUXE SELECT+	Air damper Installation length: 205 mm Deflection: 60 mm Function Rebound adjustment: H, L, M Compression stroke: H, L, L1, LC, M Lockout level: 320, 380 Damper variant: RT
Tyres Front | Rear	SCHWALBE, Magic Mary | Big Betty	Gravel tyres TLE, Super Trail EPI: 67 Profile: HS609 | HS608 Folding tyres Weight: 1150 g | 1180 g Size: 62-622 (29") | 62-584 (27.5") Max. load: 125 kg | 115 kg Pressure: max. 3.5 bar (max. 50.0 psi)
Tube	SCHWALBE, SV19B L	Presta valve Size: 54-75 × 584-622
Wheel Front | Rear	E*THIRTEEN, e*spec Race Carbon	Material: Maxtal, S6000 aluminium, steel Size: 29" | 27.52" Hub Axle: 15 × 110 mm | 148 × 12 mm Boost Rim ETRTO size: 622 × 30 | 584 × 35 Spoke Quantity: 28 | 32
Rims	...	...
Spokes	...	...
Spoke nipples	...	...
Front wheel hub	...	...
Rear wheel hub	...	...
Steering headset	ACROS, BULLS NO. 18	Aluminium, Aheadset, for fork steerer: 1-1/8"
Stem	COMPETITION SL, adjustable	Aluminium, Ahead stem, adjustable Handlebars clamp diameter: Ø 35 mm Stem length: 45 mm
Handlebars	PMG SELLER, carbon	Carbon Ø: 35 mm Length: 780 mm Height: 15 mm
Handles/tapered Left hand | Right hand	Prologo, New Enduro	Plastic
Fork	ROCKSHOX, Lyrik Ultimate 29"	Air suspension fork, deflection: 150 mm
Fork remote control	...	...
Saddle	Prologo, Proxim 400	...
Seat post	Eightpins	Aluminium, spring seat post Length: 320 mm Ø: 35.1 mm MMS-4X-S 8PI-STAND4-C20/S With remote control
Saddle clamp	Bulls, carbon	Carbon, Ø:38.4 mm
Pedal	Bulls, Zecure VPE 527	Body weight up to: 150 kg
Crank set	Bulls, E13 E-Bike crank Bosch forged	Crank length: 165 mm (M, L)

Chain/belt	SRAM, XX1 Eagle™ Chain	For 12-speed, compatible with SRAM Eagle X01 and XX1 gear shift assembly Weight (per 114 links): 252 g
Chain wheel/belt sprocket	...	...
Chain guard	VELO ENTERPRISE, VLF-C-1301	...
Chain guide	...	...
Motor	BOSCH™, Performance Line CX (BDU3740)	See Section #
On-board computer	BOSCH™, System Controller (BRC3100)	See Section #
Display	...	...
Control panel	BOSCH™, Mini Remote (BRC3300)	See Section #
Rechargeable battery	BOSCH™, PowerTube 625 (BBP376Y), vertical PowerTube 750 (BBP377Y), vertical	See Section #
Charger	BOSCH™, 4A Charger (BPC3400)	See Section #
Brake lever Front | Rear	TRP, DH-R EVO HD-846V	Adjustable handle length Folding collar I-Spec II compatible
Brake Front | Rear	TRP, DH-R EVO HD-846V	Hydraulic disc brake For brake discs 2.3 mm wide only
Brake disc Front | Rear	TRP, DH-R EVO HD-846V	220 mm /203 mm
ABS	...	...
Shifter	SRAM, EAGLE™ AXS™ CONTROLLER	Electric gear shifter, can be paired Electric protection rating: IPX7 Battery: coin cell, CR2032
Rear derailleur	SRAM, XX1 Eagle™ AXS™ rear derailleur	Carbon housing, 12-speed
Front derailleur	...	
Ring gear	SRAM, XG-1299 Eagle™	Cassette, rainbow colours, 12-speed Chain sprocket: 10-52T
Spoke guard	WESTPHAL, Spoke Protector 873 71200099	...
Headlight	...	Interface available for MonkeyLight
Rear light	...	Interface available for MonkeyLight
Reflectors Front | Rear | Side	...	...
Pannier rack, front	...	...
Pannier rack, rear	...	...
Guard Front | Rear	...	...
Kickstands	...	...
Bell/horn	...	...
Mirror	...	...
Battery lock	ABUS, BOSCH IT3 XPlus	...
Chain lock	...	...
Bottle holder	FIDLOCK, bottle cage	...
GPS/BT	...	...

... not available, # information not available when document was produced

11.3.5 Sonic EVO TR 2, 29 Carbon

23-18-3073

Frame	Bulls, Sonic EVO TR 2, PO2208	Carbon Frame shape and size: Gent: 41/44/48/51
Rear frame damper	SR SUNTOUR, EDGE Plus 2CR Metric	Air damper Installation length: 210 mm Deflection: 50 mm Function Damping: 2CR
Tyres Front | Rear	SCHWALBE, Nobby Nic	All-round tyres Tube, Performance EPI: 67 Profile: HS602 Folding tyres Weight: 890 g | 850 g Size: 29", 65-622 (29") Max. load: 125 kg Pressure: max. 3.0 bar (max. 45 psi)
Tube	SCHWALBE, SV19B L	Presta valve Size: 54-75 × 584-622
Wheel Front | Rear	...	...
Rims	RODI, Tryp30	Aluminium, double wall rim Size: ETRTO 622 × 30 mm | 584 × 30 mm Dimensions (height/width): 19 mm /30 mm Material: Aluminium Rim connection: inserted Valve hole: 8.5 mm Number of spokes: 32 ERD 2: 565 mm Weight: 616 g
Spokes	MACH1, Spoke Plus	Steel Diameter: 2.0 mm Length: 294 mm 14G
Spoke nipples	SAPIM, Polyax	Length: 14 G Length: 14 mm
Front wheel hub	SHIMANO, FH-MT500-B	SHIMANO, FH-MT500-B
Rear wheel hub	SHIMANO, FH-TC500-HM-B	SHIMANO, FH-TC500-HM-B
Steering headset	ACROS, BULLS NO. 18	Aluminium, Aheadset, for fork steerer: 1-1/8"
Stem	COMPETITION SL, adjustable	Aluminium, Ahead stem, adjustable Handlebars clamp diameter: Ø 35 mm Stem length: 45 mm
Handlebars	BULLS, EVO 35 Small	Aluminium Ø: 35 mm Length: 780 mm Height: 15 mm Up Rise: 5° Sweep: 7° Weight: 322 g
Handles/tapered Left hand | Right hand	Bulls, MTB VLG-1777D2	Hard plastic, handle, Ø 22.4 mm, 131.6/131.6 mm
Fork	SR SUNTOUR, ZERON35-Boost LOR DS 15QLC32-110 29"	Steel suspension fork, deflection: 120 mm
Fork remote control	...	...
Saddle	Prologo, Proxim 400	...
Seat post	LIMOTEC, A1 SHIMANO, SL-MT500-IL	Aluminium, lowerable seat post Deflection: 150 mm Ø: 34.9 mm Max. Rider weight: 120 kg With remote control

Saddle clamp	Bulls, carbon	Carbon, Ø:38.4 mm
Pedal	Bulls, Zecure VPE 527	Body weight up to: 150 kg
Crank set	SAMOX, EC40	Crank length: 165 mm ISIS Drive
Chain/belt	SHIMANO, CN-HG601-11	For 11-speed Weight (per 114 links): 257 g
Chain wheel/belt sprocket	...	...
Chain guard	VELO ENTERPRISE, VLF-C-1301	...
Chain guide	...	...
Motor	BOSCH™, Performance Line CX (BDU3740)	See Section #
On-board computer	BOSCH™, System Controller (BRC3100)	See Section #
Display	...	...
Control panel	BOSCH™, Mini Remote (BRC3300)	See Section #
Rechargeable battery	BOSCH™, PowerTube 625 (BBP376Y), vertical PowerTube 750 (BBP377Y), vertical	See Section #
Charger	BOSCH™, 4A Charger (BPC3400)	See Section #
Brake lever Front | Rear	SHIMANO, BL-M4100	Brake lever for hydraulic disc brake 2-finger
Brake Front | Rear	SHIMANO, BR-MT420	Hydraulic disc brake 4 pistons
Brake disc Front | Rear	SHIMANO, SM-RT30/RT-EM300	Steel, Ø 203 mm, 6-hole mount
ABS	...	...
Shifter	SHIMANO, Deore SL-M5100-IR	RAPIDFIRE PLUS, 11-speed Max. multiple gear shifts (main lever at rear): 3
Rear derailleur	...	...
Front derailleur	SHIMANO, Deore RD-M5100-SGS	Aluminium, 11-speed
Sprocket	SHIMANO, Deore CS-M5100-11	Cassette, 11-speed Chain sprockets (teeth): 11-13-15-18-21-24-28-33-39-45-51T
Spoke guard	WESTPHAL, Spoke Protector 873 71200099	...
Headlight	...	Interface available for MonkeyLight
Rear light	...	Interface available for MonkeyLight
Reflectors Front | Rear | Side	...	...
Pannier rack, front	...	...
Pannier rack, rear	...	...
Guard Front | Rear	...	...
Kickstands	...	...
Bell/horn	...	...
Mirror	...	...
Battery lock	ABUS, BOSCH IT3 XPlus	...
Chain lock	...	...
Bottle holder	FIDLOCK, bottle cage	...
GPS/BT	...	...

... not available, # information not available when document was produced

11.3.6 Sonic EVO TR-I, 29 Carbon

23-18-3074

Frame	Bulls, Sonic EVO TR- I	Carbon Frame shape and size: Gent: 41/44/48/51
Rear frame damper	ROCKSHOX, DELUXE SELECT+	Air damper Installation length: 210 mm Deflection: 50 mm Function Rebound adjustment: H, L, M Compression stroke: H, L, L1, LC, M Damper variant: RL
Tyres Front | Rear	SCHWALBE, Nobby Nic	All-round tyres Tube, Performance EPI: 67 Profile: HS602 Folding tyres Weight: 890 g | 850 g Size: 29", 65-622 (29") Max. load: 125 kg Pressure: max. 3.0 bar (max. 45 psi)
Tube	SCHWALBE, SV19B L	Presta valve, Size: 54-75 × 584-622
Wheel Front | Rear	MAVIC, CROSSMAX XL S 29"	Material: Maxtal, S6000 aluminium, steel Size: 29" Tubeless Hub Freewheel hub Axles: 15× 110 mm Brake: Centre lock disc brake Rim Weight tuning: ISM Asymmetric rim profile Jaw length: 30 mm ETRTO size: 622 × 30tc Spoke Quantity: 24 Spoke configuration: Double-crossed, contactless Spoke nipples Aluminium integrated in the spokes
Rims	...	...
Spokes	...	...
Spoke nipples	...	...
Front wheel hub	...	...
Rear wheel hub	...	...
Steering headset	ACROS, BULLS NO. 18	Aluminium, Aheadset, for fork steerer: 1-1/8"
Stem	COMPETITION SL, adjustable	Aluminium, Ahead stem, adjustable Handlebars clamp diameter: Ø 35 mm Stem length: 45 mm
Handlebars	BULLS, carbon handlebar	Carbon Ø: 35 mm Length: 780 mm Height: 15 mm
Handles/tapered Left hand | Right hand	Bulls, MTB VLG-1777D2	Hard plastic, handle, Ø 22.4 mm, 131.6/131.6 mm
Fork	ROCKSHOX, 35 Gold RL 29"	Suspension fork Deflection: 130 mm Air suspension: DebonAir™ Damper: Motion Control RL Head tube: 1.8", aluminium, tapered Stanchion: 35 mm Lockout operation on the crown Axle: 15 × 110 mm Offset: 44 mm
Fork remote control	...	...

Saddle	Prologo, Proxim 400	...
Seat post	LIMOTEC, A1 SHIMANO, SL-MT500-IL	Aluminium, lowerable seat post Deflection: 150 mm Ø: 34.9 mm Max. Rider weight: 120 kg With remote control
Saddle clamp	Bulls, carbon	Carbon, Ø:38.4 mm
Pedal	Bulls, Zecure VPE 527	Body weight up to: 150 kg
Crank set	Bulls, E13 E-Bike crank Bosch forged	Crank length: 165 mm (M, L)
Chain/belt	SRAM, GX Eagle™ Chain	For 12-speed, compatible with SRAM Eagle Weight (per 114 links): 244 g Chain length: 126 links
Chain wheel/belt sprocket	...	...
Chain guard	VELO ENTERPRISE, VLF-C-1301	...
Chain guide	...	...
Motor	BOSCH™, Performance Line CX (BDU3740)	See Section #
On-board computer	BOSCH™, System Controller (BRC3100)	See Section #
Display	...	...
Control panel	BOSCH™, Mini Remote (BRC3300)	See Section #
Rechargeable battery	BOSCH™, PowerTube 625 (BBP376Y), vertical PowerTube 750 (BBP377Y), vertical	See Section #
Charger	BOSCH™, 4A Charger (BPC3400)	See Section #
Brake lever Front | Rear	TRP, C2.3 832V HIGH	2-finger brake lever
Brake Front | Rear	TRP, C2.3 832V HIGH	Hydraulic disc brake 4 pistons
Brake disc Front | Rear	TRP, C2.3 832V HIGH	203 mm
ABS	...	...
Shifter	SRAM, GX EAGLE™ AXS™ CONTROLLER	Electric gear shifter, can be paired Electric protection rating: IPX7 Battery: coin cell, CR2032
Rear derailleur	...	...
Front derailleur	SRAM, GX Eagle™ AXS™ rear derailleur	Aluminium, 12-speed
Sprocket	SRAM, XG-1275 Eagle	Cassette, rainbow colours, 12-speed Chain sprocket: 10-52T
Spoke guard	WESTPHAL, Spoke Protector 873 71200099	...
Headlight	...	Interface available for MonkeyLight
Rear light	...	Interface available for MonkeyLight
Reflectors Front | Rear | Side	...	...
Pannier rack, front	...	...
Pannier rack, rear	...	...
Guard Front | Rear	Fork | ...	Fender on fork
Kickstands	...	...
Bell/horn	...	...
Mirror	...	...

Battery lock	ABUS, BOSCH IT3 XPlus	...
Chain lock	...	...
Bottle holder	FIDLOCK, bottle cage	...
GPS/BT	...	...

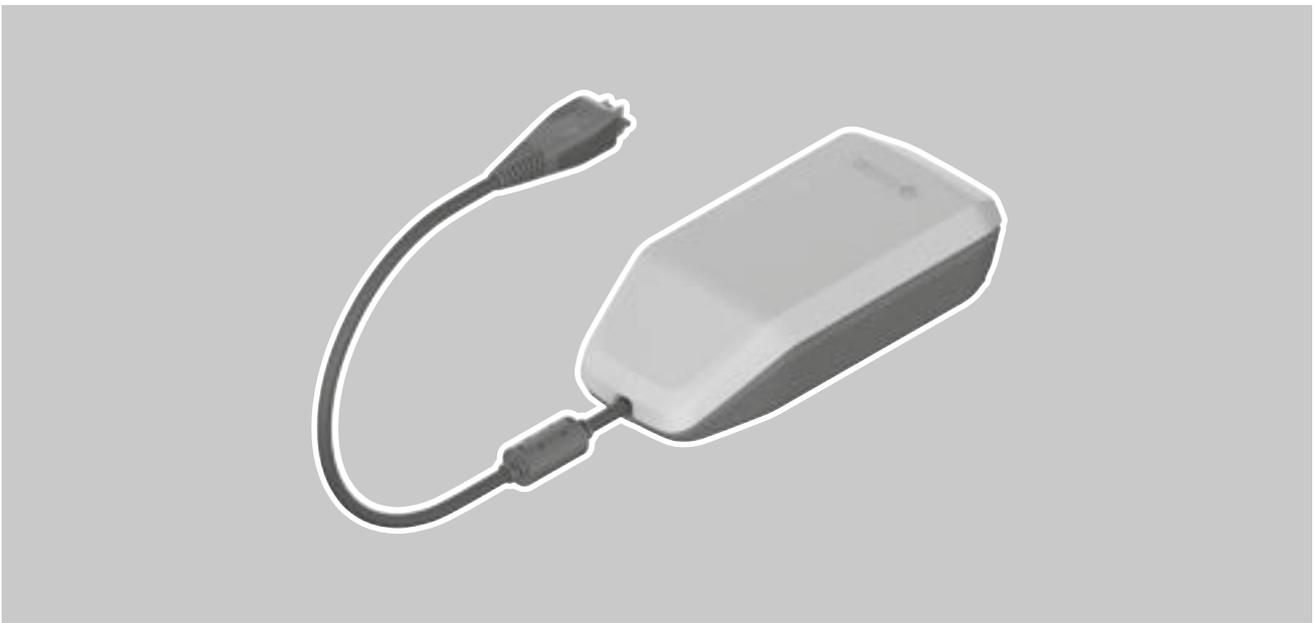
... not available, # information not available when document was produced

11.4 Charger operating instructions



Charger

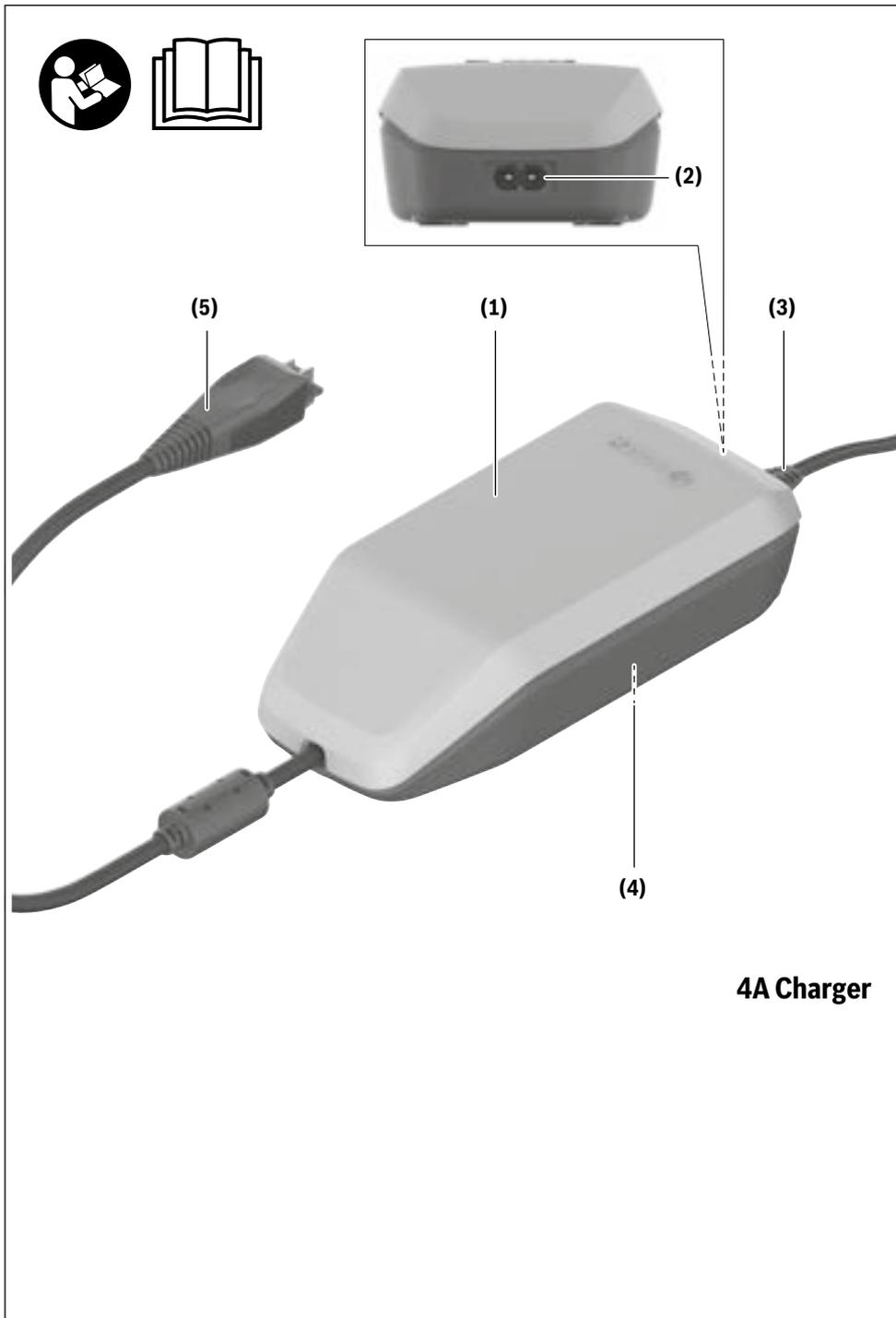
BPC3400



en Original operating instructions

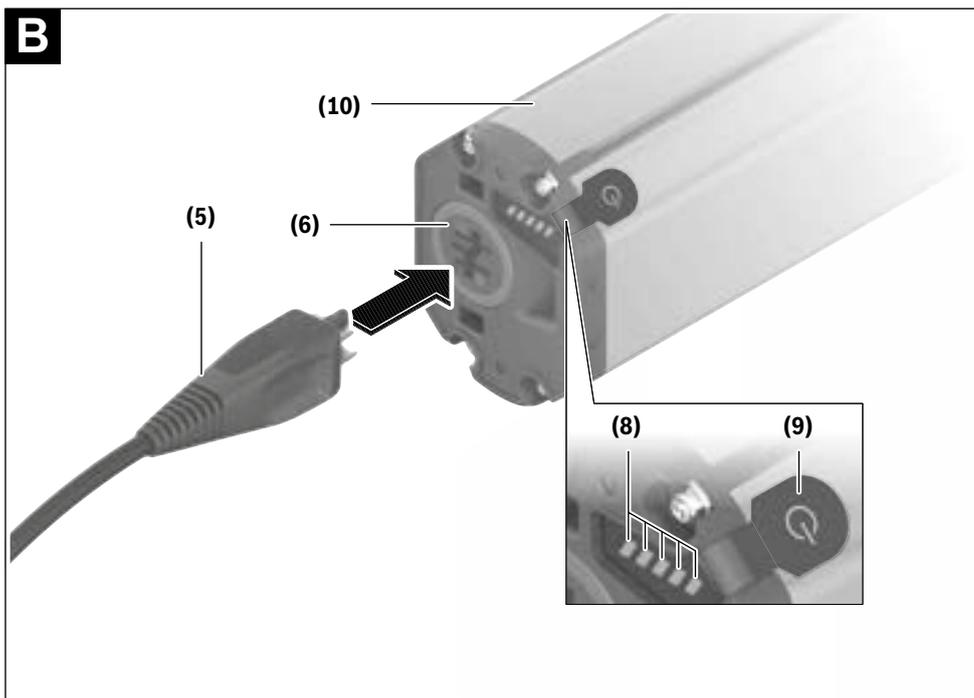
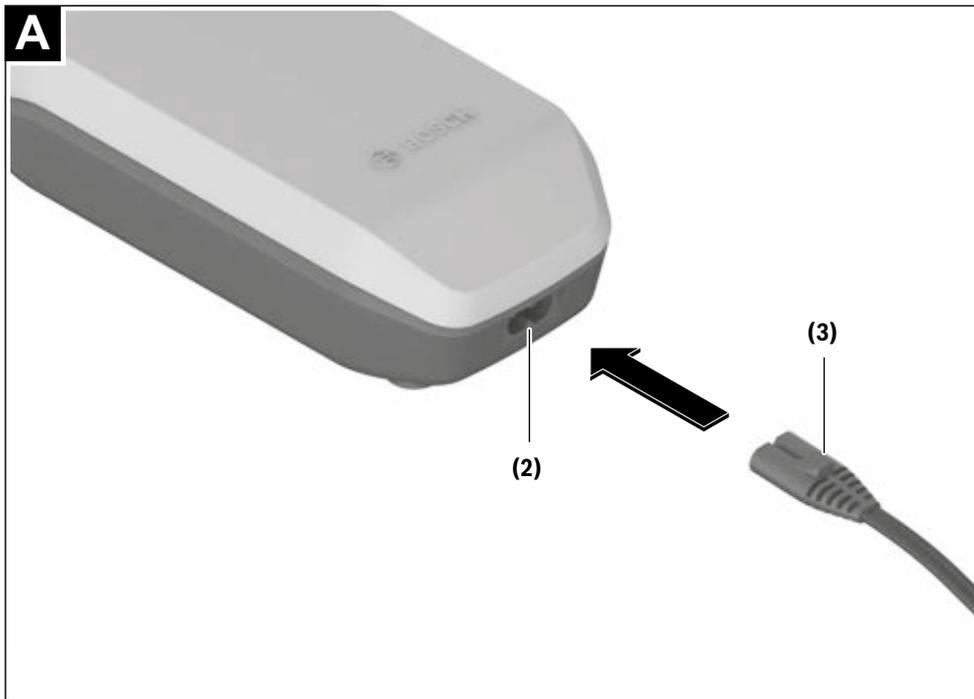


2 |

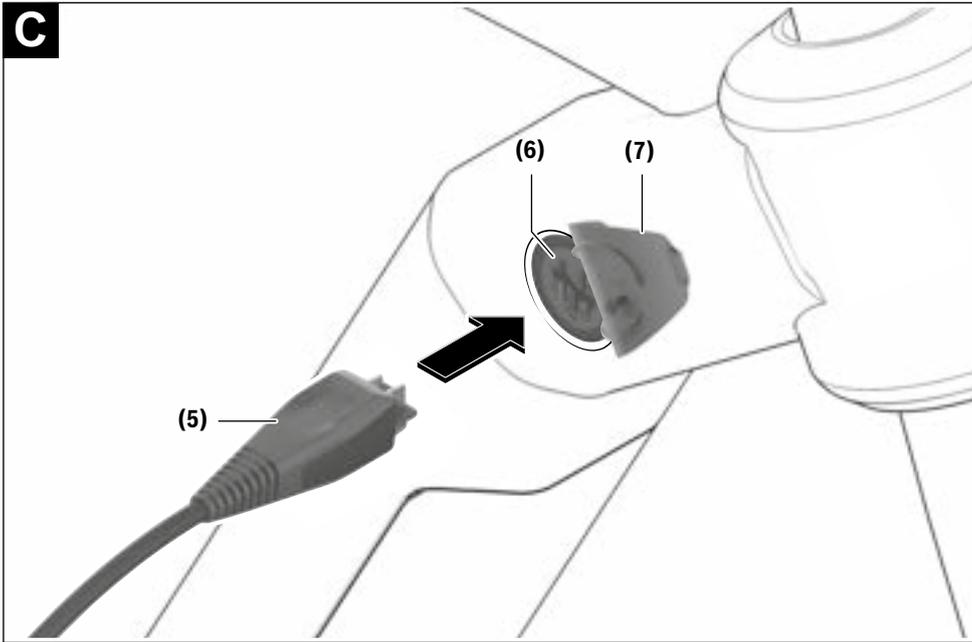


0 275 007 3CX | (09.06.2021)

Bosch eBike Systems



4 |



Safety instructions



Read all the safety and general instructions. Failure to observe the safety and general instructions may result in electric shock, fire and/or serious injury.

Save all safety warnings and instructions for future reference.

The term **battery** is used in these instructions to mean all original Bosch eBike rechargeable battery packs.



Do not expose the charger to rain or wet conditions. If water enters a charger, there is a risk of electric shock.

- ▶ **Charge only Bosch lithium-ion batteries that are approved for use in eBikes. The battery voltage must match the battery charging voltage of the charger.** Otherwise there is a danger of fire and explosion.
- ▶ **Keep the charger clean.** Dirt poses a risk of electric shock.
- ▶ **Always check the charger, cable and plug before use. Stop using the charger if you discover any damage. Do not open the charger.** Damaged chargers, cables and plugs increase the risk of electric shock.
- ▶ **Do not operate the charger on an easily ignited surface (e.g. paper, textiles, etc.) or in a flammable environment.**

onment. There is a risk of fire due to the charger heating up during operation.

- ▶ **Take care if you touch the charger while it is charging. Wear protective gloves.** The charger can get very hot, especially when the ambient temperature is high.
- ▶ **The battery may give off fumes if it becomes damaged or is used incorrectly. Ensure the area is well ventilated and seek medical attention should you experience any adverse effects.** The fumes may irritate the respiratory system.
- ▶ **The eBike battery must not be left unattended while charging.**
- ▶ **Supervise children during use, cleaning and maintenance.** This will ensure that children do not play with the charger.
- ▶ **Children or persons who, owing to their physical, sensory or mental limitations or to their lack of experience or knowledge, are not capable of safely operating the charger may only use this charger under supervision or after having been instructed by a responsible person.** Otherwise, there is a danger of operating errors and injuries.
- ▶ **Read and observe the safety warnings and directions contained in all the eBike system operating instructions and in the operating instructions of your eBike.**
- ▶ A sticker in English is adhered to the bottom of the charger (marked **(4)** in the diagram on the graphics page). This says:

Use ONLY with BOSCH lithium-ion rechargeable batteries!

eBike Battery Charger BPC3400

4A Charger

EB12.110.001

Input: 220-240 V ~ 50-60 Hz 1.65 A

Output: 36 V= 4 A

Made in Vietnam

Robert Bosch GmbH

72757 Reutlingen, Germany

Li-Ion

Use ONLY with BOSCH Li-Ion batteries



Product description and specifications

Intended Use

In addition to the functions shown here, changes to software relating to troubleshooting and functional modifications may be introduced at any time.

The Bosch eBike chargers are intended exclusively for charging Bosch eBike batteries and must not be used for any other purpose.

Product features

The numbering of the components shown refers to the illustrations on the graphics pages at the beginning of the manual.

Individual illustrations in these operating instructions may differ slightly from the actual conditions depending on the equipment of your eBike.

- (1) Battery charger
- (2) Device socket
- (3) Device connector
- (4) Charger safety instructions
- (5) Charging connector
- (6) Socket for charging connector
- (7) Charging socket cover
- (8) Operation/battery charge indicator
- (9) Battery on/off button
- (10) PowerTube

English – 2

Technical data

Charger	4A Charger	
Product code		BPC3400
Rated voltage	V~	198 to 264
Frequency	Hz	47 to 63
Battery charging voltage	V=	36
Charging current (max.)	A	4
Charging time for PowerTube 750, approx.	h	6
Operating temperature	°C	0 to 40
Storage temperature	°C	10 to 40
Weight, approx.	kg	0.7
Protection rating		IP40

The specifications apply to a rated voltage [U] of 230 V. These specifications may vary at different voltages and in country-specific models.

UK
CA

Operation**Start-up****Connecting the charger to the mains (see figure A)**

- **Pay attention to the mains voltage.** The voltage of the power source must match the voltage specified on the rating plate of the charger. Chargers marked 230 V can also be operated at 220 V.

Plug the device connector (3) of the power cable into the device socket (2) on the charger.

Connect the power cable (country-specific) to the mains.

Charging the removed battery (see figure B)

Switch the battery off and remove it from its holder on the eBike. When doing so, read and observe the operating instructions of the battery.

- **Ensure the battery is placed on clean surfaces only.** Avoid getting dirt, e.g. sand or soil, in the charging socket and contacts in particular.

Plug the charging connector (5) of the charger into the socket (6) on the battery.

Charging the battery on the bike (see figure C)

Switch the battery off. Clean the cover of the charging socket (7). Avoid getting dirt, e.g. sand or soil, in the charging

socket and contacts in particular. Lift the cover of the charging socket (7) and plug the charging connector (5) into the charging socket (6).

- **There is a risk of fire due to the charger heating up during charging. Ensure the battery on the bike is completely dry and placed on a fireproof surface before charging.** If this is not possible, remove the battery from the holder and charge it in a more suitable location. When doing so, read and observe the operating instructions of the battery.

Charging process

The charging process begins as soon as the charger is connected to the battery or charging socket on the bike and to the mains.

Note: The charging process is only possible when the temperature of the eBike battery is within the permitted charging temperature range.

Note: The drive unit is deactivated during the charging process.

The battery can be charged with and without the on-board computer. When charging without the on-board computer, the charging procedure can be observed on the battery charge indicator.

When the on-board computer is connected, a charging notification appears on the display.

The state of charge is displayed by the battery charge indicator (8) on the battery and by the bars on the on-board computer.

The LEDs on the battery charge indicator (8) flash during the charging process. Each solid illuminated LED represents approximately 20 % of the charging capacity. The flashing LED indicates the next 20 % currently charging.

Once the eBike battery is fully charged, the LEDs go out immediately and the on-board computer is switched off. The charging process is terminated. The state of charge can be displayed for 5 seconds by pressing the on/off button (9) on the eBike battery.

Disconnect the charger from the mains and the battery from the charger.

When the battery is disconnected from the charger, the battery is automatically switched off.

Note: If you have charged the battery on the bike, carefully close the charging socket (6) with the cover (7) after charging, so that no dirt or water can get in.

If the charger is not disconnected from the battery after charging, after a few hours the charger will switch itself back on, check the state of charge of the battery and begin the charging procedure again if necessary.

Errors – causes and corrective measures

Cause	Corrective measures
 Battery defective	Two LEDs flash on the battery. Contact an authorised bike dealership.
 Battery too warm or too cold	Three LEDs flash on the battery. Disconnect the battery from the charger until the charging temperature range has been reached. Do not reconnect the battery to the charger until it has reached the correct charging temperature.
 The charger is not charging.	No LEDs flashing (one or more LEDs will remain permanently lit depending on the state of charge of the eBike battery). Contact an authorised bike dealership.
Charging not possible (no indicator on battery)	
Connector not attached properly	Check all connections.
Battery contacts dirty	Carefully clean the battery contacts.
Plug socket, cable or charger defective	Check the mains voltage, have the charger checked over by a bike dealership.
Battery defective	Contact an authorised bike dealership.

Maintenance and servicing

Maintenance and cleaning

If the charger fails, please contact an authorised bike dealership.

After-sales service and advice on using products

If you have any questions about the eBike system and its components, contact an authorised bicycle dealer.

For contact details of authorised bike dealerships, please visit www.bosch-ebike.com.

Disposal

Chargers, accessories and packaging should be recycled in an environmentally friendly manner.

Do not dispose of chargers along with household waste.

Only for EU countries:



According to the European Directive 2012/19/EU on Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment and its implementation into national law, chargers that are no longer usable must be collected separately and disposed of in an environmentally friendly manner.

Subject to change without notice.

12 Glossary

Bicycle for young adults

Source: ISO 4210-2: bicycle designed for use on public roads by a young adult whose weight is less than 40 kg, with maximum saddle height of 635 mm or more and less than 750 mm. (see ISO 4210).

Brake lever

Source: EN 15194:2017: lever used to apply the brake.

Braking distance

Source: EN 15194:2017: distance travelled by a pedelec between the commencement of braking and the point at which the pedelec comes to rest.

Cargo bike

Source: DIN 79010: bicycle mainly designed to carry goods.

CE marking

Source: Directive on Machinery: the manufacturer uses the CE marking to declare that the pedelec complies with the applicable requirements.

City and trekking bicycle

Source: ISO 4210-2: bicycle designed for use on public roads primarily for means of transportation or leisure.

Consumables

Source: EN 82079-1: any part or material that is needed to continue using or maintain the product.

Continuous power rating

Source: ISO 15194:2017, output power specified by the manufacturer at which the motor reaches its thermal equilibrium under the specified ambient conditions.

Decommissioning

Source: DIN 31051: intentional, unlimited interruption in an object's functional capability.

Disc brake

Source: EN 15194:2017: brake in which brake pads are used to grip the lateral faces of a thin disc attached to or incorporated into the wheel hub.

Drive belt

Source: EN 15194:2017: seamless ring belt which is used as a means of transmitting drive force.

Electrical control system

Source: EN 15194:2017: electronic and/or electrical component or an assembly of components provided for installation into a vehicle, together with all electrical connections and associated wiring for the motor electrical power assistance.

Electrically power assisted cycle, pedelec

Source: EN 15194:2017: electrically power assisted cycle pedelec EPAC bicycles, equipped with pedals and an auxiliary electric motor, which cannot be propelled exclusively by means of the auxiliary electric motor, except in start-up assistance mode.

Emergency stop

Source: ISO 13850:2015, function or signal, designed: — to avert arising or reduce existing hazards to persons, damage to machinery or to work in progress; – to be initiated by a single human action.

Fault

Source: EN 13306:2018-02, 6.1: state of an item (4.2.1) characterized by its inability to perform a required function (4.5.1), excluding such inability during preventive maintenance or other scheduled actions or due to lack of external resources.

Folding bicycle

Source: EN-ISO 4210-2: bicycle designed to fold into a compact form, facilitating transport and storage.

Fork steerer

Source: EN 15194:2017: part of a fork that rotates around the steering axis of a pedelec frame head tube. It is normally connected to the fork crown or directly to the fork legs, and is normally the point of connection between the fork and the handlebar stem.

Fracture

Source: EN 15194:2017: unintentional separation into two or more parts.

Maintenance

Source: DIN 31051: maintenance is generally performed at regular intervals and often carried out by trained technical staff. This ensures a maximum service life and low wear and tear for the maintained items. Proper maintenance is often also a pre-requisite for providing a warranty.

Manufacturer

Source: Directive 2006/42/EC on Machinery, 17.05.2006 Any natural or legal person who designs and/or manufactures machinery or partly completed machinery covered by this Directive and is responsible for the conformity of the machinery or the partly completed machinery with this Directive with a view to its being placed on the market, under his own name or trademark or for his own use.

Maximum continuous power rating

Source: ZEG: the maximum continuous power rating is the maximum power for the electric motor output shaft during 30 minutes.

Maximum permitted total weight

Source: EN 15194:2017: weight of the fully assembled pedelec plus the rider and baggage, as specified by the manufacturer.

Maximum saddle height

Source: EN 15194:2017: vertical distance from the ground to the point where the top of the seat surface is intersected by the seat-post axis, measured with the saddle in a horizontal position and with the seat-post set to the minimum insertion-depth mark.

Maximum tyre pressure

Source: EN 15194:2017: maximum tyre pressure recommended by the tyre or rim manufacturer for a safe and efficient performance. If the rim and tyre both indicate a maximum tyre pressure, the maximum inflation pressure is the lower of the two pressures indicated.

Minimum insertion depth

Source: EN 15194:2017: mark indicating the minimum insertion depth of handlebar stem into fork steerer (fork stem) or seat post into frame.

Model year

Source: ZEG: the model year refers to the first production year that the series-manufactured pedelec was manufactured in the version in question and is not always identical with the year of manufacture. The year of manufacture may be before the model year in some cases. If no technical modifications are introduced to the series, production may continue of pedelecs from a previous model year.

Mountain bike, MTB

Source: ISO 4210-2: bicycle designed for use off-road on rough terrain, on public roads, and on public pathways, equipped with a suitably strengthened frame and other components, and, typically, with wide-section tyres with coarse tread patterns and a wide range of transmission gears.

Negative deflection

Negative deflection or sag is fork compression caused by body weight and gear (e.g. a backpack), the rider's position and the frame geometry.

Off-road rough terrain

Source: EN 15194:2017: rough gravel tracks, forest trails and other generally off-road tracks where tree roots and rocks are likely to be encountered.

Operating instructions

Source: ISO/DIS 20607:2018: part of the user information that machine manufacturers provide to machine operators; it contains guidance, instructions and tips related to the use of the machine in all its life cycle phases.

Placing on the market

Source: Directive 2006/42/EC on Machinery, 17.05.2006, Making available for the first time in the Community machinery or partly completed machinery with a view to distribution or use, whether for reward or free of charge.

Pressure point

Source: ZEG: the pressure point on a brake is the point on the brake lever where the brake disc and brake pads respond and the braking process is initiated.

Quick-release device, quick release

Source: EN 15194:2017: lever actuated mechanism that connects, retains or secures a wheel or any other component.

Racing bicycle

Source: ISO 4210-2: bicycle designed for amateur rides at high speed and for use on public roads having a control and steering assembly with multiple grip positions to provide an aerodynamic posture, a multi-speed transmission system and a tyre width not greater than 28 mm with the fully assembled bicycle having a maximum mass of 12 kg.

Rebound

The rebound defines the speed at which the fork rebounds after being loaded.

Rechargeable battery, battery

Source: DIN 40729:1985-05: a rechargeable battery is an energy storage device that can store supplied electrical energy as chemical energy (charging) and release it as electrical energy when required (discharging).

Seat post

Source: EN 15194:2017: component that clamps the saddle (with a bolt or assembly) and connects it to the frame.

Shut-off speed

Source: EN 15194:2017: speed reached, by the pedelec, at the moment the current has dropped to zero or to the no load current value.

Slippage

Source: DIN 75204-1:1992-05: the difference in relation to vehicle speed between the vehicle speed and the speed of its wheels at their circumference.

Spare part

Source: EN 13306:2018-02, 3.5: item intended to replace a corresponding item in order to retain or maintain the original required function of the item.

Suspension fork

Source: EN 15194:2017: front wheel fork incorporating controlled, axial flexibility to reduce the transmission of road-shocks to the rider.

Suspension frame

Source: EN 15194:2017: frame incorporating controlled, vertical flexibility to reduce the transmission of road-shocks to the rider.

Total deflection

Source: Benny Wilbers, Werner Koch: Neue Fahrwerkstechnik im Detail (New chassis technology in detail): The distance that the wheel travels between an unloaded and a loaded position is called total deflection. When at rest, the vehicle's mass is applied to the springs and reduces the total deflection by the *negative deflection* to the positive deflection.

Wear

Source: DIN 31051: reduction in useful life (4.3.4), caused by chemical and/or physical processes.

Weight of the ready-to-ride pedelec

Source: ZEG: the indicated weight for a ready-to-ride pedelec refers to the weight of a pedelec at the time of sale. The weight of each additional accessory must be added to this weight

Wheel

Source: ISO 4210 - 2: unit or combination of hub, rim and spokes or disc, but excluding tyre assembly.

Work environment

Source: ISO 9000:2015: set of conditions under which work is performed.

Year of manufacture

Source: ZEG: the year of manufacture is the year in which the pedelec was manufactured. The production period is always from May to July the following year.

12.1 Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Meaning/derivation
ABS	Anti-blocking system
BLE	Bluetooth Low Energy
EPAC	Electric power-assisted cycle
PTW	Permitted total weight

Table 82: Table of abbreviations

12.2 Simplified terms

The following terms are used for better legibility:

Term	Meaning
Operating instructions	Original operating instructions
Damper	Rear frame damper
Specialist dealer	Bicycle specialist dealer
Motor	Drive motor, sub-system
Belt drive	Toothed belt drive

Table 83: Table of simplified terms

13 Appendix

I. Translation of the original EC/EU Declaration of Conformity

Manufacturer

ZEG Zweirad-Einkaufs-Genossenschaft eG
 Longericher Str. 2
 50739 Köln, Germany

Authorised representative for documentation*

Janine Otto
 c/o ZEG Zweirad-Einkaufs-Genossenschaft eG
 Longericher Str. 2
 50739 Köln, Germany

The machine, pedelec types:

23-18-3067	Sonic EVO AM 2 Carbon, 29/27.5	Mountain bike
23-18-3068	Sonic EVO AM 3 Carbon, 29/27.5	Mountain bike
23-18-3069	Sonic EVO AM 4 Carbon, 29/27.5	Mountain bike
23-18-3070	Sonic EVO AM Team Carbon	Mountain bike
23-18-3073	Sonic EVO TR 2, 29 Carbon	Mountain bike
23-18-3074	Sonic EVO TR-I, 29 Carbon	Mountain bike

Year of manufacture 2022 and year of manufacture 2023, complies with the following applicable EU provisions:

- Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC
- RoHS Directive 2011/65/EU
- Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive 2014/30/EU.

The safety objectives in the Low Voltage Directive 2014/35/EU have been met in compliance with Appendix I, No. 1.5.1 of the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC.

The following harmonised standards have been applied:

- ISO 20607:2018 Safety machinery – Instruction handbook – General drafting principles
- EN 15194:2017 Cycles – Electrically power assisted cycles –
EPAC bicycles, after risk assessment with exception of Sections 4.3.14 and 4.3.19.

The following other technical standards have been applied:

- EN 11243:2016: Cycles – Pannier racks for bicycles – Requirements and test methods
- EN 62133-2:2017 Secondary cells and batteries containing alkaline or other non-acid electrolytes. Safety requirements for portable sealed secondary cells, and for batteries made from them, for use in portable applications – Part 2: Lithium systems



Cologne, 02/05/2022

.....
 Egbert Hageböck, Chairman, ZEG Zweirad-Einkaufs-Genossenschaft eG

* Community member who is authorised to compile the technical documentation

II. Directive declaration of conformity with RED Directive

BOSCH System Controller/Mini Remote

Robert Bosch GmbH, Bosch eBike Systems, hereby declares that the System Controller/Mini Remote radio system type complies with Directive 2014/53/EU. The complete EU declaration of conformity is available online at:

<https://www.bosch-ebike.com/conformity>

You will find the licence information for the product at the following URL:

<https://www.bosch-ebike.com/licencesCE-Konformitätserklärung>

14 Keyword index

- A**
- Air valve, 43
 - position, 43
 - rear frame damper, 38
 - Articulated shaft,
 - maintain 236
 - Axle,
 - torque, 99
- B**
- Backsweep 41
 - Ball bearings,
 - position, 52
 - Basic cleaning 228
 - Battery level indicator (battery), 65
 - Battery level indicator, 79
 - Battery,
 - check, 116
 - clean, 228
 - dispose, 317
 - insert, 202
 - remove, 201, 202
 - ship, 112
 - transport, 112
 - frame battery, 65
 - housing 65
 - key 65
 - lock 65
 - technical data 81
 - torques, 99
 - Battery, see rechargeable battery
 - Bead core, 50
 - position, 48
 - Bell,
 - check 226
 - use 200
 - Belt sprocket, 60
 - Belt, 60
 - check belt for wear 247
 - check tension 247
 - clean, 232
 - Gates Carbon Drive mobile app 248
 - Bicycle for young adults, 348
 - Bike headset, see steering headset
 - Bluetooth,
 - malfunctions, 18
 - Bowden cable, 58
 - check, 243
 - Brake cable, 58
 - torque, 100
 - Brake calliper, 59
 - position, 59
 - torque, 100
 - Brake disc, 59
 - check, 244
 - clean 231
 - replace, 315
 - position, 59
 - Brake lever, 59
 - clean 231
 - service, 238
 - Brake linings, 59
 - check, 244
 - replace, 315
 - retract, 152
 - position, 59
 - torque, 100
 - Brake,
 - check brake disc, 244
 - check brake linings, 244
 - check pressure point, 243
 - check, 226, 243
 - clean, 227
 - secure during transport 111
 - cable clip, 58
 - cover cap, 58
 - hydraulic, 58
 - insert pin, 58
 - knob, 58
 - mechanical, 58
 - union nut, 58
 - Braking distance, 348
 - Break in operation, 114
 - carry out 114
 - prepare 111, 114, 286
 - Button,
 - minus, 68
 - On-Off (battery) 65
 - push assist, 68
- C**
- Cantilever brake,
 - torque, 101
 - Carbon seat post,
 - maintain, 235
 - Carbon suspension fork,
 - inspect, 269
 - Carcass, 49
 - position, 48
 - Cargo bike, 348
 - Cassette,
 - clean, 231
 - CE marking, 348
 - Chain guard,
 - clean, 232
 - torques 104
 - Chain stay, 31
 - Chain wheel, 60
 - Chain wheels,
 - clean, 231
 - Chain, 30, 60
 - check 245
 - check for wear 245
 - check tension 245
 - clean, 232
 - maintain 237
 - replace, 315
 - service, 282
 - tension, 315
 - position, 60
 - Chainring brake,
 - torque, 103
 - Charger, 62
 - dispose, 317
 - Charging port cover, 65
 - Charging port, 65
 - Chassis, 31
 - Child seat, 187
 - City and trekking bicycles, 348
 - Clamping force,
 - adjust quick release 121
 - check quick release, 121
 - Compression damping, 46
 - Consumables, 348
 - Continuous power rating 348
 - Control panel,
 - clean, 228, 230
 - Conventional valve, see Dunlop valve
 - Crank bearing,
 - torque, 104
 - Crank set,
 - torque, 104
 - Crown 89
- D**
- Decommissioning, 348
 - Derailleur gears,
 - check 251
 - use, 207, 208, 209

- Dimensions, 110
- Disc brake, 348
 - torque, 100
- Down tube, 31
- Drive belt, 348
- Drive system, 60
 - switch on, 203, 204
 - electric, 62
- Dual pivot rim brake,
 - torque, 101
- Dunlop valve, see conventional valve
- Dust seal 89
- E**
- eBike Flow,
 - register 183, 186, 312
- EIGHTPINS H01 seat post, 57
 - adjustment ring 57
 - compensation clip 57
 - EIGHTPINS capsule 57
 - EIGHTPINS pawl 57
 - guiding block 57
 - height adjustment clamp 57, 61, 78
 - height adjustment mechanism 57
 - lower saddle clamping plate 57
 - overload friction coupling 57
 - piston rod 57
 - post pin 57
 - post pin installation unit 57
 - rear clamping screw 57
 - release slider unit 57
 - saddle clamping nut 57
 - saddle tilt setting wheel 57
 - slide bushing tube 57
 - upper saddle clamping plate 57
- Electrical control system, 348
- Emergency stop 348
- Emergency stop system 21
- F**
- Fault, 348
- Folding bicycle, 348
- Fork steerer 89, 349
- Fork,
 - check 225
 - maintain, 227
 - position 30
 - suspended, 350
- Fracture, 349
- Frame battery,
 - insert, 202
- Frame, 31
 - 31
 - check 225
 - clean, 229
 - inspect, 266
 - maintain, 227, 233
 - carbon frame, 31
 - position 30
- Freewheel,
 - torque, 101
- French valve, see Presta valve
- Front derailleur,
 - clean, 231
 - torque, 108
- Front light, 62
- Front wheel brake,
 - brake, 206
- Front wheel, see Wheel
- G**
- Gear hub,
 - inspect, 267
- Gear shift,
 - adjust Bowden-cable-operated twist grip, dual-cable 254
 - check 251
 - check electric gear shift, 252
 - switch gears, 218
 - use, 207
- Guards,
 - check 225
- H**
- Handbrake, 348
 - torque, 103
- Handlebars, 41
 - check, 127, 251
 - clean, 229
 - maintain, 234
 - use 200
 - use bar ends 200
 - use multi-position handlebars 200
 - position 30
 - rise 41
 - torque, 104
 - width 41
- Handles
 - ,- check 226
- Handles,
 - clean 229
 - maintain, 235
 - use leather handles 200
- Head tube, 31
- Headlight,
 - adjust, 182
 - check, 250
 - clean 227
 - torque, 108
- Headset, see steering headset
- Hub axle,
 - position, 52
- Hub body,
 - position, 52
- Hub gear,
 - check 252
- Hub, 52
 - adjust ROHLOFF 253
 - clean, 230
 - maintain 236
 - service 257
 - position, 48
 - torque, 105
 - without additional features, 52
- Hydraulic brake system,
 - check 243
- I**
- Initial commissioning, 116
- J**
- Jockey wheel,
 - maintain 236
- K**
- Kickstand,
 - clean, 229
 - maintain, 234
 - stability 254
- L**
- Leather handles,
 - clean 229
 - maintain, 235
- Leather saddle,
 - clean, 230
 - maintain, 235
- Level of assistance, 69, 79
 - ECO, 69
 - OFF, 69
 - TOUR, 69
 - TURBO, 69
- LIMOTEC A1 seat post, 56
 - length 56
 - minimum insertion depth 56
 - piston stroke 56
 - seat post remote control 56
- LIMOTEC seat post,
 - fit 119

M

- Maintenance, 349
- Manufacturer, 12, 349
- Mechanical,
 - gear shift 252
- Minimum insertion depth marking, 140
- Minimum insertion depth, 349
- Minus button, 68
- Model year, 349
- Motor cover 20
- Motor cover,
 - torques, 105
- Motor, 62
 - clean, 228
 - torques 104
- Mountain bike, 24, 349
- Mountain bike, see MTB
- MTB, see mountain bike
- Mudguard,
 - clean, 229
 - maintain, 234
- Mudguards,
 - check, 225

N

- Nameplate, 29
- Negative deflection, 349
- Negative deflection, see Sag, 33
- Nipple holes,
 - check, 242
- Nipple well,
 - check, 242

O

- Off-road tyres, 49
- On-board computer,
 - clean 228
 - torques, 99
- On-Off button (battery), 65
- Operating instructions, 350

P

- Pannier rack battery,
 - remove, 201, 202
- Pannier rack,
 - care 234
 - check 225
 - clean, 229
 - inspect, 266
- Patent seat post, 55
- Pedal,
 - clean, 227
 - fit 124
 - maintain, 236
 - torque, 107

Pedelec, 348

- adjust 133
- after each ride, 227
- assemble 115
- before each ride 190, 225
- check, 239
- clean 228
- commission 116
- initial inspection 255
- inspect (specialist dealer) 255
- major inspection 255
- sell, 127
- service 233
- ship, 112
- unpacking 115
- use 199

Placing on the market, 350**Pressure point, 350****Puncture protection belt, 50**

- position, 48

Push assist button, 68

- Push assist,
 - use 62
 - use, 204

Q**Quick release, 350**

- inspect, 268
- position, 52

Quick releases,

- check 225

Quickly adjustable 40**R****Racing bicycle valve, see Presta valve****Racing bicycle, 350****Rear derailleur,**

- maintain, 236
- position 60
- torque, 108

Rear frame damper, 33

- adjust rebound damper, 178
- adjust SR Suntour rebound damper, 180
- adjust SR Suntour sag, 172
- adjust threshold, 195
- check 225
- clean 227
- inspect, 266
- maintain, 257, 266
- solve problem 303
- air reservoir, 38, 84
- compression lever, 38

damper unit, 38

- O-ring, 38
- overall length, 38
- rebound adjuster wheel, 38
- sag, 38
- SR SUNTOUR Edge LOR8 Trunion Mount, 38, 84
- structure, 35, 36, 37, 82, 83, 90, 91

Rear frame fork end, 31**Rear frame seat stay, 31****Rear light, 62**

- clean 227

Rear wheel brake, 59**Rebound adjuster, 43**

- position, 43

Rebound damping, 44**Rebound, 350****Rechargeable battery, 64, 350****Rechargeable battery, see battery****Reflector,**

- position 30

Reflectors,

- clean 227

Retainer guard, 65**Riding light,**

- adjust, 182
- check, 226, 250

Rim brake locking lever 58**Rim, 50**

- replace, 315
- position, 48

Rims,

- maintain, 235

Road tyres, 49**S****Saddle, 199**

- adjust hardness 138
- adjust height 140
- adjust position 142
- change the seat length, 142
- check 251
- clean, 229
- determine height, 140
- determine width 137
- Select hardness 138
- Straighten 139
- use, 199

Safety guards, 20**Sag 33****Sag setting wheel, position, 43**

Sag,
 setting wheel 89
 Slaverand valve, see Presta valve
 Seat post, 55, 350
 - check 226, 251
 - clean, 229
 - inspect, 270
 - maintain, 235
 - patent seat post 55
 - suspension seat post 55
 remote control torque, 101
 torque, 101
 Seat tube, 31
 Securing hook, 65
 Shifter,
 - clean, 231
 - maintain, 236
 torque, 107
 Shut-off speed, 350
 Size, 31
 Slicks, 49
 Slippage, 350
 Spare part, 350
 Spoke nipples, 51
 - maintain, 236
 position, 48
 Spokes, 51
 - check, 242
 - replace 315
 position, 48
 SRAM Eagle AXS™ rear
 derailleur, 61
 battery guard 61
 battery lock 61
 position of attachment screw
 61
 position of AXS button (rear
 derailleur) 61
 position of cage lock button
 61
 position of extension cable
 snap-fit 61
 position of extension cable,
 61
 position of LED indicator
 (rear derailleur) 61
 position of lower locking
 screw 61
 position of lower pulley 61
 position of retaining clasp 61
 position of setting bolt (rear
 derailleur) 61
 position of SRAM battery 61
 position of top pulley 61

position of upper locking
 screw 61
 Steering headset 40
 Steering headset,
 - grease, 267
 - inspect, 267
 Steering system, 40
 Stem, 40
 - check, 127, 251
 - clean, 229
 - inspect, 267
 - maintain, 234
 position 30
 torque, 109
 Suspension fork, 41, 350
 - clean 227, 229
 - inspect, 269
 - maintain, 227, 233
 Suspension seat post 55
 Suspension seat post,
 - clean, 227
 - maintain, 235
 Switching element,
 - clean, 230

T

t 57
 Top tube, 31
 Torques, 95
 Total deflection 350
 Trailer, 188
 Transportation, 110
 Transporting, see
 Transportation
 Tread, 49
 position, 48
 Tube,
 - replace, 315
 Tyre design types, 48
 Tyre pressure, 48
 - change, 239
 - check, 239
 Tyre size, 48
 Tyre,
 position, 48
 Tyres, 48
 - check, 241
 - clean 230
 Tyres,- Tube-type tyres 48

U

Underride guard,
 torque, 109
 USB cover,
 - check 226

V

Valve, 48
 Dunlop valve, 50
 position, 48
 V-Brake brake,
 torque, 109
 Vehicle,
 technical data, 80

W

Wear, 350
 Weight,
 - shipping weight, 110
 - weight, 110
 Wheel, 48, 351
 - check concentricity 225
 - check, 239
 - fit 117, 118, 120, 123
 Winter break, see Break in
 operation
 Work environment, 351

Y

Year of manufacture, 351